This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Robinſon Cruſoe as deſcrib'd Page 176 Vol. I. *Put this before ye Title.*

THE

LIFE

And Strange Surpriſing

ADVENTURES

OF

ROBINSON CRUSOE;

Of *York*, MARINER:

Who lived Eight-and-twenty Years all alone in an uninhabited Iſland on the Coaſt of *America*, near the Mouth of the Great River *Oroonoque*; having been caſt on Shore by Shipwreck, wherein all the Men periſhed but Him'elf.

With an ACCOUNT how he was at laſt as ſtrangely delivered by PIRATES.

Written by HIMSELF.

The TWELFTH EDITION, Adorned with Cuts.

IN TWO VOLUMES.

VOL. I.

BIBLIOTECA NACIONAL DE COLOMBIA

LONDON:

Printed for C. HITCH and L. HAWES, J. BUCKLAND, B. DOD, J. RIVINGTON, R. BALDWIN, W. JOHNSTON, T. LONGMAN, T. CASLON, S. CROWDER and Co. B. LAW and Co. and J. MORGAN.

M.DCC.LXI.

249 . 8 . 115 .

THE

PREFACE.

IF ever the Story of any private Man's Adventures in the World were worth making public, and were acceptable when publiſh'd, the Editor of this Account thinks this will be ſo.

The Wonders of this Man's Life exceed all that (he thinks) is to be found extant; the Life of one Man being ſcarce capable of a greater Variety.

The Story is told with Modeſty, with Serioufneſs, and with a religious Application of Events to the Uſes to which wiſe Men always

apply them; viz. *to the Inſtruction of others, by this Example, and to juſtify and honour the Wiſdom of Providence in all the Variety of Circumſtances, let them happen how they will.*

The Editor believes the Thing to be a juſt Hiſtory of Facts; neither is there any Appearance of Fiction in it: And however thinks, becauſe all ſuch Things are diſputed, that the Improvement of it, as well to the Diverſion, as to the Inſtruction of the Reader, will be the ſame; and as ſuch, he thinks, without farther Compliment to the World, he does them a great Service in the Publication.

THE LIFE AND ADVENTURES OF ROBINSON CRUSOE.

I WAS born in the Year 1632, in the City of *York*, of a good Family, tho' not of that Country, my Father being a Foreigner of *Bremen*, who ſettled firſt at *Hull*: He got a good Eſtate by Merchandize, and leaving off his Trade, lived afterwards at *York*, from whence he had married my Mother, whoſe Relations were named *Robinſon*, a very good Family in that Country, and from whom I was called *Robinſon Kreutznaer*; but by the uſual Corruption of Words in *England*, we are now called, nay, we call ourſelves, and write our Name, *Cruſoe*; and ſo my Companions always called me.

I had two elder Brothers, one of which was Lieutenant-Colonel to an *Engliſh* Regiment of Foot in *Flanders*, formerly commanded by the famous Col. *Lockhart*, and was killed at the Battle near *Dunkirk* againſt the *Spaniards*: What became of my ſecond Brother, I never knew, any more than my Father or Mother did know what was become of me.

Being the third Son of the Family, and not bred to any Trade, my Head began to be filled very early with rambling Thoughts: My Father, who was very antient, had given me a competent Share of Learning, as far as Houſe-education and a Country Free-ſchool generally goes, and deſigned me for the Law; but I would be ſatisfied with nothing but going to Sea; and my Inclination to this led me ſo ſtrongly againſt the Will, nay, the Commands, of my Father, and againſt all the Intreaties and Perſuaſions of my Mother and other Friends, that there ſeemed to be ſomething fatal in that Propenſion of Nature, tending directly to the Life of Miſery which was to befal me.

My Father, a wiſe and grave Man, gave me ſerious and excellent Counſel againſt what he foreſaw was my Deſign. He called me one Morning into his Chamber, where he was confined by the Gout, and expoſtulated very warmly with me upon this Subject: He aſked me, what Reaſons, more than a mere wandering Inclination, I had for leaving my Father's Houſe and my native Country, where I might be well introduced, and had a Proſpect of raiſing my Fortune by Application and Induſtry, with a Life of Eaſe and Pleaſure: He told me, it was Men of deſperate Fortunes on one hand, or of aſpiring ſuperior Fortunes on the other, and who went abroad upon Adventures, to riſe by Enterprize, and make themſelves famous in Undertakings of a Nature out of the common Road; that theſe things were all either too far above me, or too far below me; that mine was the middle State, or what might be called the upper Station of *Low Life*, which he had found, by long Experience, was the beſt State in the World; the moſt ſuited to human Happineſs, not expoſed to the Miſeries and Hardſhips, the Labour and Sufferings of the mechanic Part of Mankind, and not embarraſſed with the Pride, Luxury, *Ambition*, and Envy of the upper Part of Mankind.

kind. He told me, I might judge of the Happineſs o this State, by this one thing; *viz.* That this was the State of Life which all other People envied; that Kings have frequently lamented the miſerable Conſequences of being born to great things, and wiſhed they had been placed in the Middle of the two Extremes, between the Mean and the Great; that the wiſe Man gave his Teſtimony to this, as the juſt Standard of true Felicity, when he prayed to have neither Poverty nor Riches.

He bad me obſerve it, and I ſhould always find, that the Calamities of Life were ſhared among the upper and lower Part of Mankind; but that the middle Station had the feweſt Diſaſters, and was not expoſed to ſo many Viciſſitudes as the higher or lower Part of Mankind; nay, they were not ſubjected to ſo many Diſtempers and Uneaſineſs, either of Body or Mind, as thoſe were, who, by vicious Living, Luxury, and Extravagancies, on one hand, or by hard Labour, want of Neceſſaries, and mean or inſufficient Diet, on the other hand, bring Diſtempers upon themſelves by the natural Conſequences of their way of Living; that the middle Station of Life was calculated for all kind of Virtues, and all kind of Enjoyments; that Peace and Plenty were the Handmaids of a middle Fortune; that Temperance, Moderation, Quietneſs, Health, Society, all agreeable Diverſions, and all deſirable Pleaſures, were the Bleſſings attending the middle Station of Life; that this way Men went ſilently and ſmoothly thro' the World, and comfortably out of it; not embarraſſed with the Labours of the Hands, or of the Head; not ſold to a Life of Slavery for daily Bread, or haraſſed with perplexed Circumſtances, which rob the Soul of Peace, and the Body of Reſt; nor enraged with the Paſſion of Envy, or the ſecret burning Luſt of Ambition for great things; but in eaſy Circumſtances, ſliding gently thro' the World, and ſenſibly taſting the Sweets of living without the Bitter; feeling that they are happy, and learning by every Day's Experience to know it more ſenſibly.

After this he preſſed me earneſtly, and in the moſt affectionate manner, not to play the young Man, nor to precipitate myſelf into Miſeries, which Nature, and the Station of Life I was born in, ſeemed to have provided againſt; that I was under no Neceſſity of ſeeking my

Bread; that he would do well for me, and endeavour to enter me fairly into the Station of Life which he had been juſt recommending to me; and that if I was not very eaſy and happy in the World, it muſt be my mere Fate, or Fault, that muſt hinder it; and that he ſhould have nothing to anſwer for, having thus diſcharged his Duty in warning me againſt Meaſures which he knew would be to my Hurt: In a word, that as he would do very kind things for me, if I would ſtay and ſettle at home, as he directed; ſo he would not have ſo much Hand in my Misfortunes, as to give me any Encouragement to go away: And to cloſe all, he told me, I had my elder Brother for an Example, to whom he had uſed the ſame earneſt Perſuaſions to keep him from going into the Low-Country Wars, but could not prevail, his young Deſires prompting him to run into the Army, where he was killed; and though he ſaid he would not ceaſe to pray for me, yet he would venture to ſay to me, that if I did take this fooliſh Step, God would not bleſs me; and I would have Leiſure hereafter to reflect upon having neglected his Counſel, when there might be none to aſſiſt in my Recovery.

I obſerved in this laſt Part of his Diſcourſe, which was truly prophetic, tho' I ſuppoſe my Father did not know it to be ſo himſelf; I ſay, I obſerv'd the Tears run down his Face very plentifully, eſpecially when he ſpoke of my Brother who was killed; and that when he ſpoke of my having Leiſure to repent, and none to aſſiſt me, he was ſo moved, that he broke off the Diſcourſe, and told me, his Heart was ſo full, he could ſay no more to me.

I was ſincerely afflicted with this Diſcourſe, as indeed who could be otherwiſe? And I reſolved not to think of going abroad any more, but to ſettle at home according to my Father's Deſire: But alas! a few Days wore it all off; and, in ſhort, to prevent any of my Father's farther Importunities, in a few Weeks after, I reſolved to run quite away from him. However, I did not act ſo haſtily neither, as the firſt Heat of my Reſolution prompted, but I took my Mother at a Time when I thought her a little pleaſanter than ordinary; and told her, That my Thoughts were ſo intirely bent upon ſeeing the World, that I ſhould never ſettle to any thing with Reſolution

ſolution enough to go through with it; and my Father had better give me his Conſent, than force me to go without it; that I was now eighteen Years old, which was too late to go Apprentice to a Trade, or Clerk to an Attorney; that I was ſure, if I did, I ſhould never ſerve out my Time, but I ſhould certainly run away from my Maſter before my Time was out, and go to Sea; and if ſhe would ſpeak to my Father to let me go one Voyage abroad, if I came home again, and did not like it, I would go no more, and I would promiſe by a double Diligence to recover the Time that I had loſt.

This put my Mother into a great Paſſion: She told me, ſhe knew it would be to no Purpoſe to ſpeak to my Father upon any ſuch Subject; that he knew too well what was my Intereſt, to give his Conſent to any thing ſo much for my Hurt; and that ſhe wonder'd how I could think of any ſuch thing, after the Diſcourſe I had had with my Father, and ſuch kind and tender Expreſſions, as ſhe knew my Father had us'd to me; and that, in ſhort, if I would ruin myſelf, there was no Help for me; but I might depend I ſhould never have their Conſent to it: That, for her part, ſhe would not have ſo much Hand in my Deſtruction; and I ſhould never have it to ſay, that my Mother was willing, when my Father was not.

Though my Mother refus'd to move it to my Father, yet I heard afterwards, that ſhe reported all the Diſcourſe to him; and that my Father, after ſhewing a great Concern at it, ſaid to her, with a Sigh; That Boy might be happy, if he would ſtay at home; but if he goes abroad, he will be the moſt miſerable Wretch that ever was born; I can give no Conſent to it.

It was not till almoſt a Year after this that I broke looſe, though in the mean Time I continued obſtinately deaf to all Propoſals of ſettling to Buſineſs, and frequently expoſtulating with my Father and Mother, about their being ſo poſitively determin'd againſt what they knew my Inclinations prompted me to. But being one Day at *Hull*, whither I went caſually, and without any Purpoſe of making an Elopement that Time; but, I ſay, being there, and one of my Companions being going by Sea to *London*, in his Father's Ship, and prompting me to go with them, with the common Allurement of a

Seafaring Man; That it ſhould coſt me nothing for my Paſſage, I conſulted neither Father or Mother any more, nor ſo much as ſent them Word of it; but leaving them to hear of it, as they might, without aſking God's Bleſſing, or my Father's, without any Conſideration of Circumſtances or Conſequences, and in an ill Hour, God knows, on the firſt of *September* 1651, I went on board a Ship bound for *London:* Never any young Adventurer's Misfortunes, I believe, began ſooner, or continu'd longer, than mine: The Ship was no ſooner got out of the *Humber*, but the Wind began to blow, and the Sea to riſe in a moſt frightful Manner; and as I had never been at Sea before, I was moſt inexpreſſibly ſick in Body, and terrified in Mind: I began now ſeriouſly to reflect upon what I had done, and how juſtly I was overtaken by the Judgment of Heaven for my wicked leaving my Father's Houſe, and abandoning my Duty; all the good Counſel of my Parents, my Father's Tears, and my Mother's Intreaties, came now freſh into my Mind; and my Conſcience, which was not yet come to the Pitch of Hardneſs to which it has been ſince, reproach'd me with the Contempt of Advice, and the Breach of my Duty to God and my Father.

All this while the Storm increaſed, and the Sea went very high, tho' nothing like what I have ſeen many Times ſince; no, nor what I ſaw a few Days after: But it was enough to affect me then, who was but a young Sailor, and had never known any thing of the Matter. I expected every Wave would have ſwallow'd us up, and that every Time the Ship fell down, as I thought it did, in the Trough or Hollow of the Sea, we ſhould never riſe more: In this Agony of Mind, I made many Vows and Reſolutions, that if it would pleaſe God to ſpare my Life in this one Voyage, if ever I got once my Foot upon dry Land again, I would go directly home to my Father, and never ſet it into a Ship again while I lived; that I would take his Advice, and never run myſelf into ſuch Miſeries as theſe any more. Now I ſaw plainly the Goodneſs of his Obſervations about the middle Station of Life, how eaſy, how comfortable he had lived all his Days, and never had been expos'd to Tempeſts at Sea, or Trouble on Shore; and, in ſhort, I reſolv'd that I would, like a true repenting Prodigal, go home to my Father.

Theſe

Theſe wiſe and ſober Thoughts continued all the while the Storm continued, and indeed ſome Time after; but the next Day the Wind was abated, and the Sea calmer, and I began to be a little inur'd to it. However, I was very grave for all that Day, being alſo a little Sea-ſick ſtill; but towards Night the Weather clear'd up, the Wind was quite over, and a charming fine Evening follow'd, the Sun went down perfectly clear, and roſe ſo the next Morning; and having little or no Wind, and a ſmooth Sea, the Sun ſhining upon it, the Sight was, as I thought, the moſt delightful that ever I ſaw.

I had ſlept well in the Night, and was now no more Sea-ſick, but very chearful; looking with Wonder upon the Sea, that was ſo rough and terrible the Day before, and could be ſo calm and ſo pleaſant in ſo little a Time after: And now, leſt my good Reſolutions ſhould continue, my Companion, who had indeed intic'd me away, comes to me, well, *Bob*, ſays he, clapping me upon the Shoulder, how do you do after it? I warrant you were frighted, wer'n't you, laſt Night, when it blew but a Cap-full of Wind? A Cap-full d'ye call it? ſaid I, 'twas a terrible Storm: A Storm, you Fool you! replies he: Do you call that a Storm? Why it was nothing at all; give us but a good Ship, and Sea-room, and we think nothing of ſuch a Squall of Wind as that; but, you're but a freſh-water Sailor, *Bob*: Come, let us make a Bowl of Punch, and we'll forget all that: D'ye ſee what charming Weather 'tis now? To make ſhort this ſad Part of my Story, we went the Way of all Sailors; the Punch was made, and I was made half drunk with it, and in that one Night's Wickedneſs I drowned all my Repentance, all my Reflections upon my paſt Conduct, all my Reſolutions for the future. In a Word, as the Sea was return'd to its Smoothneſs of Surface, and ſettled Calmneſs, by the Abatement of that Storm, ſo the Hurry of my Thoughts being over, my Fears and Apprehenſions of being ſwallow'd up by Sea being forgotten, and the Current of my former Deſires return'd, I intirely forgot the Vows and Promiſes that I made in my Diſtreſs. I found indeed ſome Intervals of Reflection, and the ſerious Thoughts did, as it were, endeavour to return again ſometimes; but I ſhook them off, and rous'd myſelf from them, as it were from a Diſtemper; and apply-

plying myſelf to Drinking and Company, ſoon maſter'd the Return of thoſe Fits (for ſo I call'd them); and I had, in five or ſix Days, got a complete Victory over my Conſcience, as any young Fellow that reſolv'd not to be troubled with it, could deſire: But I was to have another Trial for it ſtill; and Providence, as in ſuch Caſes generally it does, reſolv'd to leave me intirely without Excuſe: For if I would not take this for a Deliverance, the next was to be ſuch an one, as the worſt and moſt hardened Wretch among us would confeſs both the Danger and the Mercy.

The ſixth Day of our being at Sea, we came into *Yarmouth* Roads; the Wind having been contrary, and the Weather calm, we had made but little Way ſince the Storm. Here we were obliged to come to an Anchor, and here we lay, the Wind continuing contrary, *viz.* at South-weſt, for ſeven or eight Days; during which Time, a great many Ships from *Newcaſtle* came into the ſame Roads, as the common Harbour where the Ships might wait for a Wind for the River.

We had not however rid here ſo long, but we ſhould have tided it up the River, but that the Wind blew too freſh; and, after we had lain four or five Days, blew very hard. However, the Roads being reckon'd as good as an Harbour, the Anchorage good, and our Ground-tackle very ſtrong, our Men were unconcern'd, and not in the leaſt apprehenſive of Danger; but ſpent the Time in Reſt and Mirth, after the Manner of the Sea; but the eighth Day in the Morning, the Wind increaſed, and we had all Hands at work to ſtrike our Top-maſts, and make every thing ſnug and cloſe that the Ship might ride as eaſy as poſſible. By Noon, the Sea went very high indeed, and our Ship rid *Fore-caſtle in*, ſhipp'd ſeveral Seas, and we thought once or twice our Anchor had come home; upon which, our Maſter order'd out the Sheet-anchor; ſo that we rode with two Anchors ahead, and the Cables veer'd out to the better End.

By this Time, it blew a terrible Storm indeed; and, now I began to ſee Terror and Amazement in the Faces even of the Seamen themſelves. The Maſter, tho' vigilant in the Buſineſs of preſerving the Ship, yet as he went in and out of his Cabin by me, I could hear him, ſoftly to himſelf, ſay ſeveral Times; *Lord, be merciful to us; we ſhall be*

all

all loſt, we ſhall be all undone; and the like: During theſe firſt Hurries, I was ſtupid, lying ſtill in my Cabin, which was in the Steerage, and cannot deſcribe my Temper. I could ill reſume the firſt Penitence which I had ſo apparently trampled upon, and hardened myſelf againſt: I thought the Bitterneſs of Death had been paſt; and that this would be nothing too, like the firſt. But when the Maſter himſelf came by me, as I ſaid juſt now, and ſaid we ſhould be all loſt, I was dreadfully frighted: I got up out of my Cabin, and looked out; but ſuch a diſmal Sight I never ſaw: The Sea went Mountains high, and broke upon us every three or four Minutes: When I could look about, I could ſee nothing but Diſtreſs round us: Two Ships that rid near us, we found, had cut their Maſts by the Board, being deep loaden; and our Men cried out, that a Ship which rid about a Mile ahead of us, was founder'd. Two more Ships, being driven from their Anchors, were run out of the Roads to Sea, at all Adventures, and that not with a Maſt ſtanding. The light Ships fared the beſt, as not ſo much labouring in the Sea, but two or three of them drove, and came cloſe by us, running away with only their Sprit-ſail out, before the Wind.

Towards the Evening, the Mate and Boatſwain begg'd the Maſter of our Ship to let them cut away the Fore-maſt, which he was very unwilling to do: But the Boatſwain proteſting to him, that if he did not, the Ship would founder, he conſented; and when they had cut away the Fore-maſt, the Main-maſt ſtood ſo looſe, and ſhook the Ship ſo much, they were obliged to cut her away alſo, and make a clear Deck.

Any one muſt judge what a Condition I muſt be in at all this, who was but a young Sailor, and who had been in ſuch a Fright before at but a little. But if I can expreſs at this Diſtance the Thoughts I had about me at that Time, I was in tenfold more Horror of Mind upon Account of my former Convictions, and the having returned from them to the Reſolutions I had wickedly taken at firſt, than I was at Death itſelf; and theſe, added to the Terror of the Storm, put me into ſuch a Condition, that I can by no Words deſcribe it. But the worſt was not come yet; the Storm continued with ſuch Fury, that the Seamen themſelves acknowledged they had never ſeen a worſe.

We

We had a good Ship, but ſhe was deep loaden, and wallowed in the Sea, that the Seamen every now-and-then cried out, ſhe would founder. It was my Advantage in one reſpect, that I did not know what they meant by founder, till I inquir'd. However, the Storm was ſo violent, that I ſaw what is not often ſeen, the Maſter, the Boatſwain, and ſome others more ſenſible than the reſt, at their Prayers, and expecting every Moment when the Ship would go to the Bottom. In the Middle of the Night, and under all the reſt of our Diſtreſſes, one of the Men that had been down on Purpoſe to ſee, cried out we had ſprung a Leak; another ſaid, there was four Feet Water in the Hold. Then all Hands were call'd to the Pump. At that very Word my Heart, as I thought, died within me; and I fell backwards upon the Side of my Bed where I ſat, into the Cabin. However, the Men rous'd me, and told me, that I that was able to do nothing before, was as well able to pump as another; at which I ſtirr'd up, and went to the Pump, and work'd very heartily. While this was doing, the Maſter ſeeing ſome light Colliers, who, not able to ride out the Storm, were obliged to ſlip and run away to the Sea, and would come near us, order'd to fire a Gun as a Signal of Diſtreſs. I, who knew nothing what they meant, was ſo ſurpris'd, that I thought the Ship had broke, or ſome dreadful thing happen'd. In a Word, I was ſo ſurpris'd, that I fell down in a Swoon. As this was a Time when every Body had his own Life to think of, nobody minded me, or what was become of me; but another Man ſtept up to the Pump, and, thruſting me aſide with his Foot, let me lie, thinking I had been dead; and it was a great while before I came to myſelf.

We work'd on, but the Water increaſing in the Hold, it was apparent, that the Ship would founder; and tho' the Storm began to abate a little, yet as it was not poſſible ſhe could ſwim till we might run into any Port, ſo the Maſter continu'd firing Guns for Help; and a light Ship, who had rid it out juſt ahead of us, ventured a Boat out to help us. It was with the utmoſt Hazard the Boat came near us; but it was impoſſible for us to get on board, or for the Boat to lie near the Ship-ſide, till at laſt the Men rowing very heartily, and venturing their Lives to ſave ours, our Men caſt them a Rope over the

R. Crusoe Shipwreckt at Yarmouth. *Vol. I. Page 18. Clark sc.*

the Stern with a Buoy to it, and then veered it out a great Length, which they, after much Labour and Hazard, took hold of, and we haled them close under our Stern, and got all into their Boat. It was to no Purpose for them or us, after we were in the Boat, to think of reaching to their own Ship; so all agreed to let her drive, and only to pull her in towards Shore as much as we could; and our Master promis'd them, That if the Boat was stav'd upon Shore, he would make it good to their Master: So partly rowing, and partly driving, our Boat went away to the Northward, sloping towards the Shore, almost as far as *Wintertonneſſe*.

We were not much more than a Quarter of an Hour out of our Ship, but we saw her sink: And then I understood for the first Time, what was meant by a Ship foundering in the Sea. I must acknowledge I had hardly Eyes to look up, when the Seamen told me she was sinking; for, from that Moment they rather put me into the Boat, than that I might be said to go in; my Heart was as it were dead within me, partly with Fright, partly with Horror of Mind, and the Thoughts of what was yet before me.

While we were in this Condition, the Men yet labouring at the Oar to bring the Boat near the Shore, we could see (when our Boat mounting the Waves, we were able to see the Shore) a great many People running along the Strand to assist us when we should come near: But we made but slow Way towards the Shore; nor were we able to reach the Shore, till being past the Light-house at *Winterton*, the Shore falls off to the Westward towards *Cromer*; and so the Land broke off a little the Violence of the Wind. Here we got in, and, tho' not without much Difficulty, got all safe on Shore, and walk'd afterwards on Foot to *Yarmouth*, where, as unfortunate Men, we were used with great Humanity, as well by the Magistrates of the Town, who assign'd us good Quarters, as by particular Merchants and Owners of Ships; and had Money given us sufficient to carry us either to *London*, or back to *Hull*, as we thought fit.

Had I now had the Sense to have gone back to *Hull*, and have gone home, I had been happy, and my Father, an Emblem of our Blessed Saviour's Parable, had even

killed

killed the fatted Calf for me; for, hearing the Ship I went away in, was caſt away in *Yarmouth* Road, it was a great while before he had any Aſſurances, that I was not drown'd.

But my ill Fate puſh'd me on now, with an Obſtinacy that nothing could reſiſt; and tho' I had ſeveral Times loud Calls from my Reaſon, and my more compoſed Judgment, to go home, yet I had no Power to do it: I know not what to call this, nor will I urge, that it is a ſecret over-ruling Decree, that hurries us on to be the Inſtruments of our own Deſtruction, even tho' it be before us, and that we puſh upon it with our Eyes open. Certainly, nothing but ſome ſuch decreed unavoidable Miſery attending, and which it was impoſſible for me to eſcape, could have puſhed me forward againſt the calm Reaſonings and Perſuaſions of my moſt retired Thoughts, and againſt two ſuch viſible Inſtructions as I had met with in my firſt Attempt.

My Comrade, who had help'd to harden me before, and who was the Maſter's Son, was now leſs forward than I. The firſt Time he ſpoke to me after we were at *Yarmouth*, which was not till two or three Days; for we were ſeparated in the Town to ſeveral Quarters; I ſay, the firſt Time he ſaw me, it appeared his Tone was altered; and, looking very melancholy, and ſhaking his Head, aſk'd me how I did: And telling his Father who I was, and how I had come this Voyage only for a Trial, in order to go farther abroad; his Father turning to me with a very grave and concern'd Tone, *Young Man*, ſays he, *you ought never to go to Sea any more; you ought to take this for a plain and viſible Token, that you are not to be a Seafaring Man.* Why, Sir, ſaid I, will you go to Sea no more? *That is another Caſe*, ſaid he; *it is my Calling, and therefore my Duty; but as you made this Voyage for a Trial, you ſee what a Taſte Heaven has given you, of what you are to expect, if you perſiſt; perhaps all this has befallen us on your Account, like* Jonah *in the Ship of* Tarſhiſh. *Pray*, continues he, *what are you? And on what Account did you go to Sea?* Upon that I told him ſome of my Story; at the End of which, he burſt out with a ſtrange Kind of Paſſion; what had I done, ſays he, that ſuch an unhappy Wretch ſhould come into my Ship! I would not ſet my Foot in the ſame Ship with thee again for.

for a thouſand Pounds: This indeed was, as I ſaid, an Excurſion of his Spirits, which were yet agitated by the Senſe of his Loſs, and was further than he could have Authority to go: However, he afterwards talked very gravely to me, exhorting me to go back to my Father, and not tempt Providence to my Ruin; told me, I might ſee a viſible Hand of Heaven againſt me: *And, young Man*, ſaid he, *depend upon it, if you do not go back, where-ever you go, you will meet with nothing but Diſaſters and Diſappointments, till your Father's Words are fulfilled upon you.*

We parted ſoon after; for I made him little Anſwer, and I ſaw him no more; which Way he went, I know not. As for me, having ſome Money in my Pocket, I travelled to *London* by Land; and there, as well as on the Road, had many Struggles with myſelf, what Courſe of Life I ſhould take, and whether I ſhould go home, or go to Sea.

As to going home, Shame oppoſed the beſt Motions that offered to my Thoughts; and it immediately occurred to me how I ſhould be laughed at among the Neighbours, and ſhould be aſham'd to ſee, not my Father and Mother only, but even every Body elſe: From whence I have ſince often obſerved how incongruous and irrational the common Temper of Mankind is, eſpecially of Youth, to that Reaſon that ought to guide them in ſuch Caſes; *viz.* That they are not aſhamed to ſin, and yet are aſhamed to repent; not aſhamed of the Action, for which they ought juſtly to be eſteemed Fools; but are aſhamed of the Returning, which only can make them eſteemed wiſe Men.

In this State of Life, however, I remain'd ſome Time, uncertain what Meaſures to take, and what Courſe of Life to lead. An irreſiſtible Reluctance continued to going home; and as I ſtay'd awhile, the Remembrance of the Diſtreſs I had been in wore off; and as that abated, the little Motion I had in my Deſires to a Return, wore off with it, till at laſt I quite laid aſide the Thoughts of it, and look'd out for a Voyage.

That evil Influence, which carried me firſt away from my Father's Houſe, which hurried me into the wild and indigeſted Notion of raiſing my Fortune, and that impreſs'd thoſe Conceits ſo forcibly upon me, as to make me deaf to all good Advice, and to the Intreaties, and

even

even the Commands, of my Father; I ſay, the ſame Influence, whatever it was, preſented the moſt unfortunate of all Enterpriſes to my View; and I went on board a Veſſel bound to the Coaſt of *Africa*, or, as our Sailors vulgarly call it, a Voyage to *Guinea*.

It was my great Misfortune, that in all theſe Adventures I did not ſhip myſelf as a Sailor; whereby though I might indeed have work'd a little harder than ordinary, yet at the ſame Time I had learn'd the Duty and Office of a Foremaſtman; and in Time might have qualified myſelf for a Mate or Lieutenant, if not for a Maſter. But as it was always my Fate to chooſe for the worſe, ſo I did here; for, having Money in my Pocket, and good Cloaths on my Back, I would always go on board in the Habit of a Gentleman; and ſo I neither had any Buſineſs in the Ship, nor learn'd to do any.

It was my Lot firſt of all to fall into pretty good Company in *London*, which does not always happen to ſuch looſe and unguided young Fellows as I then was; the Devil generally not omitting to lay ſome Snare for them very early: But it was not ſo with me; I firſt fell acquainted with the Maſter of a Ship who had been on the Coaſt of *Guinea*, and who, having had very good Succeſs there, was reſolv'd to go again; this Captain, taking a Fancy to my Converſation, which was not diſagreeable at that Time, hearing me ſay I had a Mind to ſee the World, told me, if I would go the Voyage with him, I ſhould be at no Expence; I ſhould be his Meſſmate, and his Companion; and if I could carry any thing with me, I ſhould have all the Advantage of it that the Trade would admit; and perhaps I might meet with ſome Encouragement.

I embrac'd the Offer, and, entering into a ſtrict Friendſhip with this Captain, who was an honeſt plain-dealing Man, went the Voyage with him, and carried a ſmall Adventure with me, which, by the diſintereſted Honeſty of my Friend the Captain, I increaſed very conſiderably; for I carried about 40 *l.* in ſuch Toys and Trifles as the Captain directed me to buy. This 40 *l.* I had muſtered together by the Aſſiſtance of ſome of my Relations, whom I correſponded with, and who, I believe, got my Father, or at leaſt, my Mother, to contribute ſo much as that, to my firſt Adventure.

This

This was the only Voyage which I may ſay was ſucceſsful in all my Adventures, and which I owe to the Integrity and Honeſty of my Friend the Captain; under whom I got a competent Knowledge of the Mathematics, and the Rules of Navigation; learn'd how to keep an Account of the Ship's Courſe, take an Obſervation, and, in ſhort, to underſtand ſome things that were needful to be underſtood by a Sailor: For, as he took Delight to introduce me, I took Delight to learn; and, in a Word, this Voyage made me both a Sailor and a Merchant: For I brought home five Pounds nine Ounces of Gold-duſt for my Adventure, which yielded me in *London*, at my Return, almoſt 300 *l.* and this filled me with thoſe aſpiring Thoughts which have ſince ſo completed my Ruin.

Yet, even in this Voyage, I had Misfortunes too; particularly that I was continually ſick, being thrown into a violent Calenture by the exceſſive Heat of the Climate; our principal Trading being upon the Coaſt, from the Lat. of 15 Degrees N. even to the Line itſelf.

I was now ſet up for a *Guinea* Trader; and my Friend, to my great Misfortune, dying ſoon after his Arrival, I reſolv'd to go the ſame Voyage again; and I embark'd in the ſame Veſſel with one who was his Mate in the former Voyage, and had now got the Command of the Ship. This was the unhappieſt Voyage that ever Man made; for tho' I did not carry quite 100 *l.* of my new-gain'd Wealth, ſo that I had 200 *l.* left, and which I lodged with my Friend's Widow, who was very juſt to me, yet I fell into terrible Misfortunes in this Voyage; and the firſt was this; *viz.* Our Ship, making her Courſe towards the *Canary* Iſlands, or rather between thoſe Iſlands and the *African* Shore, was ſurpris'd in the Grey of the Morning by a *Mooriſh* Rover of *Sallee*, who gave Chace to us with all the Sail ſhe could make. We crouded alſo as much Canvas as our Yards would ſpread, or our Maſts carry, to have got clear; but finding the Pirate gain'd upon us, and would certainly come up with us in a few Hours, we prepar'd to fight; our Ship having twelve Guns, and the Rover eighteen. About three in the Afternoon he came up with us, and, bringing to, by Miſtake, juſt athwart our Quarter, inſtead of athwart our Stern, as he intended, we brought eight of our Guns to

beat

bear on that Side, and pour'd in a Broadſide upon him, which made him ſheer off again, after returning our Fire, and pouring in alſo his Small-ſhot from near 200 Men which he had on board. However, we had not a Man touch'd, all our Men keeping cloſe: He prepar'd to attack us again, and we to defend ourſelves; but, laying us on board the next Time upon our other Quarter, he entered 60 Men upon our Decks, who immediately fell to cutting and hacking the Decks and Rigging. We ply'd them with Small-ſhot, Half pikes, Powder-cheſts, and ſuch-like, and clear'd our Deck of them twice. However, to cut ſhort this melancholy Part of our Story, our Ship being diſabled, and three of our Men kill'd, and eight wounded, we were obliged to yield; and were carry'd all Priſoners into *Sallee*, a Port belonging to the *Moors*.

The Uſage I had there was not ſo dreadful as at firſt I apprehended; nor was I carried up the Country, to the Emperor's Court, as the reſt of our Men were, but was kept by the Captain of the Rover, as his proper Prize, and made his Slave, being young and nimble, and fit for his Buſineſs. At this ſurpriſing Change of my Circumſtances, from a Merchant to a miſerable Slave, I was perfectly overwhelmed; and now I look'd back upon my Father's prophetic Diſcourſe to me, that I ſhould be miſerable, and have none to relieve me; which I thought was now ſo effectually brought to paſs, that I could not be worſe; that now the Hand of Heaven had overtaken me, and I was undone without Redemption. But alas! this was but a Taſte of the Miſery I was to go thro', as will appear in the Sequel of this Story.

As my new Patron or Maſter had taken me home to his Houſe, ſo I was in hopes, that he would take me with him when he went to Sea again, believing that it would be ſome Time or other his Fate to be taken by a *Spaniſh* or *Portugal* Man of War; and that then I ſhould be ſet at Liberty. But this Hope of mine was ſoon taken away; for when he went to Sea, he left me on Shore to look after his little Garden, and do the Drudgery of Slaves about his Houſe; and when he came home again from his Cruize, he order'd me to lie in the Cabin, to look after the Ship.

Here I meditated nothing but my Eſcape, and what Method I might take to effect it; but found no Way that had

had the leaſt Probability in it: Nothing preſented to make the Suppoſition of it rational; for I had nobody to communicate it to, that would embark with me, no Fellow Slave, no *Engliſhman*, *Iriſhman* or *Scotſman* there, but myſelf; ſo that for two Years, tho' I often pleaſed myſelf with the Imagination, yet I never had the leaſt encouraging Proſpect of putting it in Practice.

After about two Years, an odd Circumſtance preſented itſelf, which put the old Thoughts of making ſome Attempt for my Liberty again in my Head: My Patron lying at home longer than uſual, without fitting out his Ship, which, as I heard, was for Want of Money, he uſed conſtantly once or twice a Week, ſometimes oftener, if the Weather was fair, to take the Ship's Pinnace, and go out into the Road a fiſhing; and as he always took me and a young *Mareſco* with him to row the Boat, we made him very merry, and I prov'd very dextrous in catching Fiſh; inſomuch, that ſometimes he would ſend me with a *Moor*, one of his Kinſmen, and the Youth the *Mareſco*, as they call'd him, to catch a Diſh of Fiſh for him.

It happened one Time, that going a fiſhing with him in a calm Morning, a Fog roſe ſo thick, that tho' we were not half a League from the Shore, we loſt Sight of it; and, rowing we knew not whither, or which Way, we labour'd all Day, and all the next Night; and when the Morning came, we found we had pull'd off to Sea, inſtead of pulling in for the Shore; and that we were at leaſt two Leagues from the Land: However, we got well in again, tho' with a great deal of Labour, and ſome Danger; for the Wind began to blow pretty freſh in the Morning; but particularly we were all very hungry.

But our Patron, warn'd by this Diſaſter, reſolv'd to take more Care of himſelf for the future; and having lying by him the Long-boat of our *Engliſh* Ship which he had taken, he reſolv'd he would not go a fiſhing any more without a Compaſs and ſome Proviſion; ſo he order'd the Carpenter of his Ship, who alſo was an *Engliſh* Slave, to build a little State-room or Cabin in the Middle of the Long-boat, like that of a Barge, with a Place to ſtand behind it to ſteer, and haul home the Main-ſheet; and Room before for an Hand or two to ſtand and work the Sails. She ſail'd with that we call a Shoulder-of-Mutton-Sail; and

the

the Boom jibb'd over the Top of the Cabin, which lay very ſnug and low, and had in it Room for him to lie, with a Slave or two, and a Table to eat on, with ſome ſmall Lockers to put in ſome Bottles of ſuch Liquor as he thought fit to drink; particularly his Bread, Rice, and Coffee.

We were frequently out with this Boat a fiſhing; and as I was moſt dextrous to catch Fiſh for him, he never went without me. It happened one Day, that he had appointed to go out in this Boat, either for Pleaſure or for Fiſh, with two or three *Moors* of ſome Diſtinction, and for whom he had provided extraordinarily; and had therefore ſent on board the Boat over Night a larger Store of Proviſions than uſual; and had ordered me to get ready three Fuſils with Powder and Shot, which were on board his Ship; for that they deſigned ſome Sport of Fowling, as well as Fiſhing.

I got all things ready, as he had directed; and waited the next Morning with the Boat waſhed clean, her Ancient and Pendants out, and every thing to accommodate his Gueſts; when by and by my Patron come on board alone, and told me his Gueſts had put off going, upon ſome Buſineſs that fell out; and order'd me, with the Man and Boy, as uſual, to go out with the Boat, and catch them ſome Fiſh, for that his Friends were to ſup at his Houſe; he commanded me too, that as ſoon as I had got ſome Fiſh, I ſhould bring it home to his Houſe: All which I prepar'd to do.

This Moment my former Notions of Deliverance darted into my Thoughts; for now I found I was like to have a little Ship at my Command; and my Maſter being gone, I prepar'd to furniſh myſelf, not for fiſhing Buſineſs, but for a Voyage; tho' I knew not, neither did I ſo much as conſider, whither I would ſteer; for, any where to get out of that Place was my Way.

My firſt Contrivance was to make a Pretence to ſpeak to this *Moor*, to get ſomething for our Subſiſtence on board; for I told him we muſt not preſume to eat of our Patron's Bread: He ſaid, that was true; ſo he brought a large Baſket of Ruſk, or Biſcuit of their Kind, and three Jars with freſh Water, into the Boat: I knew where my Patron's Caſe of Bottles ſtood, which it was evident by the Make, were taken out of ſome *Engliſh* Prize, and I conveyed

veyed them into the Boat, while the *Moor* was on Shore, as if they had been there before, for our Maſter: I conveyed alſo a great Lump of Bees-wax into the Boat, which weigh'd about half an hundred Weight, with a Parcel of Twine or Thread, an Hatchet, a Saw, and an Hammer, all which were of great Uſe to us afterwards; eſpecially the Wax to make Candles. Another Trick I tried upon him, which he innocently came into alſo: His Name was *Iſmael*, whom they call *Muley*, or *Moley*; ſo I call'd to him, *Moley*, ſaid I, our Patron's Guns are all on board the Boat: Can you not get a little Powder and Shot: It may be we may kill ſome *Aleamies* (a Fowl like our *Curlews*) for ourſelves; for I know he keeps the Gunner's Stores in the Ship. Yes, ſays he, I'll bring ſome: Accordingly he brought a great Leather Pouch, which held about a Pound and an half of Powder, or rather more; and another with Shot, that had five or ſix Pounds, with ſome Bullets, and put all into the Boat: At the ſame Time I had found ſome Powder, of my Maſter's, in the great Cabin, with which I filled one of the large Bottles in the Caſe, which was almoſt empty; pouring what was in it into another: And thus furniſh'd with every thing needful, we ſailed out of the Port to fiſh. The Caſtle, which is at the Entrance of the Port, knew who we were, and took no Notice of us; and we were not above a Mile out of the Port, before we haul'd in our Sail, and ſat us down to fiſh. The Wind blew from the N. N. E. which was contrary to my Deſire; for had it blown Southerly, I had been ſure to have made the Coaſt of *Spain*, and at leaſt reach'd to the Bay of *Cadiz*; but my Reſolutions were, blow which Way it would, I would be gone from that horrid Place where I was, and leave the reſt to Fate.

After we had fiſhed ſome Time, and catched nothing (for when I had Fiſh on my Hook, I would not pull them up, that he might not ſee them) I ſaid to the *Moor*, This will not do; our Maſter will not be thus ſerved; we muſt ſtand farther off: He, thinking no Harm, agreed; and being in the Head of the Boat, ſet the Sails; and as I had the Helm, I ran the Boat out near a League farther, and then brought her to, as if I would fiſh; when, giving the Boy the Helm, I ſtept forward to where the *Moor* was; and, making as if I ſtoop'd for ſomething

behind him, I took him by Surpriſe with my Arm under his Twiſt, and toſs'd him clear over board into the Sea; he roſe immediately, for he ſwam like a Cork, and call'd to me, begg'd to be taken in, told me he would go all over the World with me: He ſwam ſo ſtrong after the Boat, that he would have reach'd me very quickly, there being but little Wind; upon which I ſtepped into the Cabin, and, fetching one of the Fowling-pieces, I preſented it at him, and told him, I had done him no Hurt, and, if he would be quiet, I would do him none: But, ſaid I, you ſwim well enough to reach the Shore, and the Sea is calm; make the beſt of your Way to Shore, and I will do you no Harm; but if you come near the Boat, I will ſhoot you through the Head; for I am reſolv'd to have my Liberty. So he turn'd himſelf about, and ſwam for the Shore, and I make no doubt but he reach'd it with Eaſe, for he was an excellent Swimmer.

I could have been content to have taken this *Moor* with me, and have drown'd the Boy; but there was no venturing to truſt him: When he was gone, I turn'd to the Boy, whom they call'd *Xury*, and ſaid to him, *Xury*, if you will be faithful to me, I will make you a great Man; but if you will not *ſtroke your Face* to be true to me, *that is*, *ſwear by* Mahomet, *and his Father's Beard*, I muſt throw you into the Sea too. The Boy ſmiled in my Face, and ſpoke ſo innocently, that I could not miſtruſt him; and ſwore to be faithful to me, and go all over the World with me.

While I was in the View of the *Moor* that was ſwimming, I ſtood out directly to Sea, with the Boat rather ſtretching to Windward, that they might think me gone towards the *Streights* Mouth (as indeed any one that had been in their Wits muſt have been ſuppoſed to do); for who would have ſuppoſed we were ſail'd on to the Southward, to the truly *Barbarian* Coaſt, where whole Nations of Negroes were ſure to ſurround us with their Canoes, and deſtroy us; where we could never once go on Shore, but we ſhould be devour'd by ſavage Beaſts, or more mercileſs Savages of human Kind?

But as ſoon as it grew duſk in the Evening, I chang'd my Courſe, and ſteer'd directly South and by Eaſt, bending my Courſe a little towards the Eaſt, that I might keep

keep in with the Shore; and having a fair freſh Gale of Wind, and a ſmooth quiet Sea, I made ſuch Sail, that I believe by the next Day at Three o'Clock in the Afternoon, when I firſt made the Land, I could not be leſs than 150 Miles South of *Sallee*, quite beyond the Emperor of *Morocco*'s Dominions, or indeed of any other King thereabouts, for we ſaw no People.

Yet ſuch was the Fright I had taken at the *Moors*, and the dreadful Apprehenſions I had of falling into their Hands, that I would not ſtop, or go on Shore, or come to an Anchor, the Wind continuing fair, till I had ſail'd in that manner five Days; and then the Wind ſhifting to the Southward, I conclude alſo, that if any of our Veſſels were in Chace of me, they alſo would now give over; ſo I ventur'd to make to the Coaſt, and came to an Anchor in the Mouth of a little River, I knew not what or where; neither what Latitude, what Country, what Nation, or what River; I neither ſaw, or deſired to ſee, any People; the principal Thing I wanted was freſh Water. We came into this Creek in the Evening, reſolving to ſwim on Shore as ſoon as it was dark, and diſcover the Country; but as ſoon as it was quite dark, we heard ſuch dreadful Noiſes of the Barking, Roaring, and Howling of wild Creatures, of we knew not what kinds, that the poor Boy was ready to die with Fear, and begg'd of me not to go on Shore till Day. Well, *Xury*, ſaid I, then I won't; but it may be we may ſee Men by Day, who will be as bad to us as thoſe Lions: *Then we may give them the ſhoot Gun*, ſays *Xury*, laughing, *make them run away*; ſuch *Engliſh Xury* ſpoke by converſing among us Slaves. However, I was glad to ſee the Boy ſo chearful, and I gave him a Dram (out of our Patron's Caſe of Bottles) to chear him up: After all, *Xury*'s Advice was good, and I took it; we dropp'd our little Anchor, and lay ſtill all Night; I ſay ſtill, for we ſlept none; for in two or three Hours we ſaw vaſt great Creatures, we knew not what to call them, of many Sorts, come down to the Sea-ſhore, and run into the Water, wallowing and waſhing themſelves, for the Pleaſure of cooling themſelves; and they made ſuch hideous Howlings and Yellings, that I never indeed heard the like.

Xury was dreadfully frighted, and indeed ſo was I too: But we were both worſe frighted when we heard one mighty Creature come ſwimming towards our Boat; we could not ſee him, but we might hear him by his blowing, to be a monſtrous, huge, and furious Beaſt; *Xury* ſaid it was a Lion, and it might be for aught I know: Poor *Xury* crid out to me to weigh the Anchor, and row away. No, ſays I, *Xury*, we can ſlip our Cable with a Buoy to it, and go to Sea, they cannot follow us far. I had no ſooner ſaid ſo, but I perceived the Creature (whatever it was) within two Oars Length, which ſomething ſurpriſed me; however, I immediately ſtept to the Cabin-door, and taking up my Gun, fir'd at him; upon which he immediately turn'd about, and ſwam towards the Shore again.

But it was not poſſible to deſcribe the horrible Noiſes, and hideous Cries and Howlings, that were raiſed as well upon the Edge of the Shore, as higher within the Country, upon the Noiſe or Report of a Gun, a Thing I have ſome Reaſon to believe thoſe Creatures had never heard before. This convinced me, that there was no going on Shore for us in the Night upon that Coaſt; and how to venture on Shore in the Day, was another Queſtion too; for to have fallen into the Hands of any of the Savages, had been as bad as to have fallen into the Paws of Lions and Tigers; at leaſt we were equally apprehenſive of the Danger of it.

Be that as it would, we were obliged to go on Shore ſomewhere or other for Water, for we had not a Pint left in the Boat; when or where to get to it, was the Point: *Xury* ſaid, if I would let him go on Shore with one of the Jars, he would find if there was any Water, and bring ſome to me. I aſked him, why he would go? why I ſhould not go, and he ſtay in the Boat? The Boy anſwered with ſo much Affection, that made me love him ever after: Says he, *If wild Mans come, they eat me, you go wey.* Well, *Xury*, ſaid I, we will both go, and if the wild Mans come, we will kill them, they ſhall eat neither of us. So I gave *Xury* a Piece of Ruſk-bread to eat, and a Dram out of our Patron's Caſe of Bottles, which I mentioned before, and we hal'd the Boat in as near the Shore, as we thought was proper, and

and waded on Shore, carrying nothing but our Arms, and two Jars of Water.

I did not care to go out of Sight of the Boat, fearing the coming of Canoes with *Savages* down the River: But the Boy, ſeeing a low Place, about a Mile up the Country, rambled to it, and by-and-by I ſaw him come running towards me: I thought he was purſued by ſome *Savage*, or frighted with ſome wild Beaſt, and I ran forward towards him, to help him; but when I came nearer to him, I ſaw ſomething hanging over his Shoulders, which was a Creature that he had ſhot like a Hare, but different in Colour, and longer Legs; however, we were very glad of it, and it was very good Meat; but the great Joy that poor *Xury* came with, was to tell me he had found good Water, and ſeen no wild Mans.

But we found afterwards, that we need not take ſuch Pains for Water; for a little higher up the Creek where we were, we found the Water freſh when the Tide was out, which flows but a little Way up; ſo we filled our Jars, and feaſted on the Hare we had killed, and prepared to go on our Way, having ſeen no Footſteps of any human Creature in that Part of the Country.

As I had been one Voyage to this Coaſt before, I knew very well, that the Iſlands of the *Canaries*, and the *Cape de Verd* Iſlands alſo, lay not far off from the Coaſt. But as I had no Inſtruments to take an Obſervation to know what Latitude we were in, and did not exactly know, or at leaſt not remember, what Latitude they were in, I knew not where to look for them, or when to ſtand off to Sea towards them, otherwiſe I might now eaſily have found ſome of theſe Iſlands. But my Hope was, that if I ſtood along this Coaſt till I came to that Part where the *Engliſh* traded, I ſhould find ſome of their Veſſels upon their uſual Deſign of Trade, that would relieve and take us in.

By the beſt of my Calculation, that Place where I now was, muſt be that Country, which, lying between the Emperor of *Morocco*'s Dominions and the *Negroes*, lies waſte and uninhabited, except by wild Beaſts; the *Negroes* having abandoned it, and gone farther South, for fear of the *Moors*; and the *Moors* not thinking it worth inhabiting, by reaſon of its Barrenneſs; and indeed both forſaking *it becauſe of* the prodigious Numbers of Ti-

gers, Lions, Leopards, and other furious Creatures which harbour there; ſo that the *Moors* uſe it for their hunting only, where they go like an Army, two or three thouſand Men at a time; and indeed for near an hundred Miles together upon this Coaſt, we ſaw nothing but a waſte uninhabited Country by Day, and heard nothing but Howlings and Roarings of wild Beaſts by Night.

Once or twice in the Day-time, I thought I ſaw the *Pico* of *Teneriffe*, being the high Top of the Mountain *Teneriffe* in the *Canaries*; and had a great Mind to venture out, in Hopes of reaching thither; but, having tried twice, I was forced in again by contrary Winds, the Sea alſo going too high for my little Veſſel; ſo I reſolved to purſue my firſt Deſign, and keep along the Shore.

Several times we were obliged to land for freſh Water, after we had left this Place; and once in particular, being early in the Morning, we came to an Anchor under a little Point of Land, which was pretty high; and the Tide beginning to flow, we lay ſtill to go farther in. *Xury*, whoſe Eyes were more about him than, it ſeems, mine were, calls ſoftly to me, and tells me, that we had beſt go farther off the Shore; for, ſays he, look yonder lies a dreadful Monſter on the Side of that Hillock, faſt aſleep. I look'd where he pointed, and ſaw a dreadful Monſter indeed; for it was a terrible great Lion, that lay on the Side of the Shore, under the Shade of a Piece of the Hill, that hung as it were a little over him. *Xury*, ſaid I, you ſhall go on Shore and kill him: *Xury* look'd frighted, and ſaid, *Me kill! he eat me at one Mouth*, one Mouthful he meant; however, I ſaid no more to the Boy, but bad him be ſtill, and took our biggeſt Gun, which was almoſt Muſquet bore, and loaded it with a good Charge of Powder, and with two Slugs, and laid it down; then I loaded another Gun with two Bullets, and the third (for we had three Pieces) I loaded with five ſmaller Bullets. I took the beſt Aim I could with the firſt Piece to have ſhot him in the Head; but he lay ſo with his Leg raiſed a little above his Noſe, that the Slug hit his Leg about the Knee, and broke the Bone. He ſtarted up growling at firſt; but finding his Leg broke, fell down again, and then got up upon three *Legs, and gave* the moſt hideous Roar that ever I heard.

Crusoe, & his boy Xury on the Coast of Guinny shooting a Lyon. Vol. I.

I was a little ſurpriſed that I had not hit him on the Head; however, I took up the ſecond Piece immediately, and, tho' he began to move off, fir'd again, and ſhot him into the Head; and had the Pleaſure to ſee him drop, and making but little Noiſe, he lay ſtruggling for Life. Then *Xury* took Heart, and would have me let him go on Shore. Well, go, ſaid I. So the Boy jump'd into the Water, and taking the little Gun in one Hand, ſwam to the Shore with the other Hand; and coming cloſe to the Creature, put the Muzzle of the Piece to his Ear, and ſhot him into the Head again, which diſpatch'd him quite.

This was Game indeed to us, but this was no Food; and I was very ſorry to loſe three Charges of Powder and Shot, upon a Creature that was good for nothing to us. However, *Xury* ſaid, he would have ſome of him; ſo he comes on board, and aſked me to give him the Hatchet. For what, *Xury?* ſaid I. *Me cut off his Head*, ſaid he. However, *Xury* could not cut off his Head, but he cut off a Foot, and brought it with him, and it was a monſtrous great one.

I bethought myſelf however, that perhaps the Skin of him might one way or other be of ſome Value to us; and I reſolv'd to take off his Skin, if I could. So *Xury* and I went to work with him; but *Xury* was much the better Workman at it, for I knew very ill how to do it. Indeed it took us up (both) the whole Day; but at laſt we got off the Hide of him, and, ſpreading it on the Top of our Cabin, the Sun effectually dried it in two Days time, and it afterwards ſerv'd me to lie upon.

After this Stop, we made on to the Southward continually for ten or twelve Days, living very ſparingly on our Proviſions, which began to abate very much, and going no oftener into the Shore than we were obliged to for freſh Water. My Deſign in this was, to make the River *Gambia* or *Senegal*, that is to ſay, any where about the *Cape de Verd*, where I was in Hopes to meet with ſome *European* Ship; and if I did not, I knew not what Courſe I had to take, but to ſeek for the Iſlands, or periſh there among the *Negroes*. I knew that all the Ships from *Europe*, which ſail'd either to the Coaſt of *Guiney*, or to *Braſil*, or to the *Eaſt-Indies*, made this Cape, or thoſe Iſlands; and, in a Word, I put the whole of my

Fortune upon this ſingle Point, either that I muſt meet with ſome Ship, or muſt periſh.

When I had purſued this Reſolution about ten Days longer, as I have ſaid, I began to ſee that the Land was inhabited; and in two or three Places as we ſailed by, we ſaw People ſtand upon the Shore to look at us; we could alſo perceive they were quite black, and ſtark naked. I was once inclined to have gone on Shore to them; but *Xury* was my better Counſellor, and ſaid to me, *No go, no go:* However, I hal'd in nearer the Shore, that I might talk to them, and I found they ran along the Shore by me a good way. I obſerv'd they had no Weapons in their Hands, except one, who had a long ſlender Stick, which *Xury* ſaid was a Lance, and that they would throw them a great way with good Aim; ſo I kept at a Diſtance, but talk'd with them by Signs as well as I could, and particularly made Signs for ſomething to eat. They beckon'd to me to ſtop my Boat, and they would fetch me ſome Meat. Upon this I lower'd the Top of my Sail, and lay by; and two of them ran up into the Country, and in leſs than half an Hour came back, and brought with them two Pieces of dry Fleſh, and ſome Corn, ſuch as is the Produce of their Country; but we neither knew what the one or the other was; however, we were willing to accept it. But how to come at it was our next Diſpute; for I was not for venturing on Shore to them, and they were as much afraid of us; but they took a ſafe way for us all; for they brought it to the Shore, and laid it down, and went and ſtood a great way off, till we fetch'd it on board, and then came cloſe to us again.

We made Signs of Thanks to them, for we had nothing to make them amends: But an Opportunity offered that very Inſtant, to oblige them wonderfully; for while we were lying by the Shore, came two mighty Creatures, one purſuing the other (as we took it) with great Fury, from the Mountains towards the Sea; whether it was the Male purſuing the Female, or whether they were in Sport, or in Rage, we could not tell, any more than we could tell whether it was uſual or ſtrange; but I believe it was the latter, becauſe, in the firſt Place, thoſe ravenous Creatures ſeldom appear but in the Night; and, in the ſecond Place, we found the People terribly

terribly frighted, eſpecially the Women. The Man that had the Lance or Dart did not fly from them, but the reſt did; however, as the two Creatures ran directly into the Water, they did not ſeem to offer to fall upon the *Negroes*, but plung'd themſelves into the Sea, and ſwam about as if they had come for their Diverſion; at laſt one of them began to come nearer our Boat than at firſt I expected; but I lay ready for him; for I had loaded my Gun with all poſſible Expedition, and bid *Xury* load both the other. As ſoon as he came fairly within my Reach, I fir'd, and ſhot him directly into the Head: Immediately he ſunk down into the Water, but roſe inſtantly, and plung'd up and down as if he was ſtruggling for Life; and ſo indeed he was: He immediately made to the Shore; but between the Wound, which was his mortal Hurt, and the ſtrangling of the Water, he died juſt before he reach'd the Shore.

It is impoſſible to expreſs the Aſtoniſhment of theſe poor Creatures, at the Noiſe and Fire of my Gun; ſome of them were ready even to die for Fear, and fell down as dead with the very Terror. But when they ſaw the Creature dead, and ſunk into the Water, and that I made Signs to them to come to the Shore, they took Heart, and came to the Shore, and began to ſearch for the Creature. I found him by his Blood ſtaining the Water, and by the Help of a Rope, which I flung round him, and gave the *Negroes* to hale, they dragg'd him on Shore, and found that it was a moſt curious Leopard, ſpotted and fine, to an admirable Degree; and the *Negroes* held up their Hands with Admiration, to think what it was I kill'd him with.

The other Creature, frighted with the Flaſh of Fire, and the Noiſe of the Gun, ſwam to the Shore, and ran up directly to the Mountains, from whence they came, nor could I at that Diſtance know what it was. I found quickly the *Negroes* were for eating the Fleſh of this Creature; ſo I was willing to have them take it as a Favour from me, which, when I made Signs to them, that they might take it, they were very thankful for. Immediately they fell to Work with him; and tho' they had no Knife, yet with a ſharpened Piece of Wood, they took off his Skin as readily, nay much more readily than we would have *done* with a Knife; they offer'd me ſome

of the Fleſh, which I declin'd, making as if I would give it them; but made Signs for the Skin, which they gave me very freely, and brought me a great deal more of their Proviſion, which, tho' I did not underſtand, yet I accepted. Then I made Signs to them for ſome Water, and held out one of my Jars to them, turning its Bottom upward, to ſhew that it was empty, and that I wanted to have it filled: They call'd immediately to ſome of their Friends, and there came two Women, and brought a great Veſſel made of Earth, and burnt, as I ſuppoſe, in the Sun; this they ſet down for me, as before, and I ſent *Xury* on Shore with my Jars, and filled them all three. The Women were as ſtark naked as the Men.

I was now furniſhed with Roots and Corn, ſuch as it was, and Water; and, leaving my friendly *Negroes*, I made forward for about eleven Days more, without offering to go near the Shore, till I ſaw the Land run out a great Length into the Sea, at about the Diſtance of four or five Leagues before me; and the Sea being very calm, I kept a large Offing to make this Point; at length, doubling the Point at about two Leagues from the Land, I ſaw plainly Land on the other Side to Sea-ward; then I concluded, as it was moſt certain indeed, that this was the *Cape de Verd*, and thoſe the *Iſlands*, called from thence *Cape de Verd Iſlands*. However, they were at a great Diſtance, and I could not well tell what I had beſt to do; for if I ſhould be taken with a Freſh of Wind, I might neither reach one or other.

In this Dilemma, as I was very penſive, I ſtept into the Cabin, and ſat me down, *Xury* having the Helm; when on a ſudden the Boy cry'd out, *Maſter, Maſter, a Ship was a Sail!* and the fooliſh Boy was frighted out of his Wits, thinking it muſt needs be ſome of his Maſter's Ships ſent to purſue us, when I knew we were gotten far enough out of their Reach. I jump'd out of the Cabin, and immediately ſaw not only the Ship, but what ſhe was; *viz.* that it was a *Portugueſe* Ship, and, as I thought, was bound to the Coaſt of *Guiney* for *Negroes*. But when I obſerv'd the Courſe ſhe ſteered, I was ſoon convinc'd they were bound ſome other Way, and did not deſign to go any nearer the Shore; upon which I ſtretched out to Sea *as much as I could*, reſolving to ſpeak with them, if *poſſible*.

With

With all the Sail I could make, I found I ſhould not be able to come in their Way, but that they would be gone by before I could make any Signal to them; but after I had crouded to the utmoſt, and began to deſpair, they, it ſeems, ſaw me by the Help of their Perſpective-glaſſes, and that it was ſome *European* Boat, which they ſuppos'd muſt belong to ſome Ship that was loſt; ſo they ſhorten'd Sail to let me come up. I was encouraged with this; and as I had my Patron's Ancient on board, I made a Waſt of it to them for a Signal of Diſtreſs, and fir'd a Gun, both which they ſaw; for they told me they ſaw the Smoke, tho' they did not hear the Gun: Upon theſe Signals they very kindly brought to, and lay by for me, and in about three Hours time I came up with them.

They aſk'd me what I was, in *Portugueſe*, and in *Spaniſh*, and in *French*; but I underſtood none of them; but at laſt a *Scots* Sailor, who was on board, call'd to me, and I anſwer'd him, and told him I was an *Engliſhman*, that had made my Eſcape out of Slavery from the *Moors* at *Sallee*; then they bid me come on board, and very kindly took me in, and all my Goods.

It was an inexpreſſible Joy to me, that any one will believe, that I was thus delivered, as I eſteemed it, from ſuch a miſerable and almoſt hopeleſs Condition as I was in: I immediately offer'd all I had to the Captain of the Ship, as a Return for my Deliverance; but he generouſly told me, he would take nothing from me, but that all I had ſhould be delivered ſafe to me when I came to the *Braſils: For*, ſays he, *I have ſav'd your Life on no other Terms, than as I would be glad to be ſav'd myſelf; and it may one time or other be my Lot to be taken up in the ſame Condition; beſides*, ſays he, *when I carry you to the* Braſils, *ſo great a Way from your own Country, if I ſhould take from you what little you have, you will be ſtarved there, and then I only take away that Life I have given. No, no*, ſays he, *Signor* Ingleſe [*Mr.* Engliſhman,] *I will carry you thither in Charity; and theſe Things will help you to buy your Subſiſtence there, and your Paſſage home again.*

As he was charitable in this Propoſal, ſo he was juſt in the Performance to a Tittle; for he ordered the Seamen, that none ſhould offer to touch any thing I had; then he took every Thing into his own Poſſeſſion, and gave me back

back an exact Inventory of them, that I might have them again, even ſo much as my three Earthen Jars.

As to my Boat, it was a very good one, and that he ſaw, and told me he would buy it of me for the Ship's Uſe, and aſk'd me what I would have for it. I told him he had been ſo generous to me in every Thing, that I cou'd not offer to make any Price of the Boat, but left it intirely to him; upon which he told me he would give me a Note of his Hand to pay me 80 Pieces of Eight for it at *Braſil*; and when it came there, if any one offer'd to give more, he would make it up: He offer'd me alſo 60 Pieces of Eight more for my Boy *Xury*, which I was loth to take; not that I was not willing to let the Captain have him, but I was very loth to ſell the poor Boy's Liberty, who had aſſiſted me ſo faithfully in procuring my own. However, when I let him know my Reaſon, he own'd it to be juſt, and offer'd me this Medium, that he would give the Boy an Obligation to ſet him free in ten Years, if he turned Chriſtian. Upon this, and *Xury* ſaying he was willing to go to him, I let the Captain have him.

We had a very good Voyage to the *Braſils*, and arriv'd in the *Bay de todos los Santos*, or *All-Saints Bay*, in about 22 Days after. And now I was once more deliver'd from the moſt miſerable of all Conditions of Life; and what to do next with myſelf, I was to conſider.

The generous Treatment the Captain gave me, I can never enough remember: He would take nothing of me for my Paſſage, gave me 20 Ducats for the Leopard's Skin, and 40 for the Lion's Skin, which I had in the Boat; and cauſed every Thing I had in the Ship to be punctually delivered me; and what I was willing to ſell, he bought; ſuch as the Caſe of Bottles, two of my Guns, and a Piece of the Lump of Bees Wax, for I had made Candles of the reſt; in a Word, I made about 220 Pieces of Eight of all my Cargo, and with this Stock I went on Shore in the *Braſils*.

I had not been long here, but being recommended to the Houſe of a good honeſt Man like himſelf, who had an *Ingenio*, as they call it, that is, a Plantation, and a Sugar-houſe, I liv'd with him ſome time; and acquainted myſelf, by that means, with the Manner of their Planting, and making of Sugar; and ſeeing how well the Planters

Planters liv'd, and how they grew rich ſuddenly, I reſolv'd, if I could get Licence to ſettle there, I would turn Planter among them; reſolving, in the mean time, to find out ſome way to get my Money which I had left in *London*, remitted to me. To this purpoſe, getting a kind of a *Letter of Naturalization*, I purchaſed as much Land that was uncur'd, as my Money would reach; and form'd a Plan for my Plantation and Settlement, and ſuch an one as might be ſuitable to the Stock which I propoſed to myſelf to receive from *England*.

I had a Neighbour, a *Portugueſe* of *Liſbon*, but born of *Engliſh* Parents, whoſe Name was *Wells*, and in much ſuch Circumſtances as I was: I call him Neighbour, becauſe his Plantation lay next to mine; and we went on very ſociably together; my Stock was but low, as well as his; and we rather planted for Food, than any thing elſe, for about two Years. However, we began to increaſe, and our Land began to come into Order; ſo that the third Year we planted ſome Tobacco, and made each of us a large Piece of Ground ready for planting Canes in the Year to come; but we both wanted Help; and now I found more than before, I had done wrong in parting with my Boy *Xury*.

But alas! for me to do wrong that never did right, was no great Wonder; I had no Remedy but to go on: I was gotten into an Employment quite remote to my Genius, and directly contrary to the Life I delighted in, and for which I forſook my Father's Houſe, and broke thro' all his good Advice; nay, I was coming into the very middle Station, or upper Degree of low Life, which my Father adviſed me to before, and which if I reſolved to go on with, I might as well have ſtaid at home, and never fatigu'd myſelf in the World, as I have done; and I uſed often to ſay to myſelf, I could have done this as well in *England* among my Friends, as have gone 5000 Miles off to do it among Strangers and Savages in a Wilderneſs, and at ſuch a Diſtance, as never to hear from any Part of the World, that had the leaſt Knowledge of me.

In this manner I uſed to look upon my Condition with the utmoſt Regret. I had nobody to converſe with, but now-and-then this Neighbour; no Work to be done but by the Labour of my Hands; and I uſed to ſay, I

liv'd juſt like a Man caſt away upon ſome deſolate Iſland, that had nobody there but himſelf. But how juſt has it been, and how ſhould all Men reflect, that, when they compare their preſent Condition with others that are worſe, Heaven may oblige them to make the Exchange, and be convinced of their former Felicity, by their Experience! I ſay, how juſt it has been, that the truly ſolitary Life I reflected on in an Iſland, or mere Deſolation, ſhould be my Lot, who had ſo often unjuſtly compared it with the Life which I then led, in which had I continued, I had, in all Probability, been exceeding proſperous and rich!

I was in ſome Degree ſettled in my Meaſures for carrying on the Plantation, before my kind Friend the Captain of the Ship, that took me up at Sea, went back; for the Ship remained there in providing her Loading, and preparing for her Voyage, near three Months; when telling him what little Stock I had left behind me in *London*, he gave me this friendly and ſincere Advice: *Signor Inglez*, ſays he (for ſo he always call'd me,) if you will give me Letters, and a Procuration here in Form to me, with Orders to the Perſon who has your Money in *London*, to ſend your Effects to *Liſbon*, to ſuch Perſons as I ſhall direct, and in ſuch Goods as are proper for this Country, I will bring you the Produce of them, God willing, at my Return; but ſince human Affairs are all ſubject to Changes and Diſaſters, I would have you give Orders but for 100*l. Sterl.* which you ſay is half your Stock, and let the Hazard be run for the firſt; ſo that if it comes ſafe, you may order the reſt the ſame way; and if it miſcarry, you may have the other half to have recourſe to for your Supply.

This was ſo wholſome Advice, and look'd ſo friendly, that I could not but be convinc'd it was the beſt Courſe I could take; ſo I accordingly prepared Letters to the Gentlewoman with whom I had left my Money, and a Procuration to the *Portugueſe* Captain, as he deſired.

I wrote the *Engliſh* Captain's Widow a full Account of all my Adventures, my Slavery, Eſcape, and how I had met with the *Portugal* Captain at Sea, the Humanity of his Behaviour, and what Condition I was now in, with all other neceſſary Directions for my Supply; and when this honeſt Captain came to *Liſbon*, he found

means

means, by ſome of the *Engliſh* Merchants there, to ſend over not the Order only, but a full Account of my Story, to a Merchant at *London*, who preſented it effectually to her; whereupon, ſhe not only delivered the Money, but out of her own Pocket ſent the *Portugal* Captain a very handſome Preſent for his Humanity and Charity to me.

The Merchant in *London* veſted this 100*l.* in *Engliſh* Goods, ſuch as the Captain had written for; ſent them directly to him at *Liſbon*, and he brought them all ſafe to me to the *Braſils*; among which, without my Direction (for I was too young in my Buſineſs to think of them) he had taken care to have all Sorts of Tools, Iron-work, and Utenſils neceſſary for my Plantation, and which were of great Uſe to me.

When this Cargo arriv'd, I thought my Fortune made; for I was ſurpris'd with the Joy of it; and my good Steward the Captain had laid out the 5*l.* which my Friend had ſent him for a Preſent for himſelf, to purchaſe, and bring me over a Servant under Bond for ſix Years Service; and would not accept of any Conſideration, except a little Tobacco, which I would have him accept, being of my own Produce.

Neither was this all; but my Goods being all *Engliſh* Manufactures, ſuch as Cloth, Stuff, Bays, and Things particularly valuable and deſirable in the Country, I found means to ſell them to a very great Advantage; ſo that I may ſay, I had more than four times the Value of my firſt Cargo, and was now infinitely beyond my poor Neighbour, I mean in the Advancement of my Plantation; for the firſt Thing I did, I bought me a *Negro* Slave, and an *European* Servant alſo; I mean another beſides that which the Captain brought me from *Liſbon*.

But as abuſed Proſperity is oftentimes made the very Means of our greateſt Adverſity, ſo was it with me. I went on the next Year with great Succeſs in my Plantation: I raiſed 50 great Rolls of Tobacco, on my own Ground, more than I had diſpoſed of for Neceſſaries among my Neighbours; and theſe 50 Rolls being each of above 100*lb. Weight*, were well cured, and laid by, againſt the Return of the Fleet from *Liſbon*. And now increaſing in Buſineſs and Wealth, my Head began to be full of Projects and Undertakings beyond my Reach;

ſuch

ſuch as are indeed often the Ruin of the beſt Heads in Buſineſs.

Had I continued in the Station I was now in, I had room for all the happy Things to have yet befallen me, for which my Father ſo earneſtly recommended a quiet retired Life, and which he had ſo ſenſibly deſcribed the middle Station of Life to be full of; but other Things attended me, and I was ſtill to be the wilful Agent of all my own Miſeries: And particularly to increaſe my Fault, and double the Reflections upon myſelf which in my future Sorrows I ſhould have Leiſure to make; all theſe Miſcarriages were procured by my apparent obſtinate adhering to my fooliſh Inclination of wandering abroad, and purſuing that Inclination, in Contradiction to the cleareſt Views of doing myſelf good in a fair and plain Purſuit of thoſe Proſpects, and thoſe Meaſures of Life, which Nature and Providence concurred to preſent me with, and to make my Duty.

As I had once done thus in breaking away from my Parents, ſo I could not be content now, but I muſt go and leave the happy View I had of being a rich and thriving Man in my new Plantation, only to purſue a raſh and immoderate Deſire of riſing faſter than the Nature of the Thing admitted; and thus I caſt myſelf down again into the deepeſt Gulph of human Miſery that ever Man fell into, or perhaps could be conſiſtent with Life, and a State of Health in the World.

To come then by juſt Degrees to the Particulars of this Part of my Story: You may ſuppoſe, that having now lived almoſt four Years in the *Braſils*, and beginning to thrive and proſper very well upon my Plantation, I had not only learned the Language, but had contracted Acquaintance and Friendſhip among my Fellow-Planters, as well as among the Merchants at *St. Salvadore*, which was our Port; and that, in my Diſcourſe among them, I had frequently given them an Account of my two Voyages to the Coaſt of *Guinea*, the Manner of trading with the *Negroes* there, and how eaſy it was to purchaſe upon the Coaſt for Trifles (ſuch as *Beads*, *Toys*, *Knives*, *Sciſſars*, *Hatchets*, *Bits of Glaſs*, and the like) not only *Gold Duſt*, *Guiney Grains*, *Elephants Teeth*, &c. but *Negroes* for the Service of the *Braſils*, in great Numbers.

They

They liſtened always very attentively to my Diſcourſes on theſe Heads, but eſpecially to that Part which related to the buying *Negroes*, which was a Trade at that time not only not far entered into, but, as far as it was, had been carried on by the *Aſſientos*, or Permiſſion of the King of *Spain* and *Portugal*; and engroſs'd in the publick Stock; ſo that few *Negroes* were bought, and thoſe exceſſive dear.

It happen'd, being in Company one Day with ſome Merchants and Planters of my Acquaintance, and talking of thoſe Things very earneſtly, three of them came to me the next Morning, and told me, they had been muſing very much upon what I had diſcourſed of with them the laſt Night; and they came to make a ſecret Propoſal to me; and, after enjoining me Secrecy, they told me, that they had a Mind to fit out a Ship to go to *Guiney*; that they had all Plantations as well as I, and were ſtreightened for nothing ſo much as Servants; that as it was a Trade that could not publickly ſell the *Negroes* when they came home, ſo they deſired to make but one Voyage, to bring the *Negroes* on Shore privately, and divide them among their own Plantations; and, in a word, the Queſtion was, Whether I could go their Supercargo in the Ship, to manage the Trading Part upon the Coaſt of *Guiney*? And they offer'd me, that I ſhould have my equal Share of the *Negroes*, without providing any Part of the Stock.

This was a fair Propoſal, it muſt be confeſs'd, had it been made to any one that had not had a Settlement and Plantation of his own to look after, which was in a fair way of coming to be very conſiderable, and with a good Stock upon it. But for me, that was thus eſtabliſh'd, and had nothing to do but go on as I had begun for three or four Years more, and to have ſent for the other 100*l.* from *England*, and who in that time, and with that little Addition, could ſcarce have fail'd of being worth 3 or 4000*l.* Sterling, and that increaſing too; for me to think of ſuch a Voyage, was the moſt prepoſterous Thing that ever Man, in ſuch Circumſtances, could be guilty of.

But I, that was born to be my own Deſtroyer, could no more reſiſt the Offer, than I could reſtrain my firſt rambling Deſigns, when my Father's good Counſel was

loſt

loſt upon me. In a word, I told them I would go with all my Heart, if they would undertake to look after my Plantation in my Abſence, and would diſpoſe of it to ſuch as I ſhould direct, if I miſcarried. This they all engaged to do, and entered into Writings, or Covenants, to do ſo; and I made a formal Will, diſpoſing of my Plantation and Effects, in caſe of my Death, making the Captain of the Ship that had ſav'd my Life, as before, my univerſal Heir, but obliging him to diſpoſe of my Effects as I had directed in my Will; one Half of the Produce being to himſelf, and the other to be ſhipp'd to *England*.

In ſhort, I took all poſſible Caution to preſerve my Effects, and to keep up my Plantation. Had I uſed half as much Prudence to have look'd into my own Intereſt, and have made a Judgment of what I ought to have done, and not to have done, I had certainly never gone away from ſo proſperous an Undertaking; leaving all the probable Views of a thriving Circumſtance, and gone upon a Voyage to Sea, attended with all its common Hazards; to ſay nothing of the Reaſons I had to expect particular Misfortunes to myſelf.

But I was hurry'd on, and obey'd blindly the Dictates of my Fancy, rather than my Reaſon: And, accordingly, the Ship being fitted out, and the Cargo finiſh'd, and all Things done as by Agreement, by my Partners in the Voyage; I went on board in an evil Hour again, the 1ſt of *September* 1659, being the ſame Day eight Years that I went from my Father and Mother at *Hull*, in order to act the Rebel to their Authority, and the Fool to my own Intereſt.

Our Ship was about 120 Tons Burden, carried ſix Guns, and fourteen Men, beſides the Maſter, his Boy, and myſelf: We had on board no large Cargo of Goods, except of ſuch Toys as were fit for our Trade with the *Negroes*; ſuch as Beads, Bits of Glaſs, Shells, and odd Trifles; eſpecially little Looking-glaſſes, Knives, Sciſſars, Hatchets, and the like.

The ſame Day I went on board, we ſet Sail, ſtanding away to the Northward upon our own Coaſts, with Deſign to ſtretch over for the *African* Coaſt, when they came into about 10 or 12 Degrees of Northern Latitude; which, it ſeems, was the Manner of their Courſe

in

in thoſe Days: We had very good Weather, only exceſſive hot, all the Way upon our own Coaſt, till we came to the Height of *Cape St Auguſtino*; from whence, keeping farther off at Sea, we loſt Sight of Land, and ſteer'd as if we were bound for the Iſle *Fernand de Noronha*, holding our Courſe N. E. by N. and leaving thoſe Iſles on the Eaſt. In this Courſe we paſſed the Line in about 12 Days time, and were by our laſt Obſervation in 7 Degrees 22 Min. Northern Latitude, when a violent *Ternado* or Hurricane took us quite out of our Knowledge; it began from the South-Eaſt, came about to the North-Weſt, and then ſettled into the North-Eaſt, from whence it blew in ſuch a terrible Manner, that for 12 Days together, we could do nothing but drive; and ſcudding away before it, let it carry us where-ever Fate and the Fury of the Winds directed; and during theſe 12 Days I need not ſay, that I expected every Day to be ſwallowed up, nor did any in the Ship expect to ſave their Lives.

In this Diſtreſs we had, beſides the Terror of a Storm, one of our Men died of the Calenture, and a Man and a Boy waſh'd over-board. About the 12th Day, the Weather abating a little, the Maſter made an Obſervation as well as he could, and found that he was in about 11 Degrees of North Latitude, but that he was 22 Degrees of Longitude Difference Weſt from *Cape St. Auguſtino*; ſo that he found he was gotten upon the Coaſt of *Guiana*, or the North Part of *Braſil*, beyond the River *Amazones*, towards that of the River *Oroonoque*, commonly called the *Great River*; and now he began to conſult with me what Courſe he ſhould take; for the Ship was leaky, and very much diſabled; and he was for going directly back to the Coaſt of *Braſil*.

I was poſitively againſt that, and, looking over the Charts of the Sea-coaſt of *America* with him, we concluded there was no inhabited Country for us to have Recourſe to, till we came within the Circle of the *Caribbee Iſlands*; and therefore reſolved to ſtand away for *Barbadoes*, which by keeping off at Sea, to avoid the Indraught of the Bay or Gulph of *Mexico*, we might eaſily perform, as we hoped, in about fifteen Days Sail; whereas we could not poſſibly make our Voyage to the Coaſt of *Africa*, without ſome Aſſiſtance both to our Ship and to ourſelves.

With

With this Deſign we changed our Courſe, and ſteered away N. W. by W. in order to reach ſome of our *Engliſh* Iſlands, where I hoped for Relief; but our Voyage was otherwiſe determined; for, being in the Latitude of 12 Deg. 18 Min. a ſecond Storm came upon us, which carry'd us away with the ſame Impetuoſity Weſtward, and drove us ſo out of the very Way of all human Commerce, that had all our Lives been ſaved, as to the Sea, we were rather in Danger of being devoured by Savages, than ever returning to our own Country.

In this Diſtreſs, the Wind ſtill blowing very hard, one of our Men, early one Morning, cry'd out *Land*; and we had no ſooner run out of the Cabin to look out, in Hopes of ſeeing whereabouts in the World we were, but the Ship ſtruck upon a Sand, and in a Moment, her Motion being ſo ſtopp'd, the Sea broke over her in ſuch a Manner, that we expected we ſhould all have periſh'd immediately; and we were even driven into our cloſe Quarters, to ſhelter us from the very Foam and Spray of the Sea.

It is not eaſy for any one, who has not been in the like Condition, to deſcribe or conceive the Conſternation of Men in ſuch Circumſtances; we knew nothing where we were, or upon what Land it was we were driven, whether an Iſland or the Main, whether inhabited or not inhabited: And, as the Rage of the Wind was ſtill great, though rather leſs than at firſt, we could not ſo much as hope to have the Ship hold many Minutes without breaking in Pieces, unleſs the Winds, by a kind of Miracle, ſhould turn immediately about. In a word, we ſat looking one upon another, and expecting Death every Moment, and every Man acting accordingly, as preparing for another World; for there was little or nothing more for us to do in this: That which was our preſent Comfort, and all the Comfort we had, was, that, contrary to our Expectation, the Ship did not break yet, and that the Maſter ſaid the Wind began to abate.

Now, though we thought that the Wind did a little abate, yet the Ship having thus ſtruck upon the Sand, and ſticking too faſt for us to expect her getting off, we were in a dreadful Condition indeed, and had nothing to do but to think of ſaving our Lives as well as

we

we could. We had a Boat at our Stern, juſt before the Storm; but ſhe was firſt ſtaved by daſhing againſt the Ship's Rudder, and in the next Place ſhe broke away, and either ſunk, or was driven off to Sea; ſo there was no Hope from her: We had another Boat on board, but how to get her off into the Sea was a doubtful thing; however, there was no room to debate; for we fanſy'd the Ship would break in Pieces every Minute; and ſome told us ſhe was actually broken already.

In this Diſtreſs the Mate of our Veſſel lays hold of the Boat, and with the Help of the reſt of the Men, they got her flung over the Ship's Side, and getting all into her, let go, and committed ourſelves, being eleven in Number, to God's Mercy, and the wild Sea; for though the Storm was abated conſiderably, yet the Sea went dreadfully high upon the Shore, and might well be call'd *Den wild Zee*, as the *Dutch* call the Sea in a Storm.

And now our Caſe was very diſmal indeed; for we all ſaw plainly, that the Sea went ſo high, that the Boat could not eſcape, and that we ſhould be inevitably drowned. As to making Sail, we had none, nor, if we had, could we have done any thing with it; ſo we work'd at the Oar towards the Land, tho' with heavy Hearts, like Men going to Execution; for we all knew, that when the Boat came near the Shore, ſhe would be daſhed in a thouſand Pieces by the Breach of the Sea. However, we committed our Souls to God in the moſt earneſt Manner, and the Wind driving us towards the Shore, we haſtened our Deſtruction with our own Hands, pulling, as well as we could, towards Land.

What the Shore was, whether Rock or Sand, whether Steep or Shoal, we knew not; the only Hope that could rationally give us the leaſt Shadow of Expectation, was, if we might happen into ſome Bay or Gulph, or the Mouth of ſome River, where by great Chance we might have run our Boat in, or got under the Lee of the Land; and perhaps made ſmooth Water. But there was nothing of this appear'd; but as we made nearer and nearer the Shore, the Land look'd more frightful than the Sea.

After we had rowed, or rather driven, about a League and an half, as we reckoned it, a raging Wave, Moun-

tain-

tain-like, came rolling aſtern of us, and plainly bid us expect the *Coup de Grace*. In a word, it took us with ſuch a Fury, that it overſet the Boat at once, and ſeparating us as well from the Boat as from one another, gave us not Time hardly to ſay, O God! for we were all ſwallowed up in a Moment.

Nothing can deſcribe the Confuſion of Thought which I felt when I ſunk into the Water; for tho' I ſwam very well, yet I could not deliver myſelf from the Waves ſo as to draw Breath, till that Wave having driven me, or rather carried me a vaſt Way on towards the Shore, and having ſpent itſelf, went back, and left me upon the Land almoſt dry, but half dead with the Water I took in: I had ſo much Preſence of Mind, as well as Breath left, that ſeeing myſelf nearer the main Land than I expected, I got upon my Feet, and endeavoured to make on towards the Land, as faſt as I could, before another Wave ſhould return, and take me up again. But I ſoon found it was impoſſible to avoid it; for I ſaw the Sea come after me as high as a great Hill, and as furious as an Enemy, which I had no Means or Strength to contend with; my Buſineſs was to hold my Breath, and raiſe myſelf upon the Water, if I could, and ſo by Swimming to preſerve my Breathing, and pilot myſelf towards the Shore, if poſſible; my greateſt Concern now being, that the Wave, as it would carry me a great Way towards the Shore when it came on, might not carry me back again with it, when it gave back towards the Sea.

The Wave that came upon me again, buried me at once 20 or 30 Feet deep in its own Body, and I could feel myſelf carried with a mighty Force and Swiftneſs towards the Shore, a very great Way; but I held my Breath, and aſſiſted myſelf to ſwim ſtill forward with all my Might. I was ready to burſt with holding my Breath, when, as I found myſelf riſing up, ſo, to my immediate Relief, I found my Head and Hands ſhoot out above the Surface of the Water; and though it was not two Seconds of Time that I could keep myſelf ſo, yet it relieved me greatly, gave me Breath and new Courage. I was covered again with Water a good while, but not ſo long but I held it out; and finding the Water had ſpent itſelf, and began to return, I ſtruck

forward

forward againſt the Return of the Waves, and felt Ground again with my Feet. I ſtood ſtill a few Moments to recover Breath, and till the Waters went from me, and then I took to my Heels, and ran with what Strength I had, further towards the Shore. But neither would this deliver me from the Fury of the Sea, which came pouring in after me again, and twice more I was lifted up by the Waves, and carried forwards as before, the Shore being very flat.

The laſt Time of theſe two had well near been fatal to me; for the Sea, having hurried me along as before, landed me, or rather daſhed me, againſt a Piece of a Rock, and that with ſuch Force, as it left me ſenſeleſs, and indeed helpleſs, as to my own Deliverance; for the Blow, taking my Side and Breaſt, beat the Breath as it were quite out of my Body; and had it returned again immediately, I muſt have been ſtrangled in the Water; but I recovered a little before the Return of the Waves; and ſeeing I ſhould be covered again with the Water, I reſolved to hold faſt by a Piece of the Rock, and ſo to hold my Breath, if poſſible, till the Wave went back. Now as the Waves were not ſo high as at firſt, being near Land, I held my Hold, till the Wave abated; and then fetched another Run, which brought me ſo near the Shore, that the next Wave, tho' it went over me, yet did not ſo ſwallow me up, as to carry me away; and the next Run I took, I got to the main Land, where, to my great Comfort, I clamber'd up the Clifts of the Shore, and ſat me down upon the Graſs, free from Danger, and quite out of the Reach of the Water.

I was now landed, and ſafe on Shore, and began to look up and thank God, that my Life was ſaved in a Caſe wherein there was, ſome Minutes before, ſcarce any room to hope. I believe it is impoſſible to expreſs to the Life, what the Extaſies and Tranſports of the Soul are when it is ſo ſaved, as I may ſay, out of the very Grave; and I do not wonder now at that Cuſtom, *viz.* That when a Malefactor, who has the Halter about his Neck, is tied up, and juſt going to be turned off, and has a Reprieve brought to him; I ſay, I do not wonder, that they bring a Surgeon with it, to let him Blood that very *Moment they* tell him of it, that the Surprize

may

may not drive the animal Spirits from the Heart, and overwhelm him.

For ſudden Joys, like Griefs, confound at firſt.

I walked about on the Shore, lifting up my Hands, and my whole Being, as I may ſay, wrapt up in the Contemplation of my Deliverance, making a thouſand Geſtures and Motions, which I cannot deſcribe, reflecting upon all my Comrades that were drowned, and that there ſhould not be one Soul ſav'd but myſelf; for as for them, I never ſaw them afterwards, or any Sign of them, except three of their Hats, one Cap, and two Shoes, that were not Fellows.

I caſt my Eyes to the ſtranded Veſſel, when the Breach and Froth of the Sea being ſo big, I could hardly ſee it, it lay ſo far off; and conſidered, Lord! how was it poſſible I could get on Shore!

After I had ſolac'd my Mind with the comfortable Part of my Condition, I began to look round me, to ſee what kind of Place I was in, and what was next to be done; and I ſoon found my Comforts abate, and that, in a word, I had a dreadful Deliverance; for I was wet, had no Cloaths to ſhift me, nor any thing either to eat or drink, to comfort me; neither did I ſee any Proſpect before me, but that of periſhing with Hunger, or being devour'd by wild Beaſts: And that which was particularly afflicting to me was, that I had no Weapon either to hunt and kill any Creature for my Suſtenance, or to defend myſelf againſt any other Creature that might deſire to kill me for theirs: In a word, I had nothing about me but a Knife, a Tobacco-pipe, and a little Tobacco in a Box; this was all my Proviſion; and this threw me into terrible Agonies of Mind, that for a while I ran about like a Madman. Night coming upon me, I began, with an heavy Heart, to conſider what would be my Lot, if there were any ravenous Beaſts in that Country, ſeeing at Night they always come abroad for their Prey.

All the Remedy that offer'd to my Thoughts at that Time was, to get up into a thick bushy Tree like a Fir, but thorny, which grew near me, and where I reſolv'd to ſit all Night, and conſider the next Day what Death

I

I ſhould die; for, as yet, I ſaw no Proſpect of Life. I walk'd about a Furlong from the Shore, to ſee if I could find any freſh Water to drink, which I did to my great Joy; and having drank, and put a little Tobacco in my Mouth, to prevent Hunger, I went to the Tree; and, getting up into it, endeavoured to place myſelf ſo, as that, if I ſhould ſleep, I might not fall; and, having cut me a ſhort Stick like a Truncheon, for my Defence, I took up my Lodging; and, having been exceſſively fatigued, I fell faſt aſleep, and ſlept as comfortably as I believe few could have done in my Condition; and found myſelf the moſt refreſhed with it, that I think I ever was on ſuch an Occaſion.

When I wak'd it was broad Day, the Weather clear, and the Storm abated, ſo that the Sea did not rage and ſwell as before: But that which ſurpriſed me moſt was, that the Ship was lifted off, in the Night, from the Sand where ſhe lay, by the ſwelling of the Tide, and was driven up almoſt as far as the Rock, which I firſt mentioned, where I had been ſo bruiſed by the daſhing me againſt it; this being within about a Mile from the Shore where I was, and the Ship ſeeming to ſtand upright ſtill, I wiſh'd myſelf on board, that, at leaſt, I might ſave ſome neceſſary Things for my Uſe.

When I came down from my Apartment in the Tree, I look'd about me again; and the firſt Thing I found was the Boat, which lay as the Wind and the Sea had toſſed her upon the Land, about two Miles to my right Hand. I walk'd as far as I could upon the Shore, to have got to her; but found a Neck or Inlet of Water between me and the Boat, which was about half a Mile broad; ſo I came back, for the preſent, being more intent upon getting at the Ship, where I hoped to find ſomething for my preſent Subſiſtence.

A little after Noon I found the Sea very calm, and the Tide ebb'd ſo far out, that I could come within a Quarter of a Mile of the Ship: And here I found a freſh Renewing of my Grief; for I ſaw evidently, that if we had kept on board, we had been all ſafe; that is to ſay, we had all got ſafe on Shore, and I had not been ſo miſerable as to be left intirely deſtitute of all Comfort and Company, as I now was: This forced Tears from my

Eyes

Eyes again; but as there was little Relief in that, I reſolved, if poſſible, to get to the Ship; ſo I pulled off my Cloaths, for the Weather was hot to Extremity, and took to the Water; but, when I came to the Ship, my Difficulty was ſtill greater to know how to get on board; as ſhe lay aground, and high out of the Water, there was nothing within my Reach, to lay hold of; I ſwam round her twice, and the ſecond time I eſpy'd a ſmall Piece of Rope, which I wondered I did not ſee at firſt, hang down by the Fore-chains, ſo low, as with great Difficulty I got hold of it, and, by the Help of that Rope, got up into the Fore caſtle of the Ship. Here I found that the Ship was bulged, and a great deal of Water in her Hold, but that ſhe lay ſo on the Side of a Bank of hard Sand, or rather Earth, that her Stern lay lifted up upon the Bank, and her Head low almoſt to the Water; by this means all her Quarter was free, and all that was in that Part was dry: for you may be ſure my Work was to ſearch, and to ſee what was ſpoilt and what was free: And firſt I found, that all the Ship's Proviſions were dry, and untouched by the Water; and, being very well diſpoſed to eat, I went to the Bread-room, and fill'd my Pockets with Biſcuit, and eat it as I went about other Things, for I had no Time to loſe. I alſo found ſome Rum in the great Cabin, of which I took a large Dram, and which I had indeed Need enough of, to ſpirit me for what was before me. Now I wanted nothing but a Boat, to furniſh myſelf with many Things which I foreſaw would be very neceſſary to me.

It was in vain to ſit Still and wiſh for what was not to be had; and this Extremity roused my Application. We had ſeveral ſpare Yards, and two or three large Spars of Wood, and a ſpare Top-maſt or two in the Ship: I reſolved to fall to Work with them, and flung as many of them over board as I could manage for their Weight, tying every one with a Rope, that they might not drive away; when this was done, I went down the Ship's Side, and, pulling them to me, I bound four of them ſtrongly together with Cords as well as I could, in the Form of a Raft, and, laying two or three ſhort Pieces of Plank upon them croſs-ways, I found I could walk upon it very well, but that it was not able to bear

any

loe saving his Goods out of the Wreck of the Ship. *Vol. I. p.* 52

any great Weight, the Pieces being too light; ſo I went to work, and with a Carpenter's Saw I cut a ſpare Top-maſt into three Lengths, and added them to my Raft, with a great deal of Labour and Pains; but the Hope of furniſhing myſelf with Neceſſaries encouraged me to go beyond what I ſhould have been able to have done u, on another Occaſion.

My Raft was now ſtrong enough to bear any reaſonable Weight; my next Care was what to load it with, and how to preſerve what I laid upon it from the Surf of the Sea; but I was not long conſidering this: I firſt laid all the Planks or Boards upon it that I could get; and having conſidered well what I moſt wanted, I firſt got three of the Seamen's Cheſts, which I had broken open and empty'd, and lower'd them down upon my Raft; the firſt of theſe I fill'd with Proviſions, *viz.* Bread, Rice, three *Dutch* Cheeſes, five Pieces of dry'd Goats Fleſh, which we liv'd much upon, and a little Remainder of *European* Corn, which had been laid by for ſome Fowls which we brought to Sea with us, but the Fowls were kill'd; there had been ſome Barley and Wheat together, but, to my great Diſappointment, I found afterwards, that the Rats had eaten or ſpoil'd it all. As for Liquors, I found ſeveral Caſes of Bottles belonging to our Skipper, in which were ſome Cordial Waters, and in all about five or ſix Gallons of Arrack; theſe I ſtow'd by themſelves, there being no need to put them into the Cheſt, nor any Room for them. While I was doing this, I found the Tide began to flow, tho' very calm, and I had the Mortification to ſee my Coat, Shirt, and Waiſtcoat, which I had left on Shore upon the Sand, ſwim away; as for Breeches, which were only Linen and open-kneed, I ſwam on board in them and my Stockings: However, this put me upon rummaging for Cloaths, of which I found enough, but took no more than I wanted for preſent Uſe, for I had other Things which my Eye was more upon; as firſt, Tools to work with on Shore, and it was after long ſearching that I found out the Carpenter's Cheſt, which was indeed a very uſeful Prize to me, and much more valuable than a Ship loading of Gold would have been at that time. I got it down to my Raft, even whole as it

was, without loſing Time to look into it, for I knew in general what it contained.

My next Care was for ſome Ammunition and Arms: There were two very good Fowling-pieces in the great Cabin, and two Piſtols; theſe I ſecur'd firſt, with ſome Powder-Horns, a ſmall Bag of Shot, and two old ruſty Swords: I knew there were three Barrels of Powder in the Ship, but knew not where our Gunner had ſtow'd them; but with much Search I found them, two of them dry and good, the third had taken Water; thoſe two I got to my Raft, with the Arms: And now I thought myſelf pretty well freighted, and began to think how I ſhould get to Shore with them, having neither Sail, Oar, or Rudder, and the leaſt Cap-full of Wind would have overſet all my Navigation.

I had three Encouragements: 1. A ſmooth and calm Sea. 2. The Tide riſing and ſetting in to the Shore. 3. What little Wind there was, blew me towards the Land. And thus, having found two or three broken Oars belonging to the Boat, and beſides the Tools which were in the Cheſt, I found two Saws, an Ax, and a Hammer; and with this Cargo I put to Sea: For a Mile, or thereabouts, my Raft went very well, only that I found it drive a little diſtant from the Place where I had landed before; by which I perceiv'd that there was ſome Indraught of the Water, and conſequently I hop'd to find ſome Creek of the River there, which I might make uſe of as a Port to get to Land with my Cargo.

As I imagined, ſo it was; there appear'd before me a little Opening of the Land. I found a ſtrong Current of the Tide ſet into it; ſo I guided my Raft as well as I could to keep in the Middle of the Stream: But here I had like to have ſuffer'd a ſecond Shipwreck, which, if I had, I think verily would have broken my Heart; for, knowing nothing of the Coaſt, my Raft ran aground at one End of it upon a Shoal, and not being aground at the other End, it wanted but a little that all my Cargo had ſlipp'd off towards that End that was afloat, and ſo fallen into the Water: I did my utmoſt by ſetting my Back againſt the Cheſts, to keep them in their Places, but could not thruſt off the Raft with all my Strength; neither durſt I ſtir from the Poſture I was in, but, holding

up the Chests with all my Might, stood in that Manner near Half an Hour, in which Time the Rising of the Water brought me a little more upon a Level; and a little after, the Water still rising, my Raft floated again, and I thrust her off with the Oar I had, into the Channel; and then driving up higher, I at length found myself in the Mouth of a little River, with Land on both Sides, and a strong Current of Tide running up. I look'd on both Sides for a proper Place to get to Shore, for I was not willing to be driven too high up the River, hoping in time to see some Ship at Sea, and therefore resolved to place myself as near the Coast as I could.

At length I spy'd a little Cove on the Right Shore of the Creek, to which with great Pain and Difficulty I guided my Raft; and at last got so near, as that, reaching Ground with my Oar, I could thrust her directly in; but here I had like to have dipp'd all my Cargo in the Sea again; for that Shore lying pretty steep, that is to say, sloping, there was no Place to land, but where one End of the Float, if it ran on Shore, would lie so high, and the other sink lower, as before, that it would endanger my Cargo again: All that I could do, was to wait till the Tide was at the highest, keeping the Raft with my Oar, like an Anchor to hold the Side of it fast to the Shore, near a flat Piece of Ground, which I expected the Water would flow over; and so it did: As soon as I found Water enough (for my Raft drew about a Foot of Water,) I thrust her upon that flat Piece of Ground, and there fasten'd or moor'd her, by sticking my two broken Oars into the Ground; one on one Side near one End, and one on the other Side near the other End; and thus I lay till the Water ebb'd away, and left my Raft and all my Cargo safe on Shore.

My next Work was to view the Country, and seek a proper Place for my Habitation, and where to stow my Goods, to secure them from whatever might happen. Where I was, I yet knew not; whether on the Continent, or on an Island; whether inhabited, or not inhabited; whether in Danger of wild Beasts, or not. There was a Hill not above a Mile from me, which rose up very steep and high, and which seem'd to overtop some other Hills which lay as in a Ridge from it Northward: I took out

one of the Fowling pieces, and one of the Piſtols, and a Horn of Powder; and thus armed, I travelled for Diſcovery up to the Top of that Hill, where, after I had with great Labour and Difficulty got up, I immediately ſaw my Fate, to my great Affliction; *viz.* that I was in an Iſland environ'd every way with the Sea, no Land to be ſeen, except ſome Rocks which lay a great way off, and two ſmall Iſlands leſs than this, which lay about three Leagues to the Weſt.

I found alſo that the Iſland I was in, was barren, and, as I ſaw good Reaſon to believe, uninhabited, except by wild Beaſts, of which, however, I ſaw none; yet I ſaw abundance of Fowls, but knew not their Kinds, neither, when I kill'd them, could I tell what was fit for Food, and what not. At my coming back, I ſhot at a great Bird which I ſaw ſitting upon a Tree on the Side of a large Wood; I believe it was the firſt Gun that had been fir'd there ſince the Creation of the World. I had no ſooner fir'd, but from all the Parts of the Wood there aroſe an extraordinary Number of Fowls of many Sorts, making a confus'd Screaming and Crying, every one according to his uſual Note; but not one of them of any Kind that I knew: As for that Creature I kill'd, I took it to be a kind of an Hawk, its Colour and Beak reſembling it, but it had no Talons or Claws more than common; its Fleſh was Carrion, and fit for nothing.

Contented with this Diſcovery, I came back to my Raft, and fell to work to bring my Cargo on Shore, which took me up the reſt of the Day; what to do with myſelf at Night, I knew not, nor indeed where to reſt; for I was afraid to lie down on the Ground, not knowing but ſome wild Beaſt might devour me, though I afterwards found, there was really no need for thoſe Fears.

However, as well as I could, I barricado'd myſelf round with the Cheſts and Boards that I had brought on Shore, and made a kind of an Hut for that Night's Lodging; as for Food, I yet ſaw not which Way to ſupply myſelf, except that I had ſeen two or three Creatures like Hares, run out of the Wood where I ſhot the Fowl.

I now began to conſider, that I might yet get a great many Things out of the Ship, which would be uſeful to me, and particularly ſome of the Rigging and Sails,

Sails, and ſuch other things as might come to hand; and I reſolved to make another Voyage on board the Veſſel, if poſſible; and as I knew that the firſt Storm that blew muſt neceſſarily break her all in Pieces, I reſolved to ſet all other things apart, till I got every thing out of the Ship that I could get; then I called a Council, that is to ſay, in my Thoughts, whether I ſhould take back the Raft, but this appeared impracticable; ſo I reſolved to go as before, when the Tide was down; and I did ſo, only that I ſtripped before I went from my Hut, having nothing on but a chequered Shirt, a Pair of Linen Drawers, and a Pair of Pumps on my Feet.

I got on board the Ship as before, and prepared a ſecond Raft; and, having had Experience of the firſt, I neither made this ſo unwieldy, nor loaded it ſo hard; but yet I brought away ſeveral Things very uſeful to me; as firſt, in the Carpenter's Store I found two or three Bags full of Nails and Spikes, a great Screw-jack, a dozen or two of Hatches, and above all, that moſt uſeful Thing called a Grindſtone: All theſe I ſecured, together with ſeveral Things belonging to the Gunner, particularly two or three Iron-crows, and two Barrels of Muſket-bullets, ſeven Muſkets, and another Fowling-piece, with ſome ſmall Quantity of Powder more; a large Bag full of ſmall Shot, and a great Roll of Sheet-lead; but this laſt was ſo heavy, I could not hoiſt it up to get it over the Ship's Side.

Beſides theſe things, I took all the Men's Cloaths that I could find, and a ſpare Fore-top-ſail, Hammock, and ſome Bedding; and with this I loaded my ſecond Raft, and brought them alſo all ſafe on Shore, to my very great Comfort.

I was under ſome Apprehenſions during my Abſence from the Land, that at leaſt my Proviſions might be devoured on Shore; but when I came back, I found no Sign of any Viſitor, only there ſat a Creature like a wild Cat upon one of the Cheſts, which, when I came towards it, ran away to a little Diſtance, and then ſtood ſtill; ſhe ſat very compoſed and unconcern'd, and look'd full in my Face, as if ſhe had a mind to be acquainted with me. I preſented my Gun at her, but ſhe did not underſtand it, ſhe was perfectly unconcerned at it, nor did ſhe offer to ſtir away; upon which I toſſed her a bit

of Biſcuit, tho' by the way I was not very free of it, for my Store was not great. However, I ſpared her a bit, I ſay, and ſhe went to it, ſmelled of it, and eat it, and look'd (as pleaſed) for more; but I thanked her, and could ſpare no more, ſo ſhe marched off.

Having got my ſecond Cargo on Shore (tho' I was fain to open the Barrels of Powder, and bring them by Parcels, for they were too heavy, being large Caſks.) I went to work to make a little Tent with the Sail, and ſome Poles which I cut for that Purpoſe; and into this Tent I brought every thing that I knew would ſpoil, either with Rain or Sun; I piled all the empty Cheſts and Caſks up in a Circle round the Tent, to fortify it from any ſudden Attempt, either from Man or Beaſt.

When I had done this, I blocked up the Door of the Tent with ſome Boards within, and an empty Cheſt ſet up an end without; and ſpreading one of the Beds upon the Ground, laying my two Piſtols juſt at my Head, and my Gun at length by me, I went to Bed for the firſt time, and ſlept very quietly all Night: I was very weary and heavy; for the Night before I had ſlept little, and had labour'd very hard all Day, as well to fetch thoſe Things from the Ship, as to get them on Shore.

I had the biggeſt Magazine of all kinds now that ever were laid up, I believe, for one Man; but I was not ſatisfied ſtill; for while the Ship ſat upright in that Poſture, I thought I ought to get every thing out of her that I could; ſo every Day at low Water I went on board, and brought away ſomething or other: But particularly the third time I went, I brought away as much of the Rigging as I could, as alſo all the ſmall Ropes and Rope-twine I could get, with a Piece of ſpare Canvas, which was to mend the Sails upon Occaſion, and the Barrels of wet Gun-powder: In a word, I brought away all the Sails firſt and laſt, only that I was fain to cut them in Pieces, and bring as much at a Time as I could; for they were no more uſeful to me for Sails, but as mere Canvas only.

But that which comforted me more ſtill, was, that at laſt of all, after I had made five or ſix ſuch Voyages as theſe, and thought I had nothing more to expect from *the Ship*, that was worth the meddling with; I ſay, after all

all this, I found a great Hogſhead of Bread, three large Rundlets of Rum or Spirits, a Box of fine Sugar, and a Barrel of fine Flour; this was ſurpriſing to me, becauſe I had given over expecting any more Proviſions, except what was ſpoiled by the Water. I ſoon emptied the Hogſhead of that Bread, and wrapt it up, Parcel by Parcel, in Pieces of the Sails, which I cut out; and, in a word, I got all this ſafe on Shore alſo, tho' at ſeveral Times.

The next Day I made another Voyage; and now having plundered the Ship of what was portable, and fit to hand out, I began with the Cables; and cutting the great Cable into Pieces, ſuch as I could move, I got two Cables and an Hawſer on Shore, with all the Iron-work I could get; and having cut down the Sprit-ſail-yard and the Miſen-yard, and every thing I could to make a large Raft, I loaded it with all thoſe heavy Goods, and came away: But my good Luck began to leave me; for this Raft was ſo unwieldy, and ſo overladen, that after I was entered the little Cave, where I had landed the reſt of my Goods, not being able to guide it ſo handily as I did the other, it overſet, and threw me and all my Cargo into the Water: As for myſelf it was no great Harm, for I was near the Shore; but as to my Cargo, it was great Part of it loſt, eſpecially the Iron, which I expected would have been of great Uſe to me: However, when the Tide was out, I got moſt of the Pieces of Cable aſhore, and ſome of the Iron, tho' with infinite Labour, for I was fain to dip for it into the Water, a Work which fatigued me very much; after this, I went every Day on board, and brought away what I could get.

I had been 13 Days on Shore, and had been eleven times on board the Ship; in which Time I had brought away all that one Pair of Hands could well be ſuppoſed capable to bring, though I believe verily, had the calm Weather held, I ſhould have brought away the whole Ship, Piece by Piece: But preparing the twelfth time to go on board, I found the Wind began to riſe; however, at low Water, I went on board, and tho' I thought I had rummaged the Cabin ſo effectually, as that nothing more could be found, yet I diſcovered a Locker with Drawers in it, in one of which I found two or three

Razors, and one Pair of large Sciſſars, with ten or a dozen good Knives and Forks; in another, I found about thirty-ſix Pounds Value in Money, ſome *European* Coin, ſome *Braſil*, ſome Pieces of Eight, ſome Gold, ſome Silver.

I ſmil'd to myſelf at the Sight of this Money. O Drug! *ſaid I aloud*, what art thou good for? Thou art not worth to me, no, not the taking off the Ground; one of thoſe Knives is worth all this Heap; I have no manner of Uſe for thee; e'en remain where thou art, and go to the Bottom as a Creature whoſe Life is not worth ſaving: However, upon ſecond Thoughts, I took it away, and wrapping all this in a Piece of Canvas, I began to think of making another Raft; but while I was preparing this, I found the Sky over-caſt, and the Wind began to riſe, and in a quarter of an Hour it blew a freſh Gale from the Shore; it preſently occurred to me, that it was in vain to pretend to make a Raft, with the Wind off Shore, and that it was my Buſineſs to be gone before the Tide of Flood began, otherwiſe I might not be able to reach the Shore at all: Accordingly I let myſelf down into the Water, and ſwam croſs the Channel, which lay between the Ship and the Sand, and even that with Difficulty enough, partly with the Weight of the Things I had about me, and partly the Roughneſs of the Water, for the Wind roſe very haſtily, and before it was quite high Water, it blew a Storm.

But I was gotten home to my little Tent, where I lay with all my Wealth about me very ſecure: It blew very hard all that Night; and in the Morning, when I look'd out, behold, no more Ship was to be ſeen. I was a little ſurpris'd, but recover'd myſelf with this ſatisfactory Reflection; *viz.* That I had loſt no Time, nor abated any Diligence, to get every thing out of her that could be uſeful to me; and that indeed there was little left in her that I was able to bring away, if I had had more Time: I now gave over any more Thought of the Ship, or of any thing out of her, except what might drive on Shore from her Wreck, as indeed divers Pieces of her afterwards did; but thoſe Things were of ſmall Uſe to me.

My

My Thoughts were now wholly employ'd about ſecuring myſelf againſt either Savages, if any ſhould appear, or wild Beaſts, if any were in the Iſland; and I had many Thoughts of the Method how to do this, and what kind of Dwelling to make; whether I ſhould make me a Cave in the Earth, or a Tent upon the Earth: And, in ſhort, I reſolv'd upon both; the Manner and Deſcription of which it may not be improper to give an Account of.

I ſoon found the Place I was in was not for my Settlement, particularly becauſe it was upon a low mooriſh Ground near the Sea, and I believ'd would not be wholſome, and more particularly becauſe there was no Water near it; ſo I reſolv'd to find a more healthy and more convenient Spot of Ground.

I conſulted ſeveral Things in my Situation, which I found would be proper for me; firſt, Health, and freſh Water, as I juſt now mentioned; ſecondly, Shelter from the Heat of the Sun; thirdly, Security from ravenous Creatures, whether Man or Beaſt; fourthly, a View to the Sea, that if God ſent any Ship in Sight, I might not loſe any Advantage for my Deliverance, for which I was not willing to baniſh my Expectation yet.

In Search of a Place proper for this, I found a little Plain on the Side of a riſing Hill, whoſe Form towards this little Plain, was as ſteep as an Houſe-ſide, ſo that nothing could come down upon me from the Top: On the Side of this Rock there was an hollow Place, worn a little way in, like the Entrance or Door of a Cave, but there was not really any Cave or Way into the Rock at all.

On the Flat of the Green, juſt before this hollow Place, I reſolv'd to pitch my Tent. This Plain was not above an hundred Yards broad, and about twice as long, and lay like a Green before the Door, and at the End of it deſcended irregularly every way down into the low Grounds by the Sea-ſide. It was on the N. N. W. Side of the Hill, ſo that it was ſhelter'd from the Heat every Day, till it came to a W. and by S. Sun, or thereabouts, which in thoſe Countries is near the Setting.

Before I ſet up my Tent, I drew an Half-circle before the hollow Place, which took in about ten Yards in its

Semidiameter, from the Rock, and twenty Yards in its Diameter, from its Beginning and Ending.

In this Half-circle I pitch'd two Rows of ſtrong Stakes, driving them into the Ground till they ſtood very firm like Piles, the biggeſt End being out of the Ground above five Feet and an half, and ſharpen'd on the Top; the two Rows did not ſtand above ſix Inches from one another.

Then I took the Pieces of Cable which I had cut in the Ship, and laid them in Rows upon one another, within the Circle, between theſe two Rows of Stakes, up to the Top, placing other Stakes in the Inſide, leaning againſt them, about two Feet and an half high, like a Spur to a Poſt; and this Fence was ſo ſtrong, that neither Man or Beaſt could get into it, or over it. This coſt me a great deal of Time and Labour, eſpecially to cut the Piles in the Wood, bring them to the Place, and drive them into the Earth.

The Entrance into this Place I made to be, not by a Door, but by a ſhort Ladder to go over the Top; which Ladder, when I was in, I lifted over after me; and ſo I was completely fenc'd in, and fortified, as I thought, from all the World, and conſequently ſlept ſecure in the Night, which, otherwiſe, I could not have done, though, as it appear'd afterwards, there was no need of all this Caution from the Enemies I had apprehended Danger from.

Into this Fence, or Fortreſs, with infinite Labour, I carry'd all my Riches, all my Proviſions, Ammunition, and Stores, of which you have the Account above; and I made me a large Tent alſo, to preſerve me from the Rains, that in one Part of the Year are very violent there. I made it double; *viz.* one ſmaller Tent within, and one larger Tent above it; and cover'd the uppermoſt Part of it with a large Tarpaulin, which I had ſav'd among the Sails.

And now I lay no more for a while in the Bed which I had brought on Shore, but in an Hammock, which was indeed a very good one, and belong'd to the Mate of the Ship.

Into this Tent I brought all my Proviſions, and every thing that would ſpoil by the Wet; and having thus inclos'd all my Goods, I made up the Entrance, which

till

till now I had left open, and ſo paſs'd and repaſs'd, as I ſaid, by a ſhort Ladder.

When I had done this, I began to work my Way into the Rock, and bringing all the Earth and Stones that I dug down, out thro' my Tent, I laid them up within my Fence in the Nature of a Terrace, ſo that it rais'd the Ground within about a Foot and an Half; and thus I made a Cave juſt behind my Tent, which ſerv'd me like a Cellar to my Houſe.

It coſt me much Labour, and many Days, before all theſe Things were brought to Perfection; and therefore I muſt go back to ſome other Things which took up ſome of my Thoughts. At the ſame Time it happen'd, after I had laid my Scheme for the ſetting up the Tent, and making the Cave, that a Storm of Rain falling from a thick dark Cloud, a ſudden Flaſh of Lightning happen'd, and after that, a great Clap of Thunder, as is naturally the Effect of it: I was not ſo much ſurpris'd with the Lightning, as I was with the Thought which darted into my Mind as ſwift as the Lightning itſelf: O my Powder! My very Heart ſunk within me, when I thought, that at one Blaſt all my Powder might be deſtroy'd; on which, not my Defence only, but the providing me Food, as I thought, entirely depended; I was nothing near ſo anxious about my own Danger, tho', had the Powder took Fire, I had never known who had hurt me.

Such Impreſſion did this make upon me, that after the Storm was over, I laid aſide all my Work, my Building and Fortifying, and apply'd myſelf to make Bags and Boxes to ſeparate my Powder, and to keep it a little and a little in a Parcel, in hopes, that whatever might come, it might not all take fire at once, and to keep ſo apart, that it ſhould not be poſſible to make one Part fire another. I finiſh'd this Work in about a Fortnight, and I think my Powder, which in all was about 140 *lb.* Weight, was divided into no leſs than an hundred Parcels. As to the Barrel that had been wet, I did not apprehend any Danger from that, ſo I plac'd it in my new Cave, which in my Fancy I called my Kitchen; and the reſt I hid up and down in Holes among the Rocks, ſo that no Wet might come to it, marking very carefully where I laid it.

In the Interval of Time while this was doing, I went out at leaſt once every Day with my Gun, as well to divert myſelf, as to ſee if I could kill any Thing fit for Food, and, as near as I could, to acquaint myſelf with what the Iſland produc'd. The firſt Time I went out, I preſently diſcover'd, that there were Goats in the Iſland, which was a great Satisfaction to me, but then it was attended with this Misfortune to me, *viz.* That they were ſo ſhy, ſo ſubtle, and ſo ſwift of Foot, that it was the difficulteſt Thing in the World to come at them; but I was not diſcourag'd at this, not doubting but I might now and then ſhoot one, as it ſoon happen'd; for after I had found their Haunts a little, I laid wait in this Manner for them: I obſerv'd, if they ſaw me in the Valleys, though they were upon the Rocks, they would run away as in a terrible Fright; but if they were feeding in the Valleys, and I was upon the Rocks, they took no Notice of me; from whence I concluded, that by the Poſition of their Optics, their Sight was ſo directed downward, that they did not readily ſee Objects that were above them: So afterwards I took this Method; I always climb'd the Rocks firſt, to get above them, and then had frequently a fair Mark. The firſt Shot I made among theſe Creatures, I kill'd a She Goat which had a little Kid by her, which ſhe gave Suck to, which griev'd me heartily; but when the old one fell, the Kid ſtood ſtock ſtill by her till I came and took her up; and not only ſo, but when I carry'd the old one with me upon my Shoulders, the Kid follow'd me quite to my Incloſure; upon which I laid down the Dam, and took the Kid in my Arms, and carry'd it over my Pale, in hopes to have bred it up tame; but it would not eat; ſo I was forc'd to kill it, and eat it myſelf: Theſe two ſupply'd me with Fleſh a great while, for I eat ſparingly; and ſav'd my Proviſions (my Bread eſpecially) as much as poſſibly I could.

Having now fix'd my Habitation, I found it abſolutely neceſſary to provide a Place to make a Fire in, and Fuel to burn; and what I did for that, as alſo how I inlarg'd my Cave, and what Conveniencies I made, I ſhall give a full Account of in its Place: But I muſt firſt give ſome little Account of myſelf, and of my Thoughts about

about living, which it may well be ſuppos'd were not a few.

I had a diſmal Proſpect of my Condition; for as I was not caſt away upon that Iſland without being driven, as is ſaid, by a violent Storm quite out of the Courſe of our intended Voyage, and a great Way, *viz.* ſome Hundreds of Leagues, out of the ordinary Courſe of the Trade of Mankind, I had great Reaſon to conſider it as a Determination of Heaven, that in this deſolate Place, and in this deſolate Manner, I ſhould end my Life: The Tears would run plentifully down my Face when I made theſe Reflections; and ſometimes I would expoſtulate with myſelf, why Providence ſhould thus completely ruin its Creatures, and render them ſo abſolutely miſerable, ſo without Help abandon'd, and ſo intirely depreſſed, that it could hardly be rational to be thankful for ſuch a Life?

But ſomething always return'd ſwift upon me to check theſe Thoughts, and to reprove me; and particularly one Day walking with my Gun in my Hand by the Sea-ſide, I was very pertſive upon the Subject of my preſent Condition, when Reaſon, as it were, put in, expoſtulating with me t'other way, thus: Well, you are in a deſolate Condition, 'tis true; but pray remember, where are the reſt of you? Did not you come eleven of you into the Boat? Where are the ten? Why were not they ſav'd, and you loſt? Why are you ſingled out? Is it better to be here or there? And then I pointed to the Sea. All Evils are to be conſider'd with the Good that is in them, and with what worſe attended them.

Then it occurr'd to me again, how well I was furniſh'd for my Subſiſtance, and what would have been my Caſe, if it had not happen'd, *which was an hundred thouſand to one*, that the Ship floated from the Place where firſt ſhe ſtruck, and was driven ſo near to the Shore, that I had Time to get all theſe Things out of her? What would have been my Caſe, if I had been to have liv'd in the Condition in which I at firſt came on Shore, without Neceſſaries of Life, or any Means to ſupply and procure them? Particularly, ſaid I aloud (tho' to myſelf) what would I have done without a Gun, without Ammunition, without any Tools to make any thing, or

to

to work with? without Cloaths, Bedding, a Tent, or any manner of Coverings? And that now I had all theſe to a ſufficient Quantity, and was in a fair way to provide myſelf in ſuch a manner, as to live without my Gun when my Ammunition was ſpent, ſo that I had a tolerable View of ſubſiſting without any Want as long as I liv'd; for I conſider'd from the Beginning how I would provide for the Accidents that might happen, and for the Time that was to come, even not only after my Ammunition ſhould be ſpent, but even after my Health or Strength ſhould decay.

I confeſs I had not then entertain'd any Notion of my Ammunition being deſtroy'd at one Blaſt, I mean my Powder being blown up by Lightning; and this made the Thoughts of it ſurpriſing to me, when it lighten'd and thundered, as I obſerv'd juſt now.

And now, being to enter into a melancholy Relation of a Scene of ſilent Life, ſuch perhaps as was never heard of in the World before, I ſhall take it from its Beginning, and continue it in its Order. It was, by my Account, the 30th of *September*, when, in the manner as above-ſaid, I firſt ſet Foot upon this horrid Iſland, when the Sun being, to us, in its autumnal Equinox, was almoſt juſt over my Head; for I reckon'd myſelf, by Obſervation, to be in the Latitude of 9 Degrees, 22 Min. South of the Line.

After I had been there about ten or twelve Days, it came into my Thoughts that I ſhould loſe my Reckoning of Time for want of Books, and Pen, and Ink, and ſhould even forget the Sabbath Days from the working Days: But to prevent this, I cut it with my Knife upon a large Poſt, in capital Letters; and, making it into a great Croſs, I ſet it up on the Shore where I firſt landed, *viz. I came on Shore here the* 30*th of* September, 1659. Upon the Sides of this ſquare Poſt I cut every Day a Notch with my Knife, and every ſeventh Notch was as long again as the reſt, and every firſt Day of the Month as long again as that long one; and thus I kept my Calendar, or weekly, monthly, and yearly Reckoning of Time.

In the next Place we are to obſerve, that among the many Things which I brought from the Ship in the ſeveral Voyages, which, as above-mention'd, I made to it, I got

got ſeveral Things of leſs Value, but not at all leſs uſeful to me, which I omitted ſetting down before; as in particular, Pens, Ink, and Paper, ſeveral Parcels in the Captain's, Mate's, Gunner's, and Carpenter's keeping, three or four Compaſſes, ſome mathematical Inſtruments, Dials, Perſpectives, Charts, and Books of Navigation, all which I huddled together, whether I might want them or no; alſo I found three very good Bibles, which came to me in my Cargo from *England*, and which I had pack'd up among my Things; ſome *Portugueſe* Books alſo, and among them, two or three Popiſh Prayer-Books, and ſeveral other Books, all which I carefully ſecured. And I muſt not forget that we had in the Ship a Dog and two Cats, of whoſe eminent Hiſtory I muſt have occaſion to ſay ſomething in its Place; for I carried both the Cats with me; and as for the Dog, he jump'd out of the Ship of himſelf, and ſwam on Shore to me the Day after I went on Shore with my firſt Cargo, and was a truſty Servant to me many Years: I wanted nothing that he could fetch me, nor any Company that he could make up to me; I only wanted to have him talk to me, but that he could not do. As I obſerv'd before, I found Pen, Ink, and Paper, and I huſbanded them to the utmoſt; and I ſhall ſhew, that while my Ink laſted, I kept Things very exact; but after that was gone, I could not; for I could not make any Ink, by any means that I could get.

And this put me in mind that I wanted many Things, notwithſtanding all that I had amaſs'd together; and of theſe, this of Ink was one; as alſo a Spade, Pick-ax, and Shovel, to dig or remove the Earth; Needles, Pins, and Thread; as for Linen, I ſoon learn'd to want that without much Difficulty.

This want of Tools made every Work I did go on heavily, and it was near a whole Year before I had intirely finiſh'd my little Pale, or ſurrounded Habitation: The Piles, or Stakes, which were as heavy as I could well lift, were a long Time in cutting and preparing in the Woods, and more by far in bringing home; ſo that I ſpent ſometimes two Days in cutting and bringing home one of thoſe Poſts, and a third Day in driving it into the Ground; for which Purpoſe I got a heavy Piece of Wood at firſt, but at laſt bethought myſelf of one of the

Iron

Iron Crows, which however, though I found made driving thoſe Poſts or Piles very laborious, dious Work.

But what need I have been concern'd at the neſs of any thing I had to do, ſeeing I had Time to do it in? Nor had I any other Employment had been over, at leaſt that I could foreſee, ex ranging the Iſland to ſeek for Food, which I did leſs every Day.

I now began ſeriouſly to conſider my Conditi the Circumſtances I was reduc'd to, and I dre State of my Affairs in Writing; not ſo much them to any that were to come after me, for I to have but few Heirs, as to deliver my Thoug daily poring upon them, and afflicting my Mind my Reaſon began now to maſter my Deſpondenc gan to comfort myſelf as well as I could, and ſ Good againſt the Evil, that I might have ſome diſtinguiſh my Caſe from worſe; and I ſtated it partially, like Debtor and Creditor, the Comf joy'd, againſt the Miſeries I ſuffer'd, thus:

EVIL.	GOOD
I am caſt upon an horrible deſolate Iſland; void of all Hope of Recovery.	*But I am alive, drown'd, as all m Company was.*
I am ſingled out and ſeparated, as it were, from all the World, to be miſerable.	*But I am ſingle from all the Ship's be ſpared from Dea he that miraculou me from Death, ca me from this Condi*
I am divided from Mankind, a Solitary, one baniſh'd from human Society.	*But I am not ſta periſhing on a barr affording no Suſtena*
I have no Cloaths to cover me.	*But I am in an mate, where if I ha I could hardly wear*

I am without any Defence or Means to reſiſt any Violence of Man or Beaſt.

But I am caſt on an Iſland where I ſee no wild Beaſts to hurt me, as I ſaw on the Coaſt of Africa: And what if I had been ſhipwreck'd there?

I have no Soul to ſpeak to, or relieve me.

But God wonderfully ſent the Ship in near enough to the Shore, that I have gotten out ſo many neceſſary Things as will either ſupply my Wants, or enable me to ſupply myſelf, even as long as I live.

Upon the Whole, here was an undoubted Teſtimony, that there was ſcarce any Condition in the World ſo miſerable, but there was ſomething *negative*, or ſomething *poſitive*, to be thankful in it; and let this ſtand as a Direction from the Experience of the moſt miſerable of all Conditions in this World, that we may always find in it ſomething to comfort ourſelves from, and to ſet, in the Deſcription of Good and Evil, on the Credit-ſide of the Account.

Having now brought my Mind a little to reliſh my Condition, and giving over looking out to Sea, to ſee if I could ſpy a Ship; I ſay, giving over theſe Things, I began to apply myſelf to accommodate my way of living, and to make Things as eaſy to me as I could.

I have already deſcrib'd my Habitation, which was a Tent under the Side of a Rock, ſurrounded with a ſtrong Pale of Poſts and Cables, but I might now rather call it a Wall; for I rais'd a kind of Wall up againſt it of Turfs, about two Feet thick on the Outſide; and after ſome Time (I think it was a Year and an half) I rais'd Rafters from it, leaning to the Rock, and thatch'd or cover'd it with Boughs of Trees, and ſuch Things as I could get to keep out the Rain, which I found at ſome Times of the Year very violent.

I have already obſerv'd how I brought all my Goods into this Pale, and into the Cave which I had made behind me: But I muſt obſerve too, that, at firſt, this wa

Iron Crows, which however, though I found it, yet made driving thoſe Poſts or Piles very laborious, and tedious Work.

But what need I have been concern'd at the Tediouſneſs of any thing I had to do, ſeeing I had Time enough to do it in? Nor had I any other Employment, if that had been over, at leaſt that I could foreſee, except the ranging the Iſland to ſeek for Food, which I did more or leſs every Day.

I now began ſeriouſly to conſider my Condition, and the Circumſtances I was reduc'd to, and I drew up the State of my Affairs in Writing; not ſo much to leave them to any that were to come after me, for I was like to have but few Heirs, as to deliver my Thoughts from daily poring upon them, and afflicting my Mind; and as my Reaſon began now to maſter my Deſpondency, I began to comfort myſelf as well as I could, and ſo ſet the Good againſt the Evil, that I might have ſomething to diſtinguiſh my Caſe from worſe; and I ſtated it very impartially, like Debtor and Creditor, the Comfort I enjoy'd, againſt the Miſeries I ſuffer'd, thus:

EVIL.	GOOD.
I am caſt upon an horrible deſolate Iſland; void of all Hope of Recovery.	*But I am alive, and not drown'd, as all my Ship's Company was.*
I am ſingled out and ſeparated, as it were, from all the World, to be miſerable.	*But I am ſingled out too from all the Ship's Crew to be ſpared from Death; and he that miraculouſly ſaved me from Death, can deliver me from this Condition.*
I am divided from Mankind, a Solitary, one baniſh'd from human Society.	*But I am not ſtarv'd, and periſhing on a barren Place, affording no Suſtenance.*
I have no Cloaths to cover me.	*But I am in an hot Climate, where if I had Cloaths, I could hardly wear them.*

I am without any Defence or Means to reſiſt any Violence of Man or Beaſt.

But I am caſt on an Iſland where I ſee no wild Beaſts to hurt me, as I ſaw on the Coaſt of Africa: *And what if I had been ſhipwreck'd there?*

I have no Soul to ſpeak to, or relieve me.

But God wonderfully ſent the Ship in near enough to the Shore, that I have gotten out ſo many neceſſary Things as will either ſupply my Wants, or enable me to ſupply myſelf, even as long as I live.

Upon the Whole, here was an undoubted Teſtimony, that there was ſcarce any Condition in the World ſo miſerable, but there was ſomething *negative*, or ſomething *poſitive*, to be thankful in it; and let this ſtand as a Direction from the Experience of the moſt miſerable of all Conditions in this World, that we may always find in it ſomething to comfort ourſelves from, and to ſet, in the Deſcription of Good and Evil, on the Credit-ſide of the Account.

Having now brought my Mind a little to reliſh my Condition, and giving over looking out to Sea, to ſee if I could ſpy a Ship; I ſay, giving over theſe Things, I began to apply myſelf to accommodate my way of living, and to make Things as eaſy to me as I could.

I have already deſcrib'd my Habitation, which was a Tent under the Side of a Rock, ſurrounded with a ſtrong Pale of Poſts and Cables, but I might now rather call it a Wall; for I rais'd a kind of Wall up againſt it of Turfs, about two Feet thick on the Outſide; and after ſome Time (I think it was a Year and an half) I rais'd Rafters from it, leaning to the Rock, and thatch'd or cover'd it with Boughs of Trees, and ſuch Things as I could get to keep out the Rain, which I found at ſome Times of the Year very violent.

I have already obſerv'd how I brought all my Goods into this Pale, and into the Cave which I had made behind me: But I muſt obſerve too, that, at firſt, this was

a confus'd Heap of Goods, which, as they lay in no Order, ſo they took up all my Place; I had no Room to turn myſelf, ſo I ſet myſelf to enlarge my Cave, and work'd farther into the Earth; for it was a looſe ſandy Rock, which yielded eaſily to the Labour I beſtow'd on it: And ſo, when I found I was pretty ſafe as to Beaſts of Prey, I work'd ſideways to the Right-hand into the Rock; and, then turning to the Right again, work'd quite out, and made my Door to come out on the Outſide of my Pale or Fortification.

This gave me not only Egreſs and Regreſs, as it was a Back-way to my Tent, and to my Store houſe, but gave me room to ſtow my Goods.

And now I began to apply myſelf to make ſuch neceſſary Things as I found I moſt wanted, particularly a Chair and a Table; for without theſe I was not able to enjoy the few Comforts I had in the World; I could not write or eat, or do ſeveral Things, with ſo much Pleaſure, without a Table.

So I went to Work; and here I muſt needs obſerve, that as Reaſon is the Subſtance and Original of the Mathematics, ſo, by ſtating and ſquaring every thing by Reaſon, and by making the moſt rational Judgment of Things, every Man may be, in Time, Maſter of every Mechanic Art. I had never handled a Tool in my Life, and yet in Time, by Labour, Application, and Contrivance, I found at laſt, that I wanted nothing but I could have made it, eſpecially if I had had Tools; however, I made Abundance of Things even without Tools, and ſome with no more Tools than an Adz and an Hatchet, which perhaps were never made that way before, and that with infinite Labour. For Example, if I wanted a Board, I had no other Way but to cut down a Tree, ſet it on an Edge before me, and hew it flat on either Side with my Ax, till I had brought it to be as thin as a Plank, and then dub it ſmooth with my Adz: It is true, by this Method I could make but one Board out of a whole Tree, but this I had no Remedy for but Patience, any more than I had for the prodigious deal of Time and Labour which it took me up to make a Plank or Board: But my Time or Labour was little worth, and ſo it was as well employ'd one way as another.

However,

However, I made me a Table and a Chair, as I obſerv'd above, in the firſt Place, and this I did out of the ſhort Pieces of Boards that I brought on my Raft from the Ship: But when I had wrought out ſome Boards, as above, I made large Shelves of the Breadth of a Foot and an half, one over another, all along one Side of my Cave, to lay all my Tools, Nails, and Iron-work, and in a word, to ſeparate every thing at large in their Places, that I might eaſily come at them; alſo I knock'd Pieces into the Wall of the Rock, to hang my Guns, and all Things that would hang up.

So that, had my Cave been to be ſeen, it look'd like a general Magazine of all neceſſary Things; and I had every thing ſo ready at my Hand, that it was a great Pleaſure to me to ſee all my Goods in ſuch Order, and eſpecially to find my Stock of all Neceſſaries ſo great.

And now it was when I began to keep a Journal of every Day's Employment; for indeed at firſt I was in too much Hurry, and not only an Hurry as to Labour, but in too much Diſcompoſure of Mind, and my Journal would have been full of many dull Things. For Example, I muſt have ſaid thus: *Sept.* the 30th, after I got to Shore, and had eſcap'd drowning, inſtead of being thankful to God for my Deliverance, having firſt vomited with a great Quantity of Salt Water, which was gotten into my Stomach, and recovering myſelf a little, I ran about the Shore, wringing my Hands, and beating my Head and Face, exclaiming at my Miſery, and crying out, I was undone, undone! till, tir'd and faint, I was forc'd to lie down on the Ground to repoſe, but durſt not ſleep for Fear of being devour'd.

Some Days after this, and after I had been on board the Ship, and had got all I could out of her, yet I could not forbear getting up to the Top of a little Mountain, and looking out to Sea, in Hopes of ſeeing a Ship, then fanſy at a vaſt Diſtance I ſpy'd a Sail, pleaſe myſelf with the Hopes of it, and then after looking ſteadily till I was almoſt blind, loſe it quite, and ſit down and weep like a Child, and thus increaſe my Miſery by my Folly.

But having gotten over theſe Things in ſome Meaſure, and having ſettled my Houſhold-ſtuff and Habitation, made me a Table and a Chair, and all as handſome

about

about me as I could, I began, I ſay, to keep my Journal, of which I ſhall here give you the Copy (though in it will be told all theſe Particulars over again) as long as it laſted; for at laſt, having no more Ink, I was forc'd to leave it off.

The JOURNAL.

September 30, 1659. I, poor miſerable *Robinſon Cruſoe*, being ſhipwreck'd during a dreadful Storm in the Offing, came on Shore on this diſmal unfortunate Iſland, which I call'd the *Iſland of Deſpair*, all the reſt of the Ship's Company being drown'd, and myſelf almoſt dead.

All the reſt of the Day I ſpent in afflicting myſelf at the diſmal Circumſtances I was brought to; *viz.* I had neither Food, Houſe, Cloaths, Weapon, or Place to fly to, and, in Deſpair of any Relief, ſaw nothing but Death before me, either that I ſhould be devour'd by wild Beaſts, murder'd by Savages, or ſtarv'd to Death for want of Food. At the Approach of Night I ſlept in a Tree for fear of wild Creatures, but ſlept ſoundly, tho' it rain'd all Night.

October 1. In the Morning I ſaw, to my great Surprize, the Ship had floated with the high Tide, and was driven on Shore again much nearer the Iſland; which, as it was ſome Comfort on one hand (for ſeeing her ſit upright, and not broken in Pieces, I hoped, if the Wind abated, I might get on board, and get ſome Food and Neceſſaries out of her for my Relief,) ſo, on the other hand, it renew'd my Grief at the Loſs of my Comrades, who, I imagin'd, if we had all ſtaid on board, might have ſav'd the Ship, or at leaſt that they would not have been all drown'd, as they were; and that, had the Men been ſav'd, we might perhaps have built us a Boat out of the Ruins of the Ship, to have carry'd us to ſome other Part of the World. I ſpent great Part of this Day in perplexing myſelf on theſe Things; but at length, ſeeing the Ship almoſt dry, I went upon the Sand as near

as

as I could, and then ſwam on board: This Day alſo continued raining, tho' with no Wind at all.

From the 1ſt of *October* to the 24th. All theſe Days intirely ſpent in many ſeveral Voyages to get all I could out of the Ship; which I brought on Shore every Tide of Flood upon Rafts. Much Rain alſo in theſe Days, though with ſome Intervals of fair Weather: But, it ſeems, this was the rainy Seaſon.

Oct. 24. I overſet my Raft, and all the Goods I had got upon it; but being in ſhoal Water, and the Things being chiefly heavy, I recover'd many of them when the Tide was out.

Oct. 25. It rain'd all Night and all Day, with ſome Guſts of Wind, during which Time the Ship broke in Pieces, the Wind blowing a little harder than before, and was no more to be ſeen, except the Wreck of her, and that only at low Water. I ſpent this Day in covering and ſecuring the Goods which I had ſav'd, that the Rain might not ſpoil them.

Oct. 26. I walk'd about the Shore almoſt all Day, to find out a Place to fix my Habitation, greatly concern'd to ſecure myſelf from any Attack in the Night, either from wild Beaſts or Men. Towards Night I fix'd upon a proper Place under a Rock, and mark'd out a Semicircle for my Encampment, which I reſolv'd to ſtrengthen with a Work, Wall, or Fortification, made of double Piles, lin'd within with Cable, and without with Turf.

From the 26th to the 30th, I work'd very hard in carrying all my Goods to my new Habitation, though ſome Part of the Time it rain'd exceeding hard.

The 31ſt, in the Morning, I went out into the Iſland with my Gun to ſee for ſome Food, and diſcover the Country, when I kill'd a She goat, and her Kid follow'd me Home, which I afterwards kill'd alſo, becauſe it would not feed.

November 1. I ſet up my Tent under a Rock, and lay there for the firſt Night, making it as large as I could, with Stakes driven in to ſwing my Hammock upon.

Nov. 2. I ſet up all my Cheſts and Boards, and the Pieces of Timber which made my Raft, and with them form'd a Fence round me, a little within the Place I had mark'd out for my Fortification.

Nov.

Nov. 3. I went out with my Gun, and kill'd two Fowls like Ducks, which were very good Food. In the Afternoon went to work to make me a Table.

Nov. 4. This Morning I began to order my Times of Work, of going out with my Gun, Time of Sleep, and Time of Diverſion; *viz.* every Morning I walk'd out with my Gun for two or three Hours, if it did not rain; then employ'd myſelf at work till about eleven o'Clock; then eat what I had to live on; and from twelve to two I lay down to ſleep, the Weather being exceſſive hot, and then in the Evening to work again: The working Part of this Day and the next were wholly employ'd in making this Table, for I was yet but a very ſorry Workman, tho' Time and Neceſſity made me a complete natural Mechanic ſoon after, as I believe it would do any one elſe.

Nov. 5. This Day I went abroad with my Gun and my Dog, and kill'd a wild Cat, her Skin pretty ſoft, but her Fleſh good for nothing: Every Creature I kill'd I took off the Skins and preſerv'd them. Coming back by the Sea-Shore, I ſaw many Sorts of Sea-Fowls which I did not underſtand; but was ſurpriſed, and almoſt frighted, with two or three Seels, which, while I was gazing at, not well knowing what they were, got into the Sea, and eſcap'd me for that Time.

Nov. 6. After my Morning Walk, I went to work with my Table again, and finiſh'd it, though not to my liking; nor was it long before I learn'd to mend it.

Nov. 7. Now it began to be ſettled fair Weather. The 7th, 8th, 9th, 10th, and Part of the 12th (for the 11th was *Sunday*, according to my Reckoning) I took wholly up to make me a Chair, and with much ado brought it to a tolerable Shape, but never to pleaſe me; and even in the making I pull'd it to Pieces ſeveral Times. *Note*, I ſoon neglected keeping *Sundays*; for, omitting my Mark for them on my Poſt, I forgot which was which.

Nov. 13. This Day it rain'd, which refreſh'd me exceedingly, and cool'd the Earth; but it was accompany'd with terrible Thunder and Lightning, which frighted me dreadfully for fear of my Powder: As ſoon as it was over, I reſolv'd to ſeparate my Stock of Powder into as many little Parcels as poſſible, that it might not be in Danger.

Nov.

Nov. 14, 15, 16. Theſe three Days I ſpent in making little ſquare Cheſts, or Boxes, which might hold about a Pound, or two Pounds at moſt, of Powder; and ſo putting the Powder in, I ſtow'd it in Places as ſecure and remote from one another as poſſible. On one of theſe three Days I kill'd a large Bird that was good to eat, but I knew not what to call it.

Nov. 17. This Day I began to dig behind my Tent into the Rock, to make room for my farther Convenience. *Note*, Three Things I wanted exceedingly for this Work; *viz.* A Pick-ax, a Shovel, and a Wheel-barrow or Baſket: So I deſiſted from my Work, and began to conſider how to ſupply that Want, and make me ſome Tools. As for the Pick-ax, I made uſe of the Iron-Crows, which were proper enough, though heavy; but the next Thing was a Shovel, or Spade; this was ſo abſolutely neceſſary, that indeed I could do nothing effectually without it; but what kind of one to make I knew not.

Nov. 18. The next Day, in ſearching the Woods, I found a Tree of that Wood, or like it, which in the *Braſils* they call the *Iron-Tree*, for its exceeding Hardneſs; of this, with great Labour, and almoſt ſpoiling my Ax, I cut a Piece, and brought it home with Difficulty enough, for it was exceeding heavy.

The exceſſive Hardneſs of the Wood, and having no other Way, made me a long while upon this Machine; for I work'd it effectually, by little and little, into the Form of a Shovel or Spade, the Handles exactly ſhap'd like ours in *England*, only that the broad Part, having no Iron ſhod upon it at Bottom, it would not laſt me ſo long; however it ſerv'd well enough for the Uſes which I had Occaſion to put it to; but never was a Shovel, I believe, made after that Faſhion, or ſo long a making.

I was ſtill deficient, for I wanted a Baſket or a Wheel-barrow: A Baſket I could not make by any means, having no ſuch Things as Twigs that would bend to make Wicker-ware, at leaſt none yet found out; and, as to the Wheel-barrow, I fanſied I could make all but the Wheel; but that I had no Notion of, neither did I know how to go about it; beſides, I had no poſſible Way to make Iron Gudgeons for the Spindle or Axis of the

Wheel

Wheel to run in: So I gave it over; and ſo, for carrying away the Earth which I dug out of the Cave, I made me a Thing like an Hod, which the Labourers carry Mortar in when they ſerve the Bricklayers.

This was not ſo difficult to me as the making the Shovel; and yet this, and the Shovel, and the Attempt, which I made in vain, to make a Wheel-barrow, took me up no leſs than four Days; I mean always, excepting my Morning's Walk with my Gun, which I ſeldom fail'd; and very ſeldom fail'd alſo of bringing home ſomething fit to eat.

Nov. 23. My other Work having ſtood ſtill, becauſe of my making theſe Tools, when they were finiſh'd, I went on; and working every Day as my Strength and Time allow'd, I ſpent eighteen Days intirely in widening and deepening my Cave, that it might hold my Goods commodiouſly.

Note, during all this Time, I work'd to make this Room or Cave ſpacious enough to accommodate me as a Warehouſe or Magazine, a Kitchen, a Dining-room, and a Cellar; as for a Lodging, I kept to the Tent, except that ſometimes in the wet Seaſon of the Year, it rain'd ſo hard, that I could not keep myſelf dry; which cauſed me afterwards to cover all my Place within my Pale with long Poles in the Form of Rafters, leaning againſt the Rock, and load them with Flags, and large Leaves of Trees, like a Thatch.

December 10. I began now to think my Cave or Vault finiſh'd, when on a ſudden (it ſeems I had made it too large) a great Quantity of Earth fell down from the Top and one Side, ſo much, that in ſhort it frighten'd me, and not without Reaſon too; for if I had been under it, I had never wanted a Grave-Digger: Upon this Diſaſter I had a great deal of Work to do over again; for I had the looſe Earth to carry out, and, which was of more Importance, I had the Cieling to prop up, ſo that I might be ſure no more would come down.

Dec. 11. This Day I went to work with it accordingly, and got two Shoars, or Poſts, pitch'd upright to the Top, with two Pieces of Board acroſs over each Poſt: This I finiſh'd the next Day; and ſetting more Poſts up with Boards, in about a Week more I had the Roof ſecured, and the Poſts, ſtanding in Rows, ſerv'd me for *Partitions to Part off* my Houſe. *Dec.*

Dec. 17. From this Day to the 20th, I plac'd Shelves, and knock'd up Nails in the Poſts, to hang every thing up that could be hung up; and now I began to be in ſome Order within Doors.

Dec 20. Now I carried every thing into the Cave, and began to furniſh my Houſe, and ſet up ſome Pieces of Board like a Dreſſer, to order my Victuals upon; but Board began to be very ſcarce with me: Alſo I made me another Table.

Dec. 24. Much Rain all Night and all Day; no ſtirring out.

Dec. 25. Rain all Day.

Dec. 26. No Rain, and the Earth much cooler than before, and pleaſanter.

Dec. 27. Kill'd a young Goat, and lam'd another, ſo that I catch'd it, and led it home in a String, when I had it home, I bound and ſplinter'd up its Leg, which was broke. *N. B.* I took ſuch care of it, that it liv'd, and the Leg grew well, and as ſtrong as ever; but by nurſing it ſo long it grew tame, and fed upon the little Green at my Door, and would not go away. This was the firſt Time that I entertain'd a Thought of breeding up ſome tame Creatures, that I might have Food when my Powder and Shot was all ſpent.

Dec. 28, 29, 30. Great Heats and no Breeze; ſo that there was no ſtirring abroad, except in the Evening for Food: This Time I ſpent in putting all my Things in Order within Doors.

January 1. Very hot ſtill, but I went abroad, early and late, with my Gun, and lay ſtill in the Middle of the Day: This Evening going farther into the Valleys, which lay towards the Centre of the Iſland, I found there was plenty of Goats, tho' exceeding ſhy, and hard to come at; however, I reſolv'd to try if I could not bring my Dog to hunt them down.

Jan. 2. Accordingly the next Day I went out with my Dog, and ſet him upon the Goats; but I was miſtaken, for they all fac'd about upon the Dog, and he knew his Danger too well, for he would not come near them.

Jan. 3. I began my Fence or Wall, which, being ſtill jealous of my being attack'd by ſomebody, I reſolv'd to make very thick and ſtrong.

N. B. *This Wall being deſcrib'd before, I purpoſely omit what was ſaid in the Journal: It is ſufficient to obſerve, that I was no leſs Time than from the* 3d *of* January *to the* 14th *of* April, *working, finiſhing, and perfecting this Wall, tho' it was no more than about* 24 *Yards in Length, being an Half-circle from one Place in the Rock to another Place about eight Yards from it, the Door of the Cave being in the Centre behind it.*

All this Time I work'd very hard, the Rains hindering me many Days, nay, ſometimes Weeks together; but I thought I ſhould never be perfectly ſecure till this Wall was finiſh'd; and it is ſcarce credible what inexpreſſible Labour every thing was done with, eſpecially the bringing Piles out of the Wood, and driving them into the Ground; for I made them much bigger than I needed to have done.

When this Wall was finiſh'd, and the Outſide double-fenc'd with a Turf-wall rais'd up cloſe to it, I perſuaded myſelf, that if any People were come on Shore there, they would not perceive any thing like an Habitation: And it is very well I did ſo, and may be obſerv'd hereafter, upon a very remarkable Occaſion.

During this Time, I made Rounds in the Woods for Game every Day, when the Rain permitted me, and made frequent Diſcoveries in theſe Walks of ſomething or other to my Advantage; particularly I found a kind of wild Pigeons, who build not as Wood-Pigeons in a Tree, but rather as Houſe-Pigeons in the Holes of the Rocks; and taking ſome young ones, I endeavour'd to breed them up tame, and effected it; but when they grew old, they flew all away, which perhaps was in ſome want of feeding them, for I had nothing to give them; however, I frequently found their Neſts, and got their young ones, which were very good Meat.

And now, in the managing my Houſhold Affairs, I found my ſelf wanting in many Things, which I thought at firſt it was impoſſible for me to make. As indeed as to ſome of them it was; for inſtance, I could never make a Cask to be hoop'd; I had a Notion, I could make Pails enough, but I could never arrive at the Capacity of making one by them, tho' I ſpent many Weeks about it;

it; I could neither put in the Heads, or join the Staves ſo true to one another, as to make them hold Water; ſo I gave that alſo over.

In the next Place, I was at a great Loſs for Candles; ſo that as ſoon as it was dark, which was generally by ſeven o'Clock, I was oblig'd to go to Bed. I remembred the Lump of Bees-Wax with which I made Candles in my *African* Adventure; but I had none of that now: The only Remedy I had, was, that when I had kill'd a Goat, I ſav'd the Tallow, and with a little Diſh made of Clay, which I bak'd in the Sun, to which I added a Wick of ſome Oakum, I made me a Lamp; and this gave me Light, tho' not a clear ſteady Light like a Candle. In the Middle of all my Labours it happen'd, that, rummaging my Things, I found a little Bag, which, as I hinted before, had been fill'd with Corn for the Feeding of Poultry, not for this Voyage, but before, as I ſuppoſe, when the Ship came from *Liſbon*; what little Remainder of Corn had been in the Bag, was all devoured by the Rats, and I ſaw nothing in the Bag but Huſks and Duſt; and being willing to have the Bag for ſome other Uſe (I think it was to put Powder in, when I divided it for Fear of the Lightning, or ſome ſuch Uſe) I ſhook the Huſks of Corn out of it on one Side of my Fortification under the Rock.

It was a little before the great Rains, juſt now mentioned, that I threw this Stuff away, taking no Notice of any thing, and not ſo much as remembring that I had thrown any thing there; when about a Month after, or thereabouts, I ſaw ſome few Stalks of ſomething green ſhooting upon the Ground, which I fanſied might be ſome Plant I had not ſeen; but I was ſurpris'd, and perfectly aſtoniſh'd, when after a little longer Time, I ſaw about ten or twelve Ears come out, which were perfect green Barley of the ſame kind as our *European*, nay as our *Engliſh* Barley.

It is impoſſible to expreſs the Aſtoniſhment and Confuſion of my Thoughts on this Occaſion; I had hitherto acted upon no religious Foundation at all; indeed I had very few Notions of Religion in my Head, nor had entertain'd any Senſe of any thing that had befallen me, otherwiſe than as a Chance, or, as we

lightly ſay, what pleaſes God; without ſo much as inquiring into the End of Providence in theſe Things, or his Order in governing Events in the World: But after I ſaw Barley grow there, in a Climate which I knew was not proper for Corn, and eſpecially that I knew not how it came there, it ſtartled me ſtrangely, and I began to ſuggeſt, that God had miraculouſly caus'd this Grain to grow without any Help of Seed ſown, and that it was ſo directed, purely for my Suſtenance in that wild miſerable Place.

This touch'd my Heart a little, and brought Tears out of my Eyes, and I began to bleſs myſelf, that ſuch a Prodigy of Nature ſhould happen upon my Account; and this was the more ſtrange to me, becauſe I ſaw near it ſtill, all along by the Side of the Rock, ſome other ſtraggling Stalks, which prov'd to be Stalks of Rice, and which I knew, becauſe I had ſeen it grow in *Africa*, when I was aſhore there.

I not only thought theſe the pure Productions of Providence for my Support, but, not doubting but that there was more in the Place, I went all over that Part of the Iſland where I had been before, peering in every Corner, and under every Rock, to ſee for more of it, but I could not find any; at laſt it occurr'd to my Thoughts, that I had ſhaken the Bag of Chickens Meat out in that Place, and the Wonder began to ceaſe; and I muſt confeſs, my religious Thankfulneſs to God's Providence began to abate too, upon diſcovering that all this was nothing but what was common; though I ought to have been as thankful for ſo ſtrange and unforeſeen Providence, as if it had been miraculous; for it was really the Work of Providence as to me, that ſhould order or appoint, that 10 or 12 Grains of Corn ſhould remain unſpoil'd, (when the Rats had deſtroy'd all the reſt,) as if it had been dropped from Heaven: As alſo that I ſhould throw it out into that particular Place, where, it being in the Shade of an high Rock, ſprang up immediately; whereas, if I had thrown it any where elſe at that Time, it had been burnt up and deſtroy'd.

I carefully ſav'd the Ears of this Corn, you may be ſure, in their Seaſon, which was about the End of *June*; and, laying up every Corn, I reſolved to ſow them all *again, hoping* in time to have ſome Quantity ſufficient

to

to ſupply me with Bread; but it was not till the 4th Year that I would allow myſelf the leaſt Grain of this Corn to eat, and even then but ſparingly, as I ſhall ſay afterwards in its Order; for I loſt all that I ſow'd the firſt Seaſon, by not obſerving the proper Time; for I ſow'd it juſt before the dry Seaſon, ſo that it never came up at all, at leaſt not as it would have done: Of which in its Place.

Beſides this Barley, there were, as above, 20 or 30 Stalks of Rice, which I preſerv'd with the ſame Care, and whoſe Uſe was of the ſame kind, or to the ſame Purpoſe; *viz.* to make me Bread, or rather Food; for I found Ways to cook it up without baking, though I did that alſo after ſome Time. But to return to my Journal.

I work'd exceſſive hard theſe three or four Months, to get my Wall done; and the 14th of *April* I cloſ'd it up, contriving to go into it, not by a Door, but over a Wall by a Ladder, that there might be no Sign on the Outſide of my Habitation.

April 16. I finiſh'd the Ladder: So I went up with the Ladder to the Top, and then pull'd it up after me, and let it down on the Inſide: This was a complete Incloſure to me; for within I had Room enough, and nothing could come at me from without, unleſs it could firſt mount my Wall.

The very next Day after this Wall was finiſh'd, I had almoſt had all my Labour overthrown at once, and myſelf kill'd: The Caſe was thus; as I was buſy in the Inſide of it, behind my Tent, juſt in the Entrance into my Cave, I was terribly frighten'd with a moſt dreadful ſurpriſing Thing indeed; for all on a ſudden I found the Earth came tumbling down from the Roof of my Cave, and from the Edge of the Hill over my Head, and two of the Poſts I had ſet up in the Cave, crack'd in a frightful manner: I was heartily ſcared, but thought nothing of what really was the Cauſe; only thinking that the Top of my Cave was falling in, as ſome of it had done before, and for fear I ſhould be buried in it, I ran forwards to my Ladder; and, not thinking myſelf ſafe there neither, I got over my Wall for fear of the Pieces of the Hill, which I expected might roll down upon me. I was no ſooner ſtept down upon the firm Ground, but

I plainly ſaw it was a terrible Earthquake; for the Ground I ſtood on ſhook three times, at about eight Minutes Diſtance, with three ſuch Shocks as would have overturn'd the ſtrongeſt Building that could be ſuppos'd to have ſtood upon the Earth; and a great Piece of the Top of the Rock, which ſtood about half a Mile from me next the Sea, fell down with ſuch a terrible Noiſe, as I never heard in all my Life: I perceiv'd alſo the very Sea was put into a violent Motion by it; and I believe the Shocks were ſtronger under the Water than on the Iſlands.

I was ſo amaz'd with the Thing itſelf, having never felt the like, or diſcours'd with any one that had, that I was like one dead or ſtupefied; and the Motion of the Earth made my Stomach ſick, like one that was toſs'd at Sea; but the Noiſe of the falling of the Rock awaked me, as it were; and rouſing me from the ſtupefied Condition I was in, filled me with Horror, and I thought of nothing then but the Hill falling upon my Tent, and all my Houſhold-Goods, and burying all at once; and this ſunk my very Soul within me a ſecond time.

After the third Shock was over, and I felt no more for ſome time, I began to take Courage; and yet I had not Heart enough to get over my Wall again, for fear of being buried alive; but ſtill ſat upon the Ground, greatly caſt down, and diſconſolate, not knowing what to do: All this while I had not the leaſt ſerious religious Thought, nothing but the common, *Lord, have Mercy upon me*; and when it was over, that went away too.

While I ſat thus, I found the Air overcaſt, and it grew cloudy, as if it would rain; and, in leſs than half an Hour, it blew a moſt dreadful Hurricane of Wind: The Sea all on a ſudden cover'd with Foam and Froth, the Shore was cover'd with the Breach of the Water, the Trees were torn up by the Roots, and a terrible Storm it was; and this held about three Hours, and then began to abate; and then in two Hours more it was calm, and began to rain very hard.

All this while I ſat upon the Ground very much terrified and dejected, when on a ſudden it came into my Thoughts, that theſe Winds and Rain being the Conſequence of the Earthquake, the Earthquake itſelf was ſpent and over, and I might venture into my Cave again:

again: With this Thought my Spirits began to revive, and the Rain helping alſo to perſuade me, I went in, and ſat me down in my Tent; but the Rain was ſo violent, that my Tent was ready to be beaten down with it, and I was forc'd to go into my Cave, though very much afraid and uneaſy, for fear it ſhould fall on my Head.

This violent Rain forc'd me to a new Work, *viz.* to cut an Hole thro' my new Fortification, like a Sink to let the Water go out, which would elſe have drown'd my Cave. After I had been in my Cave ſome time, and found ſtill no more Shocks of the Earthquake follow, I began to be more compos'd; and now, to ſupport my Spirits, which indeed wanted it very much, I went to my little Store, and took a ſmall Sup of Rum, which however I did then and always very ſparingly, knowing I could have no more when that was gone.

It continued raining all that Night, and great Part of the next Day, ſo that I could not ſtir abroad; but my Mind being more compos'd, I began to think of what I had beſt to do; concluding, that if the Iſland was ſubject to theſe Earthquakes, there would be no living for me in a Cave, but I muſt conſider of building me ſome little Hut in an open Place, which I might ſurround with a Wall, as I had done here, and ſo make myſelf ſecure from wild Beaſts or Men; but concluded, if I ſtaid where I was, I ſhould certainly, one time or other, be buried alive.

With theſe Thoughts I reſolv'd to move my Tent from the Place where it ſtood, which was juſt under the hanging Precipice of the Hill, and which, if it ſhould be ſhaken again, would certainly fall upon my Tent: And I ſpent the two next Days, being the 19th and 20th of *April*, in contriving where and how to remove my Habitation.

The fear of being ſwallow'd up alive, made me that I never ſlept in Quiet; and yet the Apprehenſions of lying abroad without any Fence, were almoſt equal to it: But ſtill, when I look'd about, and ſaw how every thing was put in Order, how pleaſantly conceal'd I was, and how ſafe from Danger, it made me loth to remove.

In the mean time it occurr'd to me, that it would require a vaſt deal of Time for me to do this, and that I muſt be contented to run the Venture where I was, till I had form'd a Camp for myſelf, and had ſecur'd it ſo as to remove to it: So with this Reſolution I compoſed myſelf for a time, and reſolv'd that I would go to work with all Speed to build me a Wall with Piles and Cables, *&c.* in a Circle, as before, and ſet my Tent up in it when it was finiſh'd; but that I would venture to ſtay where I was, till it was finiſh'd and fit to remove to. This was the 21ſt.

April 22. The next Morning I began to conſider of Means to put this Reſolve in Execution; but I was at a great Loſs about my Tools: I had three large Axes, and abundance of Hatchets (for we carried the Hatchets for Traffick with the *Indians*) but with much chopping and cutting knotty hard Wood, they were all full of Notches, and dull; and tho' I had a Grindſtone, I could not turn it, and grind my Tools too: This coſt me as much Thought as a Statesman would have beſtow'd upon a grand Point of Politics, or a Judge upon the Life and Death of a Man. At length I contriv'd a Wheel with a String to turn it with my Foot, that I might have both my Hands at Liberty. *Note*, I had not ſeen any ſuch thing in *England*, or at leaſt not to take notice how it was done; tho' ſince, I have obſerv'd it was very common there; beſides that, my Grindſtone was very large and heavy. This Machine coſt me a full Week's Work to bring it to Perfection.

April 28, 29. Theſe two whole Days I took up in grinding my Tools, my Machine for turning my Grindſtone performing very well.

April 30. Having perceived my Bread had been low a great while, I now took a Survey of it, and reduc'd myſelf to one Biſcuit-cake a Day, which made my Heart very heavy.

May 1. In the Morning, looking towards the Sea-ſide, the Tide being low, I ſaw ſomething lie on the Shore bigger than ordinary, and it look'd like a Caſk; when I came to it, I found a ſmall Barrel, and two or three Pieces of the Wreck of the Ship, which were driven on Shore by the late Hurricane; and looking towards the Wreck itſelf, I thought it ſeem'd to lie higher out of the Water

Water than it uſed to do; I examined the Barrel which was driven on Shore, and ſoon found it was a Barrel of Gunpowder, but it had taken Water, and the Powder was caked as hard as a Stone: However, I rolled it farther on the Shore for the preſent, and went on upon the Sands, as near as I could to the Wreck of the Ship to look for more.

When I came down to the Ship, I found it ſtrangely remov'd. The Forecaſtle, which lay before buried in Sand, was heav'd up at leaſt ſix Feet; and the Stern, which was broken to Pieces, and parted from the reſt by the Force of the Sea, ſoon after I had left rummaging of her, was toſs'd as it were up, and caſt on one Side; and the Sand was thrown ſo high on that Side next the Stern, that whereas there was a great Place of Water before, ſo that I could not come within a Quarter of a Mile of the Wreck without ſwimming, I could now walk quite up to her when the Tide was out: I was ſurpris'd with this at firſt, but ſoon concluded it muſt be done by the Earthquake; and as by this Violence the Ship was more broken open than formerly, ſo many things came daily on Shore which the Sea had looſen'd, and which the Winds and Water rolled by degrees to the Land.

This wholly diverted my Thoughts from the Deſign of removing my Habitation; and I buſied myſelf mightily, that Day eſpecially, in ſearching whether I could make any way into the Ship; but I found nothing was to be expected of that kind, for that all the Inſide of the Ship was choak'd up with Sand: However, as I had learnt not to deſpair of any thing, I reſolv'd to pull every thing to Pieces that I could of the Ship, concluding that every thing I could get from her would be of ſome Uſe or other to me.

May 3. I began with my Saw, and cut a Piece of a Beam through, which I thought held ſome of the upper Part, or Quarter-deck, together; and when I had cut it thro', I clear'd away the Sand as well as I could, from the Side which lay higheſt: But the Tide coming in, I was obliged to give over for that Time.

May 4. I went a fiſhing, but caught not one Fiſh that I durſt eat of, till I was weary of my Sport, when, juſt going to leave off, I caught a young Dolphin. I had

made me a long Line of ſome Rope-yarn, but I had no Hooks; yet I frequently caught Fiſh enough, as much as I cared to eat; all which I dry'd in the Sun, and eat them dry.

May 5. Work'd on the Wreck, cut another Beam aſunder, and brought three great Fire-planks off from the Decks, which I tied together, and made ſwim on Shore when the Tide of Flood came on.

May 6. Work'd on the Wreck, got ſeveral Iron Bolts out of her, and other Pieces of Iron-work; work'd very hard, and came home very much tir'd, and had Thoughts of giving it over.

May 7. Went to the Wreck again, but with an Intent not to work; but found the Weight of the Wreck had broken itſelf down, the Beams being cut, that ſeveral Pieces of the Ship ſeem'd to lie looſe, and the Inſide of the Hold lay ſo open, that I could ſee into it, but almoſt full of Water and Sand.

May 8. Went to the Wreck, and carry'd an Iron Crow to wrench up the Deck, which lay now quite clear of the Water or Sand: I wrench'd open two Planks, and brought them on Shore alſo with the Tide: I left the Iron Crow in the Wreck for next Day.

May 9. Went to the Wreck, and with the Crow made way into the Body of the Wreck, and felt ſeveral Caſks, and looſen'd them with the Crow, but could not break them up; I felt alſo a Roll of *Engliſh* Lead, and could ſtir it, but it was too heavy to move.

May 10, 11, 12, 13, 14. Went every Day to the Wreck, and got a great deal of Pieces of Timber and Boards, or Planks, and 2 or 300 Weight of Iron.

May 15. I carried two Hatchets to try if I could not cut a Piece off the Roll of Lead, by placing the Edge of one Hatchet, and driving it with the other; but as it lay about a Foot and an half in the Water, I could not make any Blow to drive the Hatchet.

May 16. It had blow'd hard in the Night, and the Wreck appear'd more broken by the Force of the Water; but I ſtaid ſo long in the Woods to get Pigeons for Food, that the Tide prevented me going to the Wreck that Day.

May 17. I ſaw ſome Pieces of the Wreck blown on Shore at a great Diſtance, two Miles off me, but reſolv'd

to ſee what they were, and found it was a Piece of the Head, but too heavy for me to bring away.

May 24. Every Day to this Day I work'd on the Wreck, and with hard Labour I looſen'd ſome things ſo much with the Crow, that the firſt flowing Tide ſeveral Caſks floated out, and two of the Seamen's Cheſts: But the Wind blowing from the Shore, nothing came to Land that Day but Pieces of Timber, and an Hogſhead which had ſome *Braſil* Pork in it, but the ſalt Water and the Sand had ſpoil'd it.

I continued this Work every Day to the 15th of *June*, except the Time neceſſary to get Food, which I always appointed, during this Part of my Employment, to be when the Tide was up, that I might be ready when it was ebbed out; and by this Time I had gotten Timber and Plank, and Iron-work enough to have built a good Boat, if I had known how; and alſo I got at ſeveral Times, and in ſeveral Pieces, near 100 Weight of the Sheet-Lead.

June 16. Going down to the Sea-ſide, I found a large Tortoiſe or Turtle; this was the firſt I had ſeen, which, it ſeems, was only my Misfortune, not any Defect of the Place, or Scarcity; for had I happen'd to be on the other Side of the Iſland, I might have had Hundreds of them every Day, as I found afterwards; but perhaps had paid dear enough for them.

June 17. I ſpent in cooking the Turtle: I found in her threeſcore Eggs; and her Fleſh was to me at that Time the moſt ſavoury and pleaſant that ever I taſted in my Life, having had no Fleſh but of Goats and Fowls, ſince I landed in this horrible Place.

June 18. Rain'd all the Day, and I ſtaid within. I thought at this Time the Rain felt cold, and I was ſomething chilly, which I knew was not uſual in that Latitude.

June 19. Very ill, and ſhivering, as if the Weather had been cold.

June 20. No Reſt all Night; violent Pains in my Head, and feveriſh.

June 21. Very ill, frighted almoſt to Death with the Apprehenſions of my ſad Condition, to be ſick, and no Help: Pray'd to God for the firſt Time ſince the Storm off of *Hull*, but ſcarce knew what I ſaid, or why; my Thoughts being all confus'd.

June 22. A little better, but under dreadful Apprehenſions of Sickneſs.

June 23. Very bad again; cold and ſhivering, and then a violent Headach.

June 24. Much better.

June 25. An Ague very violent; the Fit held me ſeven Hours, cold Fit and hot, with faint Sweats after it.

June 26. Better; and having no Victuals to eat, took my Gun, but found myſelf very weak; however I kill'd a She-Goat, and with much Difficulty got it home, and broil'd ſome of it, and eat; I would fain have ſtew'd it, and made ſome Broth, but had no Pot.

June 27. The Ague again ſo violent, that I lay a-bed all Day, and neither eat nor drank. I was ready to periſh for Thirſt, but ſo weak, I had no Strength to ſtand up, or to get myſelf any Water to drink; pray'd to God again, but was light-headed; and when I was not, I was ſo ignorant that I knew not what to ſay; only I lay and cry'd, *Lord, look upon me; Lord, pity me; Lord, have Mercy upon me:* I ſuppoſe I did nothing elſe for two or three Hours, till the Fit wearing off, I fell aſleep, and did not awake till far in the Night. When I awak'd, I found myſelf much refreſh'd, but weak, and exceedingly thirſty; however, as I had no Water in my whole Habitation, I was forc'd to lie till Morning, and went to ſleep again: In this ſecond Sleep I had this terrible Dream.

I thought, that I was ſitting on the Ground on the Outſide of my Wall, where I ſat when the Storm blew after the Earthquake, and that I ſaw a Man deſcend from a great black Cloud, in a bright Flame of Fire, and light upon the Ground: He was all over as bright as a Flame, ſo that I could but juſt bear to look towards him; his Countenance was moſt inexpreſſibly dreadful, impoſſible for Words to deſcribe; when he ſtepp'd upon the Ground with his Feet, I thought the Earth trembled, juſt as it had done before in the Earthquake; and all the Air look'd, to my Apprehenſion, as if it had been fill'd with Flaſhes of Fire.

He was no ſooner landed upon the Earth, but he mov'd forwards towards me, with a long Spear or Weapon in his Hand, to kill me; and when he came to a

riſing

riſing Ground, at ſome Diſtance, he ſpoke to me, or I heard a Voice ſo terrible, that it is impoſſible to expreſs the Terror of it; all that I can ſay I underſtood, was this, *Seeing all theſe Things have not brought thee to Repentance, now thou ſhalt die.* At which Words, I thought he lifted up the Spear that was in his Hand to kill me.

No one that ſhall ever read this Account, will expect that I ſhould be able to deſcribe the Horrors of my Soul at this terrible Viſion; I mean, that even while it was a Dream, I even dream'd of thoſe Horrors; nor is it any more poſſible to deſcribe the Impreſſion that remain'd upon my Mind, when I awak'd, and found it was but a Dream.

I had, alas! no divine Knowledge; what I had receiv'd by the good Inſtruction of my Father, was then worn out by an uninterrupted Series, for eight Years, of Sea-faring Wickedneſs, and a conſtant Converſation with none but ſuch as were like myſelf, wicked and profane to the laſt Degree: I do not remember, that I had in all that Time one Thought that ſo much as tended either to looking upwards towards God, or inwards towards a Reflection upon my own Ways: But a certain Stupidity of Soul, without Deſire of Good, or Conſcience of Evil, had intirely overwhelm'd me, and I was all that the moſt harden'd, unthinking, wicked Creature among our common Sailors can be ſuppos'd to be, not having the leaſt Senſe of the Fear of God in Dangers, or of Thankfulneſs to God in Deliverances.

In the relating what is already paſt of my Story, this will be the more eaſily believ'd, when I ſhall add, that thro' all the Variety of Miſeries that had to this Day befallen me, I never had ſo much as one Thought of its being the Hand of God, or that it was a juſt Puniſhment for my Sins, my rebellious Behaviour againſt my Father, or my preſent Sins, which were great; or ſo much as a Puniſhment for the general Courſe of my wicked Life. When I was on the deſperate Expedition on the deſart Shores of *Africa*, I never had ſo much as one Thought of what would become of me, or one Wiſh to God to direct me whither I ſhould go, or to keep me from the Danger which apparently ſurrounded me, as well from voracious Creatures, as cruel Savages: But I was

merely

merely thoughtleſs of God, or a Providence; I acted like a mere Brute, from the Principles of Nature, and by the Dictates of common Senſe only, and indeed hardly that.

When I was deliver'd and taken up at Sea by the *Portugal* Captain, well uſed, and dealt juſtly and honourably with, as well as charitably, I had not the leaſt Thankfulneſs in my Thoughts: When again I was ſhipwreck'd, ruin'd, and in Danger of drowning on this Iſland, I was as far from Remorſe, or looking on it as a Judgment; I only ſaid to myſelf often, that I was *an unfortunate Dog*, and born to be always miſerable.

It is true, when I got on Shore firſt here, and found all my Ship's Crew drown'd, and myſelf ſpared, I was ſurpris'd with a kind of Extaſy, and ſome Tranſports of Soul, which, had the Grace of God aſſiſted, might have come up to true Thankfulneſs; but it ended where it began, in a mere common Flight of Joy, or, as I may ſay, *being glad I was alive*, without the leaſt Reflection upon the diſtinguiſhing Goodneſs of the Hand which had preſev'd me, and had ſingled me out to be preſerv'd, when all the reſt were deſtroy'd; or an Inquiry why Providence had been thus merciful to me; even juſt the ſame common Sort of Joy which Seamen generally have, after they have got ſafe aſhore from a Shipwreck, which they drown all in the next Bowl of Punch, and forget almoſt as ſoon as it is over; and all the reſt of my Life was like it.

Even when I was afterwards, on due Conſideration, made ſenſible of my Condition, how I was caſt on this dreadful Place, out of the Reach of human Kind, out of all Hope of Relief, or Proſpect of Redemption, as ſoon as I ſaw a Probability of living, and that I ſhould not ſtarve and periſh for Hunger, all the Senſe of my Affliction wore off, and I began to be very eaſy, apply'd myſelf to the Works proper for my Preſervation and Supply, and was far enough from being afflicted at my Condition, as a Judgment from Heaven, or as the Hand of God againſt me: Theſe were Thoughts which very ſeldom enter'd into my Head.

The growing up of the Corn, as is hinted in my Journal, had at firſt ſome little Influence upon me, and *began to affect me* with Seriouſneſs, as long as I thought

it had ſomething miraculous in it; but as ſoon as ever that Part of Thought was remov'd, all the Impreſſion which was rais'd from it wore off alſo, as I have noted already.

Even the Earthquake, tho' nothing could be more terrible in its Nature, or more immediately directing to the inviſible Power, which alone directs ſuch things; yet no ſooner was the firſt Fright over, but the Impreſſion it had made went off alſo. I had no more Senſe of God, or his Judgment, much leſs of the preſent Affliction of my Circumſtances being from his Hand, than if I had been in the moſt proſperous Condition of Life.

But now when I began to be ſick, and a leiſurely View of the Miſeries of Death came to place itſelf before me; when my Spirits began to ſink under the Burden of a ſtrong Diſtemper, and Nature was exhauſted with the Violence of the Fever; Conſcience, that had ſlept ſo long, began to awake, and I began to reproach myſelf with my paſt Life, in which I had ſo evidently, by uncommon Wickedneſs, provok'd the Juſtice of God to lay me under uncommon Strokes, and to deal with me in ſo vindictive a Manner.

Theſe Reflections oppreſs'd me from the ſecond or third Day of my Diſtemper, and in a Violence, as well of the Fever as of the dreadful Reproaches of my Conſcience, extorted ſome Words from me, like praying to God, tho' I cannot ſay they were either a Prayer attended with Deſires, or with Hopes; it was rather the Voice of mere Fright and Diſtreſs; my Thoughts were confus'd, the Convictions great upon my Mind, and the Horror of dying in ſuch a miſerable Condition, rais'd Vapours into my Head with the mere Apprehenſions; and, in theſe Hurries of my Soul, I knew not what my Tongue might expreſs: But it was rather Exclamation, ſuch as, Lord! what a miſerable Creature am I! If I ſhould be ſick, I ſhall certainly die for want of Help, and what will become of me! Then the Tears burſt out of my Eyes, and I could ſay no more a good while.

In this Interval, the good Advice of my Father came to my Mind, and preſently his Prediction, which I mentioned in the Beginning of this Story; viz. *That if I did take this fooliſh Step, God would not bleſs me*, and I would

have

have Leiſure hereafter to reflect upon having neglected his Counſel, when there might be none to aſſiſt me in my Recovery. Now, ſaid I aloud, my dear Father's Words are come to paſs: God's Juſtice has overtaken me, and I have none to help or hear me: I rejected the Voice of Providence, which had mercifully put me in a Poſture or Station of Life wherein I might have been happy and eaſy; but I would neither ſee it myſelf, nor learn to know the Bleſſing of it from my Parents; I left them to mourn over my Folly, and now I am left to mourn under the Conſequences of it: I refuſed their Help and Aſſiſtance, who would have lifted me into the World, and would have made every thing eaſy to me; and now I have Difficulties to ſtruggle with, too great for even Nature itſelf to ſupport, and no Aſſiſtance, no Help, no Comfort, no Advice. Then I cried out, *Lord, be my Help, for I am in great Diſtreſs.*

This was the firſt Prayer, if I might call it ſo, that I had made for many Years. But I return to my Journal.

June 28. Having been ſomewhat refreſhed with the Sleep I had had, and the Fit being intirely off, I got up; and tho' the Fright and Terror of my Dream was very great, yet I conſider'd, that the Fit of the Ague would return again the next Day, and now was my Time to get ſomething to refreſh and ſupport myſelf when I ſhould be ill; and the firſt Thing I did, I fill'd a large ſquare Caſe Bottle with Water, and ſet it upon my Table, in Reach of my Bed; and to take off the Chill or aguiſh Diſpoſition of the Water, I put about a Quarter of a Pint of Rum into it, and mixed them together; then I got me a Piece of the Goat's Fleſh, and broil'd it on the Coals, but could eat very little; I walked about, but was very weak, and withal, very ſad and heavy-hearted in the Senſe of my miſerable Condition, dreading the Return of my Diſtemper the next Day; at Night I made my Supper of three of the Turtle's Eggs, which I roaſted in the Aſhes, and eat, as we call it, in the Shell; and this was the firſt Bit of Meat I had ever aſk'd God's Bleſſing to, even, as I could remember, in my whole Life.

After I had eaten, I try'd to walk; but found myſelf ſo weak, that I could hardly carry the Gun (for I never went out

out without that;) ſo I went out but a little Way, and ſat down upon the Ground, looking out upon the Sea, which was juſt before me, and very calm and ſmooth. As I ſat here, ſome Thoughts, ſuch as theſe, occurred to me.

What is the Earth and Sea, of which I have ſeen ſo much? Whence is it produc'd? And what am I, and all the other Creatures, wild and tame, human and brutal, whence are we?

Sure we are all made by ſome ſecret Power, who form'd the Earth and Sea, the Air and Sky; and who is that?

Then it follow'd, moſt naturally; It is God that has made it all: Well, but then it came on ſtrongly; if God has made all theſe things, he guides and governs them all, and all things that concern them; for the Being that could make all things, muſt certainly have Power to guide and direct them.

If ſo, nothing can happen in the great Circuit of his Works, either without his Knowledge or Appointment.

And if nothing happens without his Knowledge, he knows that I am here, and am in this dreadful Condition; and if nothing happens without his Appointment, he has appointed all this to befal me.

Nothing occurred to my Thoughts to contradict any of theſe Concluſions; and therefore it reſted upon me with the greater Force, that it muſt needs be, that God had appointed all this to befal me; that I was brought to this miſerable Circumſtance by his Direction, he having the ſole Power, not of me only, but of every thing that happen'd in the World. Immediately it followed.

Why has God done this to me? What have I done to be thus uſed?

My Conſcience preſently check'd me in that Inquiry, as if I had blaſphemed; and methought it ſpoke to me like a Voice; *WRETCH! doſt thou aſk what thou haſt done?* Look back upon a dreadful miſ-ſpent Life, and aſk thyſelf *what thou haſt not done:* Aſk, Why is it *that thou wert not long ago deſtroy'd?* Why *wert thou not drown'd in* Yarmouth Roads? *Killed in the Fight when the Ship was taken by the* Sallee Man of War? *Devoured by the wild*

Beaſts

be Coaſt of Africa? Or, *drown'd HERE, when few periſh'd but thyſelf?* Doſt thou aſk, *What have*

s ſtruck dumb with theſe Reflections as one aſto-, and had not a Word to ſay, no, not to anſwer to myſelf; but roſe up penſive and ſad, walk'd back to my Retreat, and went up over my Wall, as if I had been going to Bed; but my Thoughts were ſadly diſturb'd, and I had no Inclination to ſleep; ſo I ſat down in my Chair, and lighted my Lamp, for it began to be dark. Now, as the Apprehenſions of the Return of my Diſtemper terrify'd me very much, it occurr'd to my Thought, that the *Braſilians* take no Phyſic but their Tobacco, for almoſt all Diſtempers; and I had a Piece of a Roll of Tobacco in one of the Cheſts, which was quite cured, and ſome alſo that was green, and not quite cured.

I went, directed by Heaven, no doubt! for in this Cheſt I found a Cure both for Soul and Body; I opened the Cheſt, and found what I look'd for, *viz.* the Tobacco; and as the few Books I had ſav'd lay there too, I took out one of the Bibles which I mentioned before, and which, to this Time, I had not found Leiſure, or ſo much as Inclination, to look into; I ſay I took it out, and brought both that and the Tobacco with me to the Table.

What Uſe to make of the Tobacco I knew not, as to my Diſtemper, or whether it was good for it or no; but I try'd ſeveral Experiments with it, as if I was reſolv'd it ſhould hit one way or other: I firſt took a Piece of a Leaf, and chew'd it in my Mouth, which indeed at firſt almoſt ſtupefy'd my Brain, the Tobacco being green and ſtrong, and that I had not been much us'd to it; then I took ſome, and ſteep'd it an Hour or two in Rum, and reſolv'd to take a Doſe of it when I lay down; and laſtly, I burnt ſome upon a Pan of Coals, and held my Noſe cloſe over the Smoke of it, as long as I could bear it, as well for the Heat as the Virtue of it, and I held it almoſt to Suffocation.

In the Interval of this Operation I took up the Bible, and began to read; but my Head was too much diſturbed with the Tobacco to bear Reading, at leaſt at that Time; only having open'd the Book caſually, the firſt Words

Words that occurred to me were theſe, *Call on me in the Day of Trouble, and I will deliver, and thou ſhalt glorify me:*

The Words were very apt to my Caſe, and made ſome Impreſſion upon my Thoughts at the Time of reading them, tho' not ſo much as they did afterwards; for as for being delivered, the Word had no Sound, *as I may ſay*, to me; the Thing was ſo remote, ſo impoſſible in my Apprehenſion of Things, that I began to ſay as the Children of *Iſrael* did, when they were promiſed Fleſh to eat, *Can God ſpread a Table in the Wilderneſs?* So I began to ſay, Can God himſelf deliver me from this Place? And as it was not for many Years that any Hope appeared, this prevailed very often upon my Thoughts: But however, the Words made a very great Impreſſion upon me, and I muſed upon them very often. It grew now late, and the Tobacco had, as I ſaid, dozed my Head ſo much, that I inclined to ſleep; ſo I left my Lamp burning in the Cave, leſt I ſhould want any thing in the Night, and went to Bed; but before I lay down, I did what I never had done in all my Life, I kneeled down and prayed to God to fulfil the Promiſe to me, that if I called upon him in the Day of Trouble, he would deliver me: After my broken and imperfect Prayer was over, I drank the Rum in which I had ſteeped the Tobacco, which was ſo ſtrong and rank of the Tobacco, that indeed I could ſcarce get it down. Immediately upon this I went to Bed, and I found preſently it flew up into my Head violently; but I fell into a ſound Sleep, and waked no more, till by the Sun it muſt neceſſarily be near Three o'Clock in the Afternoon the next Day; nay, to this Hour I am partly of the Opinion, that I ſlept all the next Day and Night, and till almoſt Three the Day after; for otherwiſe I knew not how I ſhould loſe a Day out of my Reckoning in the Days of the Week, as it appeared ſome Years after I had done; for if I had loſt it by croſſing and re-croſſing the Line, I ſhould have loſt more than a Day; but in my Account, it was loſt, and I never knew which way.

Be that however one way or other, when I awaked, I found myſelf exceedingly refreſhed, and my Spirits lively and chearful; when I got up, I was ſtronger than I was the Day before, and my Stomach better; for I

was

was hungry; and, in ſhort, I had no Fit the next Day, but continued much altered for the better: This was the 29th.

The 30th was my well Day of courſe, and I went abroad with my Gun, but did not care to travel too far: I kill'd a Sea-Fowl or two, ſomething like a Brand Gooſe, and brought them home, but was not very forward to eat them; ſo I eat ſome more of the Turtle's Eggs, which were very good: This Evening I renewed the Medicine which I had ſuppoſed did me good the Day before, *viz.* the Tobacco ſteeped in Rum; only I did not take ſo much as before, nor did I chew any of the Leaf, or hold my Head over the Smoke; however, I was not ſo well the next Day, which was the 1ſt of *July*, as I hoped I ſhould have been; for I had a little Spice of the cold Fit, but it was not much.

July 2. I renewed the Medicine all the three ways, and dozed myſelf with it as at firſt, and doubled the Quantity which I drank.

July 3. I miſs'd the Fit for good and all, though I did not recover my full Strength for ſome Weeks after. While I was thus gathering Strength, my Thoughts ran exceedingly upon this Scripture, *I will deliver thee*; and the Impoſſibility of my Deliverance lay much upon my Mind, in Bar of my ever expecting it: But as I was diſcouraging myſelf with ſuch Thoughts, it occur'd to my Mind, that I pored ſo much upon my Deliverance from the main Affliction, that I diſregarded the Deliverance I had received; and I was, as it were, made to aſk myſelf ſuch Queſtions as theſe; *viz.* Have I not been delivered, and wonderfully too, from Sickneſs? From the moſt diſtreſs'd Condition that could be, and that was ſo frightful to me? And what Notice had I taken of it? Had I done my Part? *God had delivered me:* But *I had not glorified him:* That is to ſay, I had not own'd and been thankful for that as a Deliverance; and how could I expect greater Deliverance?

This touched my Heart very much, and immediately I kneeled down, and gave God Thanks aloud, for my Recovery from my Sickneſs.

July 4. In the Morning I took the Bible; and, beginning at the New Teſtament, I began ſeriouſly to read it,

it, and impoſed upon myſelf to read a while every Morning and every Night, not tying myſelf to the Numbers of Chapters, but as long as my Thoughts ſhould engage me: It was not long after I ſet ſeriouſly to this Work, but I found my Heart more deeply and ſincerely affected with the Wickedneſs of my paſt Life: The Impreſſion of my Dream reviv'd, and the Words, *All theſe things have not brought thee to Repentance*, ran ſeriouſly in my Thoughts: I was earneſtly begging of God to give me Repentance, when it happen'd providentially the very Day, that, reading the Scripture, I came to theſe Words, *He is exalted a Prince, and a Saviour, to give Repentance, and to give Remiſſion:* I threw down the Book, and with my Heart as well as my Hand lifted up to Heaven, in a kind of Exſtaſy of Joy, I cried out aloud, *Jeſus, thou Son of* David, *Jeſus, thou exalted Prince and Saviour, give me Repentance!*

This was the firſt time that I could ſay in the true Senſe of the Words, that I prayed in all my Life; for now I prayed with a Senſe of my Condition, and with a true Scripture View of Hope, founded on the Encouragement of the Word of God; and from this time, I may ſay, I began to have Hope, that God would hear me.

Now I began to conſtrue the Words mentioned above, *Call on me, and I will deliver thee*, in a different Senſe from what I had ever done before; for then I had no Notion of any thing being called Deliverance, but my being delivered from the Captivity I was in; for though I was indeed at large in the Place, yet the Iſland was certainly a Priſon to me, and that in the worſt Senſe in the World; but now I learned to take it in another Senſe. Now I look'd back upon my paſt Life with ſuch Horror, and my Sins appeared ſo dreadful, that my Soul ſought nothing of God, but Deliverance from the Load of Guilt that bore down all my Comfort. As for my ſolitary Life, it was nothing; I did not ſo much as pray to be delivered from it, or think of it; it was all of no Conſideration in Compariſon of this; and I added this Part here, to hint to whoever ſhall read it, that whenever they come to a true Senſe of things, they will find Deliverance from Sin a much greater Bleſſing, than Deliverance from Affliction.

But,

[illegible]

[illegible] Island rose to [illegible] Condition [illegible] and I firmly [illegible] upon [illegible] as I [illegible] Island. I had a great Desire to [illegible] I might find, which yet I knew [illegible]

In the 19th of *July* that I began to take a more particular Survey of the Island itself; I went up the Creek

Creek firſt, where, as I hinted, I brought my Rafts on Shore. I found, after I came about two Miles up, that the Tide did not flow any higher, and that it was no more than a little Brook of running Water, and very freſh and good; but this being the dry Seaſon, there was hardly any Water in ſome Parts of it, at leaſt not enough to run into any Stream, ſo as it could be perceived.

On the Bank of this Brook I found many pleaſant *Savanna*'s of Meadows plain, ſmooth, and covered with Graſs; and on the riſing Parts of them next to the higher Grounds, where the Water, as it might be ſuppoſed, never overflowed, I found a great deal of Tobacco, green, and growing to a great and very ſtrong Stalk: There were divers other Plants which I had no Notion of, or Underſtanding about; and might perhaps have Virtues of their own, which I could not find out.

I ſearched for the *Caſſava* Root, which the *Indians* in all that Climate make their Bread of, but I could find none. I ſaw large Plants of Aloes, but did not then underſtand them: I ſaw ſeveral Sugar-canes, but wild, and, for want of Cultivation, imperfect. I contented myſelf with theſe Diſcoveries for this time, and came back muſing with myſelf what Courſe I might take to know the Virtue and Goodneſs of any of the Fruits or Plants which I ſhould diſcover, but could bring it to no Concluſion; for, in ſhort, I had made ſo little Obſervation while I was in the *Braſils*, that I knew little of the Plants of the Field, at leaſt very little that might ſerve me to any Purpoſe now in my Diſtreſs.

The next Day, the 16th, I went up the ſame Way again; and, after going ſomething farther than I had gone the Day before, I found the Brook and the *Savanna*'s began to ceaſe, and the Country became more woody than before. In this Part I found different Fruits, and particularly I found Melons upon the Ground in great Abundance, and Grapes upon the Trees; the Vines had ſpread indeed over the Trees, and the Cluſters of Grapes were juſt now in their Prime, very ripe and rich. This was a ſurpriſing Diſcovery, and I was exceeding glad of them; but I was warned by my

my Experience to eat ſparingly of them, remembering, that when I was aſhore in *Barbary*, the eating of Grapes killed ſeveral of our *Engliſhmen* who were Slaves there, by throwing them into Fluxes and Fevers: But I found an excellent Uſe for theſe Grapes, and that was to cure or dry them in the Sun, and keep them as dry'd Grapes or Raiſins are kept, which I thought would be, as indeed they were, as wholſome, and as agreeable to eat, when no Grapes might be had.

I ſpent all that Evening there, and went not back to my Habitation, which by the way was the firſt Night, as I might ſay, I had lain from home. In the Night I took my firſt Contrivance, and got up into a Tree, where I ſlept well, and the next Morning proceeded upon my Diſcovery, traveling near four Miles, as I might judge by the Length of the Valley, keeping ſtill due North, with a Ridge of Hills on the South and North Side of me.

At the End of this March I came to an Opening, where the Country ſeem'd to deſcend to the Weſt; and a little Spring of freſh Water, which iſſued out of the Side of the Hill by me, ran the other Way, that is, due Eaſt; and the Country appeared ſo freſh, ſo green, ſo flouriſhing, every thing being in a conſtant Verdure or Flouriſh of Spring, that it look'd like a planted Garden.

I deſcended a little on the Side of that delicious Valley, ſurveying it with a ſecret kind of Pleaſure (though mix'd with other afflicting Thoughts) to think that this was all my own, that I was King and Lord of all this Country indefeaſibly, and had a Right of Poſſeſſion; and if I could convey it, I might have it in Inheritance, as completely as any Lord of a Manor in *England*. I ſaw here abundance of Cocoa-trees, Orange and Lemon, and Citron-trees; but all wild, and few bearing any Fruit; at leaſt, not then: However, the green Limes that I gathered, were not only pleaſant to eat, but very wholeſome; and I mixed their Juice afterwards with Water, which made it very wholeſome, and very cool and refreſhing.

I found now I had Buſineſs enough, to gather and carry home; and reſolv'd to lay up a Store, as well of Grapes as Limes and Lemons, to furniſh myſelf for the wet Seaſon, which I knew was approaching.

In

In order to do this, I gathered a great Heap of Grapes in one Place, and a leſſer Heap in another Place, and a great Parcel of Limes and Lemons in another Place; and taking a few of each with me, I travelled homeward, and reſolved to come again, and bring a Bag or Sack, or what I could make, to carry the reſt home.

Accordingly, having ſpent three Days in this Journey, I came home (ſo I muſt now call my Tent, and my Cave;) but before I got thither, the Grapes were ſpoil'd; the Richneſs of the Fruit, and the Weight of the Juice, having broken them, and bruiſed them, they were good for little or nothing; as to the Limes, they were good, but I could bring but a few.

The next Day, being the 19th, I went back, having made me two ſmall Bags to bring home my Harveſt: But I was ſurpriſed, when coming to my Heap of Grapes, which were ſo rich and fine when I gathered them, I found them all ſpread abroad, trod to Pieces, and dragged about, ſome here, ſome there, and abundance eaten and devoured: By this I concluded there were ſome wild Creatures thereabouts, which had done this; but what they were, I knew not.

However, as I found there was no laying them up on Heaps, and no carrying them away in a Sack, but that one way they would be deſtroyed, and the other way they would be cruſh'd with their own Weight, I took another Courſe; for I gathered a large Quantity of the Grapes, and hung them upon the Out-branches of the Trees, that they might cure and dry in the Sun; and as for the Limes and Lemons, I carried as many back as I could well ſtand under.

When I came home from this Journey, I contemplated with great Pleaſure the Fruitfulneſs of that Valley, and the Pleaſantneſs of the Situation, the Security from Storms on that Side of the Water, and the Wood; and concluded that I had pitched upon a Place to fix my Abode, which was by far the worſt Part of the Country. Upon the Whole, I began to conſider of removing my Habitation, and to look out for a Place equally ſafe, as where I now was ſituate, if poſſible, in that pleaſant fruitful Part of the Iſland.

This Thought run long in my Head, and I was exceeding fond of it for ſome time, the Pleaſantneſs of the

Place tempting me; but when I came to a nearer View of it, and to conſider that I was now by the Sea-ſide, where it was at leaſt poſſible, that ſomething might happen to my Advantage, and that the ſame ill Fate that brought me hither, might bring ſome other unhappy Wretches to the ſame Place; and though it was ſcarce probable, that any ſuch thing ſhould ever happen, yet to incloſe myſelf among the Hills and Woods, in the Centre of the Iſland, was to anticipate my Bondage, and to render ſuch an Affair not only improbable, but impoſſible; and that therefore I ought not by any means to remove.

However, I was ſo enamoured with this Place, that I ſpent much of my Time there for the whole remaining Part of the Month of *July*; and though, upon ſecond Thoughts I reſolved as above, not to remove; yet I built me a little kind of a Bower, and ſurrounded it at a Diſtance with a ſtrong Fence, being a double Hedge, as high as I could reach, well ſtak'd and filled between with Bruſhwood; and here I lay very ſecure, ſometimes two or three Nights together, always going over it with a Ladder, as before; ſo that I fanſy'd now I had my Country-Houſe, and my Sea-coaſt Houſe: And this Work took me up the Beginning of *Auguſt*.

I had but newly finiſhed my Fence, and began to enjoy my Labour, but the Rains came on, and made me ſtick cloſe to my firſt Habitation; for though I had made me a Tent like the other, with a Piece of a Sail, and ſpread it very well, yet I had not the Shelter of an Hill to keep me from Storms, nor a Cave behind me to retreat into when the Rains were extraordinary.

About the Beginning of *Auguſt*, *as I ſaid*, I had finiſh'd my Bower, and began to enjoy myſelf. The third of *Auguſt*, I found the Grapes I had hung up were perfectly dried, and indeed were excellent good Raiſins of the Sun; ſo I began to take them down from the Trees, and it was very happy that I did ſo; for the Rains which followed would have ſpoiled them, and I had loſt the beſt Part of my Winter Food; for I had above two hundred large Bunches of them. No ſooner had I taken them all down, and carried moſt of them home to my Cave, but it began to rain; and from thence, which was the fourteenth of *Auguſt*, it rained more or

leſs

leſs every Day, till the middle of *October*; and ſometimes ſo violently, that I could not ſtir out of my Cave for ſeveral Days.

In this Seaſon I was much ſurpriſed with the Increaſe of my Family: I had been concerned for the Loſs of one of my Cats, who ran away from me, or, as I thought, had been dead; and I heard no more Tale or Tidings of her, till to my Aſtoniſhment ſhe came home about the End of *Auguſt*, with three Kittens. This was the more ſtrange to me, becauſe tho' I had kill'd a wild Cat, as I called it, with my Gun, yet I thought it was a quite different Kind from our *European* Cats; yet the young Cats were the ſame kind of Houſe-breed like the old one; and both my Cats being Females, I thought it very ſtrange: But from theſe three Cats, I afterwards came to be ſo peſtered with Cats, that I was forced to kill them like Vermin, or wild Beaſts, and to drive them from my Houſe as much as poſſible.

From the fourteenth of *Auguſt* to the twenty-ſixth, inceſſant Rain, ſo that I could not ſtir, and was now very careful not to be much wet. In this Confinement I began to be ſtreightened for Food; but venturing out twice, I one Day killed a Goat; and the laſt Day, which was the twenty ſixth, found a very large Tortoiſe, which was a Treat to me, and my Food was regulated thus: I eat a Bunch of Raiſins for my Breakfaſt, a Piece of the Goat's Fleſh, or of the Turtle, for my Dinner, broiled (for to my great Misfortune I had no Veſſel to boil or ſtew any thing;) and two or three of the Turtle's Eggs for Supper.

During this Confinement in my Cover by the Rain, I worked daily two or three Hours at inlarging my Cave; and, by degrees, worked it on towards one Side, till I came to the Outſide of the Hill, and made a Door or Way out, which came beyond my Fence or Wall; and ſo I came in and out this way: But I was not perfectly eaſy at lying ſo open; for as I had managed myſelf before, I was in a perfect Incloſure, whereas now I thought I lay expoſed; and yet I could not perceive, that there was any living thing to fear, the biggeſt Creature that I had yet ſeen upon the Iſland being a Goat.

September the thirtieth, I was now come to the unhappy Anniverſary of my *Landing*: I caſt up the Notches on

my Poſt, and found I had been on Shore three hundred and ſixty-five Days. I kept this Day as a ſolemn Faſt, ſetting it apart to a religious Exerciſe, proſtrating myſelf to the Ground with the moſt ſerious Humiliation, confeſſing myſelf to God, acknowledging his righteous Judgment upon me, and praying to him to have Mercy on me, through Jeſus Chriſt; and having not taſted the leaſt Refreſhment for twelve Hours, even till the going down of the Sun, I then eat a Biſcuit-cake, and a Bunch of Grapes, and went to Bed, finiſhing the Day as I began it.

I had all this Time obſerved no Sabbath-day; for as at firſt I had no Senſe of Religion upon my Mind, I had after ſome time omitted to diſtinguiſh the Weeks, by making a longer Notch than ordinary for the Sabbath-day, and ſo did not really know what any of the Days were; but now having caſt up the Days as above, I found I had been there a Year; ſo I divided it into Weeks, and ſet apart every ſeventh Day for a Sabbath; tho' I found at the End of my Account I had loſt a Day or two in my Reckoning.

A little after this, my Ink began to fail me, and ſo I contented myſelf to uſe it more ſparingly, and to write down only the moſt remarkable Events of my Life, without continuing a daily *Memorandum* of other Things.

The rainy Seaſon, and the dry Seaſon, began now to appear regular to me, and I learn'd to divide them ſo as to provide for them accordingly. But I bought all my Experience before I had it; and this I am going to relate, was one of the moſt diſcouraging Experiments that I made at all. I have mentioned, that I had ſaved the few Ears of Barley and Rice which I had ſo ſurpriſingly found ſpring up, as I thought, of themſelves, and believe there were about thirty Stalks of Rice, and about twenty of Barley; and now I thought it a proper Time to ſow it after the Rains, the Sun being in its Southern Poſition going from me.

Accordingly I dug up a Piece of Ground, as well as I could, with my wooden Spade, and dividing it into two Parts, I ſowed my Grain: but as I was ſowing, it caſually occurred to my Thoughts, that I would not ſow it all at firſt, becauſe I did not know when was the proper Time for it; ſo I ſowed about Two-thirds of the Seeds, leaving about an Handful of each.

It

It was a great Comfort to me afterwards, that I did ſo, for not one Grain of that I ſowed this time came to any thing; for the dry Months following, the Earth having had no Rain after the Seed was ſown, it had no Moiſture to aſſiſt its Growth, and never came up at all, till the wet Seaſon had come again, and then it grew as if it had been newly ſown.

Finding my firſt Seed did not grow, which I eaſily imagined was by the Drought, I ſought for a moiſter Piece of Ground to make another Trial in; and I dug up a Piece of Ground near my new Bower, and ſowed the reſt of my Seed in *February*, a little before the *Vernal Equinox*; and this, having the rainy Months of *March* and *April* to water it, ſprung up very pleaſantly, and yielded a very good Crop; but having Part of the Seed left only, and not daring to ſow all that I had yet, I had but a ſmall Quantity at laſt, my whole Crop not amounting to above half a Peck of each kind.

But by this Experiment I was made Maſter of my Buſineſs, and knew exactly when the proper Seaſon was to ſow; and that I might expect two Seed-times, and two Harveſts, every Year.

While this Corn was growing, I made a little Diſcovery, which was of Uſe to me afterwards: As ſoon as the Rains were over, and the Weather began to ſettle, which was about the Month of *November*, I made a Viſit up the Country to my Bower, where, tho' I had not been ſome Months, yet I found all Things juſt as I left them. The Circle or double Hedge that I had made, was not only firm and intire, but the Stakes which I had cut off of ſome Trees that grew thereabouts, were all ſhot out, and grown with long Branches, as much as a Willow-tree uſually ſhoots the firſt Year after lopping its Head. I could not tell what Tree to call it, that theſe Stakes were cut from. I was ſurpriſed, and yet very well pleaſed, to ſee the young Trees grow; and I pruned them, and led them up to grow as much alike as I could; and it is ſcarce credible, how beautiful a Figure they grew into in three Years; ſo that tho' the Hedge made a Circle of about twenty-five Yards in Diameter, yet the Trees, for ſuch I might now call them, ſoon cover'd it; and it was a complete Shade, ſufficient to lodge under all the dry Seaſon.

This made me resolve to cut some more Stakes, and make me an Hedge like this in a Semicircle round my Wall, I mean that of my first Dwelling, which I did; and, placing the Trees or Stakes in a double Row, at about eight Yards Distance from my first Fence, they grew presently, and were at first a fine Cover to my Habitation, and afterwards served for a Defence also, as I shall observe in its Order.

I found now, that the Seasons of the Year might generally be divided, not into *Summer* and *Winter*, as in *Europe*; but into the rainy Seasons, and the dry Seasons, which were generally thus:

Half *February*, *March*, Half *April*,	Rainy, the Sun being then on, or near, the *Equinox*.
Half *April*, *May*, *June*, *July*, Half *August*,	Dry, the *Sun* being then to the *North* of the Line.
Half *August*, *September*, Half *October*,	Rain, the *Sun* being then come back.
Half *October*, *November*, *December*, *January*, Half *February*,	Dry, the *Sun* being then to the *South* of the Line.

The rainy Season sometimes held longer or shorter, as the Winds happened to blow; but this was the general Observation I made. After I had found, by Experience, the ill Consequence of being abroad in the Rain, I took care to furnish myself with Provision beforehand, that I might not be obliged to go out; and I sat within-doors as much as possible during the wet Months.

In this Time I found much Employment (and very suitable also to the Time) for I found great Occasion of many things which I had no way to furnish myself with, but by hard Labour, and constant Application; particularly, I tried many Ways to make myself

a

a Baſket; but all the Twigs I could get for the Purpoſe prov'd ſo brittle, that they would do nothing. It prov'd of excellent Advantage to me now, that when I was a Boy, I uſed to take great Delight in ſtanding at a *Baſket-maker*'s in the Town where my Father lived, to ſee them make their *Wicker-ware*; and being, as Boys uſually are, very officious to help, and a great Obſerver of the Manner how they worked thoſe things, and ſometimes lent an Hand, I had by this means ſo full Knowledge of the Methods of it, that I wanted nothing but the Materials; when it came into my Mind, that the Twigs of that Tree from whence I cut my Stakes that grew, might poſſibly be as tough as the *Sallows* and *Willows*, and *Oſiers*, in *England*; and I reſolved to try.

Accordingly the next Day I went to my Country-Houſe, as I called it, and cutting ſome of the ſmaller Twigs, I found them to my Purpoſe as much as I could deſire; whereupon I came the next time prepared with an Hatchet to cut down a Quantity, which I ſoon found, for there was a great Plenty of them: Theſe I ſet up to dry within my Circle or Hedges; and when they were fit for Uſe, I carried them to my Cave; and here during the next Seaſon I employed myſelf in making, as well as I could, a great many Baſkets, both to carry Earth, or to carry or lay up any thing, as I had Occaſion; and though I did not finiſh them very handſomely, yet I made them ſufficiently ſerviceable for my Purpoſe; and thus afterwards I took care never to be without them; and as my *Wicker-ware* decayed, I made more; eſpecially I made ſtrong deep Baſkets to place my Corn in, inſtead of Sacks, when I ſhould come to have any Quantity of it.

Having maſtered this Difficulty, and employed a World of Time about it, I beſtirred myſelf to ſee, if poſſible, how to ſupply two Wants. I had no Veſſels to hold any thing that was liquid, except two Runlets, which were almoſt full of Rum, and ſome Glaſs Bottles, ſome of the common Size, and others which were Caſe-bottles ſquare, for the holding of Waters, Spirits, &c. I had not ſo much as a Pot to boil any thing in, except a great Kettle which I ſaved out of the Ship, and which was too big for ſuch Uſes as I deſired it for, viz. to

make Broth, and ſtew a Bit of Meat by itſelf. The ſecond thing I would fain have had, was a Tobacco pipe, but it was impoſſible for me to make one; however, I found a Contrivance for that too at laſt.

I employed myſelf in planting my ſecond Rows of Stakes of Piles, and in this Wicker-work, all the Summer, or dry Seaſon, when another Buſineſs took me up more time than it could be imagin'd I could ſpare.

I mentioned before, that I had a great Mind to ſee the whole Iſland, and that I had travelled up the Brook, and ſo on to where I built my Bower, and where I had an Opening quite to the Sea, on the other Side of the Iſland: I now reſolved to travel quite croſs to the Sea-ſhore on that Side: So taking my Gun, an Hatchet, and my Dog, and a larger Quantity of Powder and Shot than uſual, with two Biſcuit-cakes, and a great Bunch of Raiſins in my Pouch, for my Store, I began my Journey. When I had paſs'd the Vale where my Bower ſtood, as above, I came within View of the Sea, to the *Weſt*; and it being a very clear Day, I fairly deſcried Land, whether an Iſland or Continent, I could not tell; but it lay very high, extending from the *Weſt*, to the *W. S. W.* at a very great Diſtance; by my Gueſs it could not be leſs than fifteen or twenty Leagues off.

I could not tell what Part of the World this might be, otherwiſe than that I knew it muſt be Part of *America*; and, as I concluded by all my Obſervations, muſt be near the *Spaniſh* Dominions, and perhaps was all inhabited by Savages, where if I ſhould have landed, I had been in a worſe Condition than I was now; and therefore I acquieſced in the Diſpoſitions of Providence, which I began now to own, and to believe, ordered every thing for the beſt; I ſay, I quieted my Mind with this, and left afflicting myſelf with fruitleſs Wiſhes of being there.

Beſides, after ſome Pauſe upon this Affair, I conſidered, that if this Land was the *Spaniſh* Coaſt, I ſhould certainly, one time or other, ſee ſome Veſſels paſs or repaſs one Way or other; but if not, then it was the *Savage* Coaſt between the *Spaniſh* Country and *Braſil*, which were indeed the worſt of *Savages*; for they are Canibals, or Men-eaters, and fail not to murder and devour all the human Bodies that fall into their Hands.

With

With theſe Conſiderations I walked very leiſurely forward. I found that Side of the Iſland where I now was, much pleaſanter than mine, the open or *Savanna* Fields ſweet, adorned with Flowers and Graſs, and full of very fine Woods. I ſaw abundance of Parrots, and fain would I have caught one, if poſſible, to have kept it to be tame, and taught it to ſpeak to me. I did, after ſome Pains-taking, catch a young Parrot; for I knock'd it down with a Stick, and having recovered it, I brought it home, but it was ſome Years before I could make him ſpeak. However, at laſt I taught him to call me by my Name very familiarly: But the Accident that followed, tho' it be a Trifle, will be very diverting in its Place.

I was exceedingly diverted with this Journey: I found in the low Grounds, Hares, as I thought them to be, and Foxes, but they differed greatly from all the other Kinds I had met with; nor could I ſatisfy myſelf to eat them, tho' I killed ſeveral: But I had no need to be venturous; for I had no want of Food, and of that which was very good too; eſpecially theſe three Sorts, *viz.* Goats, Pigeons, and Turtle or Tortoiſe; which, added to my Grapes, *Leaden-hall Market* could not have furniſhed a Table better than I, in proportion to the Company: And tho' my Caſe was deplorable enough, yet I had great Cauſe for Thankfulneſs, that I was not driven to any Extremities for Food; but rather Plenty, even to Dainties.

I never travelled in this Journey above two Miles outright in a Day, or thereabouts; but I took ſo many Turns and Returns to ſee what Diſcoveries I could make, that I came weary enough to the Place where I reſolved to ſit down for all Night; and then either repoſed myſelf in a Tree, or ſurrounded myſelf with a Row of Stakes ſet upright in the Ground, either from one Tree to another, or ſo as no wild Creature could come at me, without waking me.

As ſoon as I came to the Sea-ſhore, I was ſurpriſed to ſee that I had taken up my Lot on the worſt Side of the Iſland; for here indeed the Shore was covered with innumerable Turtles, whereas on the other Side I had found but three in a Year and an half. Here was alſo an infinite Number of Fowls of many Kinds, ſome of which I had not ſeen before, and many of them very good

Meat; but ſuch as I knew not the Names of, except thoſe called *Penguins*.

I could have ſhot as many as I pleaſed, but was very ſparing of my Powder and Shot; and therefore had more Mind to kill a She-goat, if I could, which I could better feed on: And tho' there were many Goats here more than on the other Side of the Iſland, yet it was with much more Difficulty that I could come near them; the Country being flat and even; and they ſaw me much ſooner than when I was on the Hills.

I confeſs this Side of the Country was much pleaſanter than mine, but yet I had not the leaſt Inclination to remove; for as I was fixed in my Habitation, it became natural to me, and I ſeemed all the while I was here, to be, as it were, upon a Journey, and from home: However, I travelled along the Shore of the Sea towards the Eaſt, I ſuppoſe, about twelve Miles; and then ſetting up a great Pole upon the Shore for a Mark, I concluded I would go home again; and the next Journey I took, ſhould be on the other Side of the Iſland, Eaſt from my Dwelling, and ſo round, till I come to my Poſt again: Of which in its Place.

I took another Way to come back than that I went, thinking I could eaſily keep all the Iſland ſo much in my View, that I could not miſs finding my firſt Dwelling by viewing the Country; but I found myſelf miſtaken; for being come about two or three Miles, I found myſelf deſcended into a very large Valley; but ſo ſurrounded with Hills, and thoſe Hills covered with Woods, that I could not ſee which was my Way by any Direction but that of the Sun, nor even then, unleſs I knew very well the Poſition of the Sun at that Time of the Day.

It happened to my farther Misfortune, that the Weather proved hazy for three or four Days, while I was in this Valley; and not bei g able to ſee the Sun, I wandered about very uncomfortably, and at laſt was obliged to find out the Sea-ſide, look for my Poſt, and come back the ſame Way I went; and then by eaſy Journies I turned homeward, the Weather being exceeding hot; and my Gun, Ammunition, Hatchet, and other things, very heavy.

In this Journey my Dog ſurpriſed a young Kid, and ſeized upon it; and I running in to take hold of it, caught it, and ſav'd it alive from the Dog: I had a great Mind to bring it home, if I could; for I had often been muſing whether it might not be poſſible to get a Kid or two, and ſo raiſe a Breed of tame Goats, which might ſupply me when my Powder and Shot ſhould be ſpent.

I made a Collar to this little Creature, and with a String which I made of ſome Rope-yarn, which I always carried about me, I led him along, tho' with ſome Difficulty, till I came to my Bower, and there I incloſed him, and left him; for I was very impatient to be at home, from whence I had been abſent above a Month.

I cannot expreſs what a Satisfaction it was to me, to come into my old Hutch, and lie down in my Hammock-bed: This little wandering Journey, without a ſettled Place of Abode, had been ſo unpleaſant to me, that my own Houſe, as I called it to myſelf, was a perfect Settlement to me, compared to that; and it rendered every thing about me ſo comfortable, that I reſolved I would never go a great way from it again, while it ſhould be my Lot to ſtay on the Iſland.

I repoſed myſelf here a Week, to reſt and regale myſelf after my long Journey; during which, moſt of the Time was taken up in the weighty Affair of making a Cage for my Pol, who began now to be a mere Domeſtic, and to be mighty well acquainted with me. Then I began to think of the poor Kid, which I had pent in within my little Circle, and reſolved to go and fetch it home, or give it ſome Food; accordingly I went, and found it where I left it; for indeed it could not get out, but was almoſt ſtarved for want of Food; I went and cut Boughs of Trees and Branches of ſuch Shrubs as I could find, and threw it over, and having fed it, I ty'd it as I did before, to lead it away; but it was ſo tame with being hungry, that I had no need to have ty'd it; for it followed me like a Dog; and as I continually fed it, the Creature became ſo loving, ſo gentle, and ſo fond, that it became from that time one of my Domeſtics alſo, and would never leave me afterwards.

The rainy Seaſon of the *Autumnal Equinox* was now come, and I kept the 30th of *September* in the ſame ſo-

lemn manner as before, being the Anniverſary of my Landing on the Iſland, having now been there two Years, and no more Proſpect of being delivered than the firſt Day I came there. I ſpent the whole Day in humble and thankful Acknowledgments of the many wonderful Mercies which my ſolitary Condition was attended with, and without which it might have been infinitely more miſerable. I gave humble and hearty Thanks, that God had been pleaſed to diſcover to me, even that it was poſſible I might be more happy in this ſolitary Condition, than I ſhould have been in a Liberty of Society, and in all the Pleaſures of the World: That he could fully make up to me the Deficiencies of my ſolitary State, and the want of human Society, by his Preſence, and the Communication of his Grace to my Soul, ſupporting, comforting, and encouraging me to depend upon his Providence here, and hope for his eternal Preſence hereafter.

It was now that I began ſenſibly to feel how much more happy the Life I now led was, with all its miſerable Circumſtances, than the wicked, curſed, abominable Life I led all the paſt Part of my Days: and now having changed both my Sorrows and my Joys, my very Deſires altered, my Affections changed their Gueſt, and my Delights were perfectly new, from what they were at my coming, or indeed for the two Years paſt.

Before, as I was ſelf-denied, entering on my Morning, or Evening Sacrifice, the Anguiſh of my Soul at my Condition would break out upon me on a ſudden, and my very Heart would bleed within me, to think of the Woods, the Mountains, the Deſerts I was in; and how I was a Priſoner locked up within the eternal Bars and Bolts of the Ocean, in a deſolate Wilderneſs, without Proſpect of Deliverance: But now, after I had been brought by the moſt ſtrange Concurrence of Things to converſe more with my Maker, and to caſt myſelf wholly upon him, and depend upon his Immediate Direction, and Influences of Grace to my Soul, and Conſolation in my Mind, I was infinitely more ſatisfied with my Condition, and my Converſe with Heaven was not diſturbed with thoſe paſſionate Breakings out of Paſſion and Diſtreſs, that I uſed to be overwhelmed with. I could now very calmly proſtrate myſelf before the Lord, with a ſerious Conſciouſneſs of my being a Sinner, and a Deſire to be accepted of my Maker, and could reſt upon the Goodneſs of God, and the Merits of a Saviour, for the Pardon of my Sins, and a Portion among them that are ſanctified. Nor could I now be ſatisfied with ſuch a Prayer as I had before been uſed to, conſiſting of a few abſtracted Words, as Lord have Mercy upon me, Chriſt have Mercy upon me, and the like, without conſidering the Particulars of my Condition, and pleading them before the Lord, as the Reaſons why I deſired to be heard, and why I hoped for Mercy.

But

But now I began to excercise myself with new Thoughts; I daily read the Word of God, and apply'd all the Comforts of it to my present State. One Morning being very sad, I open'd the Bible upon these Words, *I will never, never leave thee, nor forsake thee!* Immediately it occurr'd, that these Words were to me: Why else should they be directed in such a Manner, just at the Moment when I was mourning over my Condition, as one forsaken of God and Man? Well then, said I, if God does not forsake me, of what ill Consequence can it be, or what matters it, tho' the World should all forsake me; seeing, on the other hand, if I had all the World, and should lose the Favour and Blessing of God, there would be no Comparison in the Loss?

From this Moment I began to conclude in my Mind, that it was possible for me to be more happy in this forsaken, solitary Condition, than it was probable I should have ever been in any other particular State in the World; and with this Thought I was going to give Thanks to God for bringing me to this Place.

I know not what it was, but something shock'd my Mind at that Thought, and I durst not speak the Words: How canst thou be such an Hypocrite (said I, even audibly) to pretend to be thankful for a Condition, which, however thou mayst endeavour to be contented with, thou wouldst rather pray heartily to be delivered from? So I stopp'd there; but tho' I could not say, I thank'd God for being there, yet I sincerely gave Thanks to God for opening my Eyes, by whatever afflicting Providences, to see the former Condition of my Life, and to mourn for my Wickedness, and repent. I never open'd the Bible, or shut it, but my very Soul within me blessed God for directing my Friend in *England*, without any Order of mine, to pack it up among my Goods; and for assisting me afterwards to save it out of the Wreck of the Ship.

Thus, and in this Disposition of Mind, I began my third Year; and though I have not given the Reader the Trouble of so particular an Account of my Works this Year as the first; yet in general it may be observ'd, that I was very seldom idle; having regularly divided my Time, according to the several daily Employments that were before me; such as, *First*, My Duty to God,

and

and reading the Scriptures, which I conſtantly ſet apart ſome Time for, thrice every Day. *Secondly*, The going abroad with my Gun for Food, which generally took me up three Hours in every Morning, when it did not rain. *Thirdly*, The ordering, curing, preſerving, and cooking, what I had kill'd or catch'd for my Supply; theſe took up great Part of the Day: Alſo it is to be conſider'd, that in the Middle of the Day, when the Sun was in the *Zenith*, the Violence of the Heat was too great to ſtir out; ſo that about four Hours in the Evening was all the Time I could be ſuppoſed to work in; with this Exception, that ſometimes I chang'd my Hours of Hunting and Working, and went to work in the Morning, and abroad with my Gun in the Afternoon.

To this ſhort Time allow'd for Labour, I deſire may be added the exceeding Laborioufneſs of my Work; the many Hours, which for want of Tools, want of Help, and want of Skill, every thing that I did, took up out of my Time: For Example, I was full two and forty Days making me a Board for a long Shelf, which I wanted in my Cave; whereas two Sawyers, with their Tools and Saw-Pit, would have cut ſix of them, out of the ſame Tree, in half a Day.

My Caſe was this: It was to be a large Tree which was to be cut down, becauſe my Board was to be a broad one. This Tree I was three Days a cutting down, and two more cutting off the Boughs, and reducing it to a Log, or Piece of Timber. With inexpreſſible hacking and hewing I reduc'd both the Sides of it into Chips, till it began to be light enough to move; then I turn'd it, and made one Side of it ſmooth and flat, as a Board, from End to End; then turning that Side downward, cut the other Side, till I brought the Plank to be about three Inches thick, and ſmooth on both Sides. Any one may judge the Labour of my Hands in ſuch a Piece of Work; but Labour and Patience carry'd me thro' that, and many other things: I only obſerve this in particular, to ſhew the Reaſon why ſo much of my Time went away with ſo little Work, *viz.* That what might be a little to be done with Help and Tools, was a vaſt Labour, and required a prodigious Time to do alone, and *by Hand.*

But notwithſtanding this, with Patience and Labour, I went thro' many things, and indeed every thing that my Circumſtances made neceſſary to me to do, as will appear by what follows.

I was now in the Months of *November* and *December*, expecting my Crop of Barley and Rice. The Ground I had manur'd or dug up from them was not great; for as I obſerv'd, my Seed of each was not above the Quantity of half a Peck; for I had loſt one whole Crop by ſowing in the dry Seaſon; but now my Crop promis'd very well, when on a ſudden I found I was in Danger of loſing it all again by Enemies of ſeveral Sorts, which it was ſcarce poſſible to keep from it; as firſt, the Goats, and wild Creatures which I call'd Hares, which, taſting the Sweetneſs of the Blade, lay in it Night and Day, as ſoon as it came up, and eat it ſo cloſe, that it could get no Time to ſhoot up into Stalks.

This I ſaw no Remedy for, but by making an Incloſure about it with a Hedge, which I did with a great deal of Toil; and the more, becauſe it requir'd a great deal of Speed; the Creatures daily ſpoiling my Corn. However, as my arable Land was but ſmall, ſuited to my Crop, I got it totally well fenc'd in about three Weeks time; and ſhooting ſome of the Creatures in the Day-time, I ſet my Dog to guard it in the Night, tying him up to a Stake at the Gate, where he would ſtand and bark all Night long; ſo in a little time the Enemies forſook the Place, and the Corn grew very ſtrong and well, and began to ripen apace.

But as the Beaſts ruined me before, while my Corn was in the Blade, ſo the Birds were as likely to ruin me now, when it was in the Ear; for going along by the Place to ſee how it throve, I ſaw my little Crop ſurrounded with Fowls of I know not how many Sorts, which ſtood as it were watching till I ſhould be gone. I immediately let fly among them (for I always had my Gun with me.) I had no ſooner ſhot, but there roſe up a little Cloud of Fowls, which I had not ſeen at all, from among the Corn itſelf.

This touch'd me ſenſibly; for I foreſaw, that in a few Days they would devour all my Hopes, that I ſhould be ſtarv'd, and never be able to raiſe a Crop at all; and what to do I could not tell: However, I reſolv'd not to

oſe my Corn, if poſſible, tho' I ſhould watch it Night and Day. In the firſt Place, I went among it to ſee what Damage was already done, and found they had ſpoil'd a good deal of it; but that, as it was yet too green for them, the Loſs was not ſo great, but the Remainder was like to be a good Crop, if it could be ſav'd.

I ſtaid by it to load my Gun, and then coming away, I could eaſily ſee the Thieves ſitting upon all the Trees about me, as if they only waited till I was gone away, and the Event prov'd it to be ſo; for as I walk'd off as if I was gone, I was no ſooner out of their Sight, but they dropt down one by one into the Corn again. I was ſo provok'd, that I could not have Patience to ſtay till more came on, knowing that every Grain that they eat now, was, *as it might be ſaid*, a Peck Loaf to me in the Conſequence; but coming up to the Hedge, I fired again, and killed three of them. This was what I wiſh'd for; ſo I took them up, and ſerv'd them as we ſerve notorious Thieves in *England*, *viz.* hang'd them in Chains for a Terror to others. It is impoſſible to imagine almoſt, that this ſhould have ſuch an Effect as it had; for the Fowls would not only not come at the Corn, but in ſhort they forſook all that Part of the Iſland, and I could never ſee a Bird near the Place as long as my Scarecrows hung there.

This I was very glad of, you may be ſure; and about the latter End of *December*, which was our ſecond Harveſt of the Year, I reaped my Crop.

I was ſadly put to it for a Scythe or a Sickle to cut it down, and all I could do was to make one as well as I could out of one of the broad Swords, or Cutlaſſes, which I ſav'd among the Arms out of the Ship. However, as my Crop was but ſmall, I had no great Difficulty to cut it down: In ſhort, I reap'd it my Way, for I cut nothing off but the Ears, and carry'd it away in a great Baſket which I had made, and ſo rubb'd it out with my Hands: And at the End of all my Harveſting, I found, that out of my Half-peck of Seed, I had near two Buſhels of Rice, and above two Buſhels and an half of Barley, *that is to ſay*, by my Gueſs, for I had no Meaſure at that Time.

However, this was a great Encouragement to me; and I foreſaw, that in time it would pleaſe God to ſup-

ply

ply me with Bread: And yet here I was perplex'd again, for I neither knew how to grind or make Meal of my Corn, or indeed how to clean it, and part it; nor, if made into Meal, how to make Bread of it; and if how to make it, yet I knew not how to bake it. Theſe Things being added to my Deſire of having a good Quantity for Store, and to ſecure a conſtant Supply, I reſolv'd not to taſte any of this Crop, but to preſerve it all for Seed againſt the next Seaſon, and in the mean time to employ all my Study and Hours of working to accompliſh this great Work of providing myſelf with Corn and Bread.

It might be truly ſaid, that now I work'd for my Bread. 'Tis a little wonderful, and what I believe few People have thought much upon; *viz.* the ſtrange Multitude of little Things neceſſary in the providing, producing, curing, dreſſing, making, and finiſhing, this one Article of Bread.

I, that was reduc'd to a mere State of Nature, found this to be my daily Diſcouragement, and was made more and more ſenſible of it every Hour, even after I got the firſt Handful of Seed-corn, which, as I have ſaid, came up unexpectedly, and indeed to a Surpriſe.

Firſt, I had no Plough to turn the Earth, no Spade or Shovel to dig it. Well, this I conquer'd by making a wooden Spade, as I obſerv'd before; but this did my Work but in a wooden Manner; and tho' it coſt me a great many Days to make it, yet for want of Iron, it not only wore out the ſooner, but made my Work the harder, and made it be perform'd much worſe.

However, this I bore with too, and was content to work it out with Patience, and bear with the Badneſs of the Performance. When the Corn was ſow'd, I had no Harrow, but was forc'd to go over it myſelf, and drag a great heavy Bough of a Tree over it, to ſcratch the Earth, as it may be call'd, rather than rake or harrow it.

When it was growing or grown, I have obſerv'd already how many things I wanted, to fence it, ſecure it, mow or reap it, cure or carry it home, threſh, part it from the Chaff, and ſave it. Then I wanted a Mill to grind it, Sieves to dreſs it, Yeſt and Salt to make it into Bread, and an Oven to bake it in; and all theſe things I did without, as ſhall be obſerved; and yet the

Corn

Corn was an ineſtimable Comfort and Advantage to me too; but all this, as I ſaid, made every thing laborious and tedious to me, but that there was no Help for; neither was my Time ſo much Loſs to me, becauſe I had divided it; a certain Part of it was every Day appointed to theſe Works; and as I reſolv'd to uſe none of the Corn for Bread, till I had a greater Quantity by me, I had the next ſix Months to apply myſelf wholly by Labour and Invention, to furniſh myſelf with Utenſils proper for the performing all the Operations neceſſary for the making the Corn, when I had it, fit for my Uſe.

But firſt I was to prepare more Land, for I had now Seed enough to ſow above an Acre of Ground. Before I did this, I had a Week's Work at leaſt to make me a Spade, which, when it was done, was but a ſorry one indeed, and very heavy, and requir'd double Labour to work with it; however, I went thro' that, and ſow'd my Seeds in two large flat Pieces of Ground, as near my Houſe as I could find them to my Mind, and fenc'd them in with a good Hedge, the Stakes of which were all cut of that Wood which I had ſet before, which I knew would grow, ſo that in one Year's time I knew I ſhould have a Quick of living Hedge, that would want but little Repair. This Work was not ſo little, as to take me up leſs than three Months, becauſe great Part of that Time was of the wet Seaſon, when I could not go abroad.

Within-door, *that is*, when it rain'd, and I could not go out, I found Employment on the following Occaſion, always obſerving, that all the while I was at Work, I diverted myſelf with talking to my Parrot, and teaching him to ſpeak; and I quickly learnt him to know his own Name; at laſt, to ſpeak it out pretty loud, POL; which was the firſt Word I ever heard ſpoken in the Iſland by any Mouth but my own. This therefore was not my Work, but an Aſſiſtant to my Work; for now, as I ſaid, I had a great Employment upon my Hands, as follows; *viz.* I had long ſtudy'd, by ſome means or other, to make myſelf ſome earthen Veſſels, which indeed I wanted ſorely, but knew not where to come at them: However, conſidering the Heat of the Climate, I did not doubt but, if I could find out any ſuch Clay, I might *botch up* ſome ſuch Pot, as might, being dry'd by the Sun,

Sun, be hard enough, and ſtrong enough, to bear handling, and to hold any Thing that was dry, and requir'd to be kept ſo; and as this was neceſſary in preparing Corn, Meal, &c. which was the Thing I was upon, I reſolv'd to make ſome as large as I could, and fit only to ſtand like Jars to hold what ſhould be put into them.

It would make the Reader pity me, or rather laugh at me, to tell how many aukward Ways I took to raiſe this Paſte, what odd mis-ſhapen ugly Things I made, how many of them fell in, and how many fell out, the Clay not being ſtiff enough to bear its own Weight; how many crack'd by the over-violent Heat of the Sun, being ſet out too haſtily; and how many fell to Pieces with only removing, as well before as after they were dry'd; and, in a word, how, after having labour'd hard to find the Clay, to dig it, to temper it, to bring it home, and work it, I could not make above two large earthen ugly Things, I cannot call them Jars, in about two Months Labour.

However, as the Sun baked theſe two very dry and hard, I lifted them very gently up, and ſet them down again in two great Wicker-baſkets, which I had made on purpoſe for them, that they might not break; and as between the Pot and the Baſket, there was a little Room to ſpare, I ſtuffed it full of the Rice and Barley Straw; and theſe two Pots being to ſtand always dry, I thought would hold my dry Corn, and perhaps the Meal when the Corn was bruiſed.

Though I miſcarried ſo much in my Deſign for large Pots, yet I made ſeveral ſmaller Things with better Succeſs; ſuch as little round Pots, flat Diſhes, Pitchers, and Pipkins, and any thing my Hand turn'd to; and the Heat of the Sun bak'd them ſtrangely hard.

But all this would not anſwer my End, which was to get an earthen Pot to hold what was liquid, and bear the Fire, which none of theſe could do. It happen'd after ſome time, making a pretty large Fire for cooking my Meat, when I went to put it out, after I had done with it, I found a broken Piece of one of my Earthen-ware Veſſels in the Fire, burnt as hard as a Stone, and red as a Tile. I was agreeably ſurpris'd to ſee it, and ſaid to myſelf, that certainly they might be made to burn whole, if they would burn broken.

This ſet me to ſtudy how to order my Fire, ſo as to make it burn me ſome Pots. I had no Notion of a Kiln, ſuch as the Potters burn in, or of glazing them with Lead, though I had ſome Lead to do it with: But I plac'd three large Pipkins, and two or three Pots, in a Pile one upon another, and plac'd my Fire-wood all round it with a great Heap of Embers under them: I ply'd the Fire with freſh Fuel round the Outſide, and upon the Top, till I ſaw the Pots in the Inſide red-hot quite thro', and obſerv'd that they did not crack at all: When I ſaw them clear red, I let them ſtand in that Heat about five or ſix Hours, till I found one of them, though it did not crack, did melt or run; for the Sand which was mixed with the Clay melted by the Violence of the Heat, and would have run into Glaſs, if I had gone on; ſo I ſlack'd my Fire gradually, till the Pots began to abate of the red Colour; and watching them all Night, that I might not let the Fire abate too faſt, in the Morning I had three very good, I will not ſay handſome Pipkins, and two other earthen Pots, as hard burnt as could be deſir'd; and one of them perfectly glaz'd with the running of the Sand.

After this Experiment I need not ſay that I wanted no Sort of Earthen-ware for my Uſe; but I muſt needs ſay, as to the Shapes of them, they were very indifferent, as any one may ſuppoſe, when I had no Way of making them, but as the Children make Dirt-pies, or as a Woman would make Pies that never learnt to raiſe Paſte.

No Joy at a thing of ſo mean a Nature was ever equal to mine, when I found I had made an earthen Pot that would bear the Fire; and I had hardly Patience to ſtay till they were cold, before I ſet one upon the Fire again, with ſome Water in it, to boil me ſome Meat, which I did admirably well; and with a Piece of a Kid I made ſome very good Broth, tho' I wanted Oatmeal, and ſeveral other Ingredients requiſite to make it ſo good as I would have had it.

My next Concern was, to get me a Stone Mortar to ſtamp or beat ſome Corn in; for as to the Mill, there was no Thought of arriving to that Perfection of Art, with one Pair of Hands. To ſupply this Want, I was at a great Loſs; for of all Trades in the World I was as perfectly

perfectly unqualified for a Stone cutter, as for any whatever; neither had I any Tools to go about it with. I ſpent many a Day to find out a great Stone big enough to cut hollow, and make fit for a Mortar, and could find none at all, except what was in the ſolid Rock, and which I had no way to dig or cut out; nor indeed were the Rocks in the Iſland of Hardneſs ſufficient, but were all of a ſandy crumbling Stone, which would neither bear the Weight of an heavy Peſtle, nor would break the Corn without filling it with Sand: So, after a great deal of Time loſt in ſearching for a Stone, I gave it over, and reſolv'd to look out a great Block of hard Wood, which I found indeed much eaſier; and getting one as big as I had Strength to ſtir, I rounded it, and form'd it on the Outſide with my Ax and Hatchet; and then with the Help of Fire, and infinite Labour, made an hollow Place in it, as the *Indians* in *Braſil* make their *Canoes*. After this, I made a great heavy Peſtle or Beater, of the Wood call'd the Iron wood, and this I prepared and laid by againſt I had my next Crop of Corn, when I propoſed to myſelf to grind, or rather pound, my Corn or Meal to make my Bread.

My next Difficulty was to make a Sieve or Sierce, to dreſs my Meal, and to part it from the Bran and the Huſk, without which I did not ſee it poſſible I could have any Bread. This was a moſt difficult Thing, ſo much as but to think on; for to be ſure I had nothing like the neceſſary Things to make it with; I mean fine thin Canvas, or Stuff to ſierce the Meal through. And here I was at a full Stop for many Months; nor did I really know what to do; Linen I had none left, but what was mere Rags; I had Goat's Hair, but neither knew I how to weave or ſpin it; and had I known how, here were no Tools to work it with; all the Remedy that I found for this, was, that at laſt I did remember I had, among the Seamen's Clothes which were ſav'd out of the Ship, ſome Neckcloths of Calico or Muſlin; and with ſome Pieces of theſe I made three ſmall Sieves, but proper enough for the Work; and thus I made ſhift for ſome Years; how I did afterwards, I ſhall ſhew in its Place.

The baking Part was the next thing to be conſidered, and how I ſhould make Bread when I came to have Corn; for, firſt, I had no Yeſt: As to that Part, as there

there was no ſupplying the Want, ſo I did not concern myſelf much about it: But for an Oven, I was indeed in great Pain. At length I found out an Experiment for that alſo, which was this; I made ſome earthen Veſſels very broad, but not deep; that is to ſay, about two Feet Diameter, and not above nine Inches deep; theſe I burnt in the Fire, as I had done the other, and laid them by; and when I wanted to bake, I made a great Fire upon the Hearth, which I had pav'd with ſome ſquare Tiles of my own making and burning alſo; but I ſhould not call them ſquare.

When the Fire-wood was burnt pretty much into Embers, or live Coals, I drew them forward upon this Hearth, ſo as to cover it all over; and there I let them lie, till the Hearth was very hot; then ſweeping away all the Embers, I ſet down my Loaf, or Loaves; and, whelming down the earthen Pot upon them, drew the Embers all round the Outſide of the Pot, to keep in, and add to the Heat; and thus, as well as in the beſt Oven in the World, I bak'd my Barley-loaves, and became in a little time a mere Paſtry-cook into the Bargain; for I made myſelf ſeveral Cakes of the Rice, and Puddings; indeed I made no Pies, neither had I any thing to put into them, ſuppoſing I had, except the Fleſh either of Fowls or Goats.

It need not be wonder'd at, if all theſe things took me up moſt Part of the third Year of my Abode here; for it is to be obſerved, that in the Intervals of theſe things, I had my new Harveſt and Huſbandry to manage; For I reaped my Corn in its Seaſon, and carried it home as well as I could, and laid it up in the Ear, in my large Baſkets, till I had time to rub it out; for I had no Floor to threſh it on, or Inſtrument to threſh it with.

And now indeed my Stock of Corn increaſing, I really wanted to build my Barns bigger: I wanted a Place to lay it up in; for the Increaſe of the Corn now yielded me ſo much, that I had of the Barley about twenty Buſhels, and of the Rice as much, or more; inſomuch that now I reſolved to begin to uſe it freely, for my Bread had been quite gone a great while; alſo I reſolved to ſee what Quantity would be ſufficient for me a whole Year, and to ſow but once a Year.

Upon

Upon the Whole, I found that the forty Buſhels of Barley and Rice were much more than I could conſume in a Year; ſo I reſolved to ſow juſt the ſame Quantity every Year that I ſow'd the laſt, in hopes that ſuch a Quantity would fully provide me with Bread, *&c.*

All the while theſe things were doing, you may be ſure my Thoughts ran many times upon the Proſpect of Land which I had ſeen from the other Side of the Iſland; and I was not without ſecret Wiſhes, that I was on Shore there, fanſying that ſeeing the main Land, and an inhabited Country, I might find ſome way or other to convey myſelf farther, and perhaps at laſt find ſome Means of Eſcape.

But all this while I made no Allowance for the Dangers of ſuch a Condition, and how I might fall into the Hands of Savages, and perhaps ſuch as I might have Reaſon to think far worſe than the Lions and Tigers of *Africa:* That if I once came into their Power, I ſhould run an Hazard more than a thouſand to one of being killed, and perhaps of being eaten; for I had heard, that the People of the *Caribean* Coaſts were Canibals, or Man-eaters; and I knew by the Latitude, that I could not be far off from that Shore: That, ſuppoſe they were not Canibals, yet they might kill me, as many *Europeans* who had fallen into their Hands had been ſerved, even when they had been ten or twenty together; much more I that was but one, and could make little or no Defence. All theſe things, I ſay, which I ought to have conſidered well of, and I did caſt up in my Thoughts afterwards, yet took up none of my Apprehenſions at firſt; and my Head ran mightily upon the Thoughts of getting over to that Shore.

Now I wiſhed for my Boy *Xury*, and the Long-boat, with the Shoulder of Mutton-Sail, with which I ſail'd above a thouſand Miles on the Coaſt of *Africa*; but this was in vain. Then I thought I would go on and look on our Ship's Boat, which, as I have ſaid, was blown up upon the Shore a great Way in the Storm, when we were firſt caſt away. She lay almoſt where ſhe did at firſt, but not quite; and was turn'd by the Force of the Waves and the Winds, almoſt Bottom upwards, againſt the high Ridge of beachy rough Sand, but no Water about her as before.

If I had had Hands to have refitted her, and to have launch'd her into the Water, the Boat would have done well enough, and I might have gone back into the *Braſils* with her eaſy enough; but I might have eaſily foreſeen, that I could no more turn her, and ſet her upright upon her Bottom, than I could remove the Iſland. However I went to the Wood, and cut Leaves and Rollers, and brought them to the Boat, reſolved to try what I could do; ſuggeſting to myſelf, that if I could but turn her down, I might eaſily repair the Damage ſhe had received, and ſhe would be a very good Boat, and I might go to Sea in her very eaſily.

I ſpared no Pains indeed in this Piece of fruitleſs Toil, and ſpent, I think, three or four Weeks about it; at laſt finding it impoſſible to heave it up with my little Strength, I fell to digging away the Sand to undermine it; and ſo to make it fall down, ſetting Pieces of Wood to thruſt and guide it right in the Fall.

But when I had done this, I was unable to ſtir it up again, or to get under it, much leſs to move it forwards towards the Water; ſo I was forc'd to give it over: And yet, though I gave over the Hopes of the Boat, my Deſire to venture over for the Main increaſed, rather than decreaſed, as the Means for it ſeem'd impoſſible.

This at length ſet me upon thinking, whether it was not poſſible to make myſelf a *Canoe* or *Periagua*, ſuch as the Natives of thoſe Climates make, even without Tools, or, as I might ſay, without Hands, *viz.* of the Trunk of a great Tree. This I not only thought poſſible, but eaſy; and pleas'd myſelf extremely with my Thoughts of making it, and with my having much more Convenience for it than any of the *Negroes* or *Indians*; but not at all conſidering the particular Inconveniencies which I lay under more than the *Indians* did, *viz.* want of Hands to move it into the Water, when it was made; a Difficulty much harder for me to ſurmount, than all the Conſequences of want of Tools could be to them: For what was it to me, that when I had choſen a vaſt Tree in the Woods, I might with great Trouble cut it down, if after I might be able with my Tools to hew and dub the Outſide into a proper Shape of a Boat, and burn or cut out the Inſide to make it hollow, ſo to make a Boat of it, if, after all this, I muſt leave it juſt there

where

where I found it, and was not able to launch it into the Water?

One would have thought, I could not have had the leaſt Reflection upon my Mind of my Circumſtance, while I was making this Boat, but I ſhould have immediately thought how I ſhould get it into the Sea; but my Thoughts were ſo intent upon my Voyage over the Sea in it, that I never once conſidered how I ſhould get it off of the Land; and it was really in its own Nature more eaſy for me to guide it over forty-five Miles of Sea, than about forty-five Fathom of Land, where it lay, to ſet it afloat in the Water.

I went to work upon this Boat the moſt like a Fool that ever Man did, who had any of his Senſes awake. I pleaſed myſelf with the Deſign, without determining whether I was ever able to undertake it; not but that the Difficulty of launching my Boat came often into my Head; but I put a Stop to my own Inquiries into it by this fooliſh Anſwer, which I gave myſelf; *Let me firſt make it, I'll warrant I'll find ſome way or other to get it along, when it is done.*

This was a moſt prepoſterous Method; but the Eagerneſs of my Fancy prevailed, and to work I went, and felled a Cedar-tree: I queſtion much whether *Solomon* ever had ſuch an one for the building the Temple at *Jeruſalem*; it was five Feet ten Inches Diameter at the lower Part next the Stump, and four Feet eleven Inches Diameter at the End of twenty-two Feet, after which it leſſened for a while, and then parted into Branches: It was not without infinite Labour that I felled this Tree: I was twenty Days hacking and hewing at it at the Bottom; I was fourteen more getting the Branches and Limbs, and the vaſt ſpreading Head of it cut off; which I hacked and hewed through with my Ax and Hatchet, and inexpreſſible Labour: After this it coſt me a Month to ſhape it, and dub it to a Proportion, and to ſomething like the Bottom of a Boat, that it might ſwim upright as it ought to do. It coſt me near three Months more to clear the Inſide, and work it out ſo, as to make an exact Boat of it: This I did indeed without Fire, by mere Mallet and Chiſſel, and by the Dint of hard Labour; till I had brought it to be a very hand-

ſome *Periagua*, and big enough to have carried ſix-and-twenty Men, and conſequently b.g enough to have carried me and all my Cargo.

When I had gone thro' this Work, I was extremely delighted with it: The Boat was really much bigger than I ever ſaw a *Canoe* or *Periagua*, that was made of one Tree, in my Life; many a weary Stroke it had coſt, you may be ſure, for there remained nothing but to get it into the Water; and had I gotten it into the Water, I make no Queſtion, but I ſhould have begun the maddeſt Voyage, and the moſt unlikely to be performed, that ever was undertaken.

But all my Devices to get it into the Water failed me, though they coſt infinite Labour too; it lay about one hundred Yards from the Water, and not more; but the firſt Inconvenience was it was, up Hill towards the Creek: Well, to take away this Diſcouragement, I reſolved to dig into the Surface of the Earth, and ſo make a Declivity; this I began, and it coſt me a prodigious deal of Pains: But who grudge Pains, that have their Deliverance in View? But when this was worked through, and this Difficulty managed, it was ſtill much at one; for I could no more ſtir the *Canoe*, than I could the other Boat.

Then I meaſured the Diſtance of Ground, and reſolved to cut a Dock, or Canal, to bring the Water up to the *Canoe*, ſeeing I could not bring the *Canoe* down to the Water: Well, I began this Work, and when I began to enter into it, and calculated how deep it was to be dug, how broad, how the Stuff to be thrown out, I found, that by the Number of Hands I had, being none but my own, it muſt have been ten or twelve Years before I ſhould have gone through with it; for the Shore lay high, ſo that at the upper End it muſt have been at leaſt twenty Feet deep; ſo at length, though with great Reluctancy, I gave this Attempt over alſo.

This grieved me heartily, and now I ſaw, though too late, the Folly of beginning a Work before we count the Coſt, and before we judge rightly of our own Strength to go through with it.

In the Middle of this Work I finiſhed my fourth Year in this Place, and kept my Anniverſary with the ſame Devotion, and with as much Comfort, as ever before; for by a conſtant Study, and ſerious Application of the Word

Word of God, and by the Aſſiſtance of his Grace, I gained a different Knowledge from what I had before; I entertained different Notions of things; I looked now upon the World as a thing remote; which I had nothing to do with, no Expectation from, and indeed no Deſires about: In a word, I had nothing indeed to do with it, nor was ever like to have; ſo I thought it looked as we may perhaps look upon it hereafter; *viz.* as a Place I had lived in, but was come out of it; and well might I ſay, as Father *Abraham* to *Dives, Between me and thee is a great Gulph fixed.*

In the firſt Place, I was removed from all the Wickedneſs of the World here: I had neither the *Luſt of the Fleſh, the Luſt of the Eye, or the Pride of Life:* I had nothing to covet, for I had all I was now capable of enjoying: I was Lord of the whole Manor, or, if I pleaſed, I might call myſelf King or Emperor over the whole Country which I had Poſſeſſion of: There were no Rivals: I had no Competitor, none to diſpute Sovereignty or Command with me: I might have rais'd Ship-loadings of Corn, but I had no Uſe for it; ſo I let as little grow as I thought enough for my Occaſion; I had Tortoiſes or Turtles enough; but now-and-then one was as much as I could put to any Uſe: I had Timber enough to have built a Fleet of Ships: I had Grapes enough to have made Wine, or to have cured into Raiſins, to have loaded that Fleet when they had been built.

But all I could make uſe of, was all that was valuable: I had enough to eat, and to ſupply my Wants, and what was all the reſt to me? If I killed more Fleſh than I could eat, the Dog muſt eat it, or the Vermin; if I ſowed more Corn than I could eat, it muſt be ſpoiled: The Trees that I cut down were lying to rot on the Ground, I could make no more Uſe of them than for Fuel; and that I had no Occaſion for, but to dreſs my Food.

In a word, the Nature and Experience of things dictated to me upon juſt Reflection, that all the good things of this World are no farther good to us, than they are for our Uſe; and that whatever we way heap up indeed to give others, we enjoy as much as we can uſe, and no more. The moſt covetous griping Miſer in the World would have been cured of the Vice of Co-

thoughtfulneſs, if he had been in my Caſe; for I poſſeſſed infinitely more than I knew what to do with. I had no room for Deſire, except it was of things which I had not, and they were but Trifles, tho' indeed of great Uſe to me. I had, as I hinted before, a Parcel of Money, as well Gold as Silver, above thirty-ſix Pounds *Sterling*; Alas! there the naſty ſorry uſeleſs Stuff lay; I had no manner of Buſineſs for it; and I often thought with myſelf, that I would have given an Handful of it for a Groſs of Tobacco-pipes, or for an Hand-mill to grind my Corn; nay, I would have given it all for Sixpenny-worth of *Turnep* and *Carret* Seed out of *England*, or for an Handful of *Peas* and *Beans*, and a Bottle of Ink: *As it was*, I had not the leaſt Advantage by it, or Benefit from it; but there it lay in a Drawer, and grew mouldy with the Damp of the Cave, in the wet Seaſon; and if I had had the Drawer full of Diamonds, it had been the ſame Caſe; and they had been of no manner of Value to me, becauſe of no Uſe.

I had now brought my State of Life to be much eaſier in itſelf than it was at firſt, and much eaſier to my Mind, as well as to my Body. I frequently ſat down to my Meat with Thankfulneſs, and admired the Hand of God's Providence, which had thus ſpread my Table in the Wilderneſs: I learned to look more upon the bright Side of my Condition, and leſs upon the dark Side; and to conſider what I enjoyed, rather than what I wanted; and this gave me ſometimes ſuch ſecret Comforts, that I cannot expreſs them; and which I take notice of here, to put thoſe diſcontented People in mind of it, who cannot enjoy comfortably what God hath given them, becauſe they ſee and covet ſomething that he has not given them: All our Diſcontents about what we want, appeared to me to ſpring from the Want of Thankfulneſs for what we have.

Another Reflection was of great Uſe to me, and doubtleſs would be ſo to any one that ſhould fall into ſuch Diſtreſs as mine was; and this was, to compare my preſent Condition with what I at firſt expected it ſhould be; nay, with what it would certainly have been, if the good Providence of God had not wonderfully ordered the Ship to be caſt up nearer to the Shore, where I not only could come at her, but could bring what I got out of her

her to the Shore, for my Relief and Comfort; without which I had wanted Tools to work, Weapons for Defence, or Gunpowder and Shot for getting my Food.

I ſpent whole Hours, I may ſay, whole Days, in repreſenting to myſelf in the moſt lively Colours, how I muſt have acted, if I had got nothing out of the Ship; how I could not have ſo much as got any Food, except Fiſh and Turtles; and that, as it was long before I found any of them, I muſt have periſhed firſt: That I ſhould have lived, if I had not periſhed, like a mere Savage: That if I had killed a Goat or a Fowl by any Contrivance, I had no way to flay or open them, or part the Fleſh from the Skin and the Bowels, or to cut it up; but muſt gnaw it with my Teeth, and pull it with my Claws, like a Beaſt.

Theſe Reflections made me very ſenſible of the Goodneſs of Providence to me, and very thankful for my preſent Condition, with all its Hardſhips and Misfortunes: And this Part alſo I cannot but recommend to the Reflection of thoſe who are apt in their Miſery to ſay, *Is any Affliction like mine?* Let them conſider, how much worſe the Caſes of ſome People are, and what their Caſe might have been, if Providence had thought fit.

I had another Reflection which aſſiſted me alſo to comfort my Mind with Hopes; and this was, comparing my preſent Condition with what I had deſerved, and had therefore Reaſon to expect from the Hand of Providence: I had lived a dreadful Life, perfectly deſtitute of the Knowledge and Fear of God: I had been well inſtructed by Father and Mother; neither had they been wanting to me in their early Endeavours, to infuſe a religious Awe of God into my Mind, a Senſe of my Duty, and of what the Nature and End of my Being required of me: But alas! falling early into the Seafaring Life, which of all the Lives is the moſt deſtitute of the Fear of God, tho' his Terrors are always before them; I ſay, falling early into the Seafaring Life, and into Seafaring Company, all that little Senſe of Religion which I had entertained, was laught out of me by my Meſſmates; by an hardened deſpiſing of Dangers, and the Views of Death, which grew habitual to me; by my long Abſence from all manner of Opportunities to converſe with any thing but what was like myſelf,

or to hear any thing of what was good, or tended towards it.

So void was I of every thing that was good, or of the leaſt Senſe of what I was, or was to be, that in the greateſt Deliverance I enjoyed, ſuch as my Eſcape from *Salee*, my being taken up by the *Portugueſe* Maſter of the Ship, my being planted ſo well in *Braſil*, my receiving the Cargo from *England*, and the like; I never once had the Word *Thank God*, ſo much as on my Mind, or in my Mouth; nor in the greateſt Diſtreſs, had I ſo much Thought as to pray to him; nor ſo much as to ſay, *Lord, have Mercy upon me!* No, not to mention the Name of God, unleſs it was to ſwear by, and blaſpheme it.

I had terrible Reflections upon my Mind for many Months, as I have already obſerved, on the Account of my wicked and hardened Life paſt; and when I looked about me, and conſidered what particular Providences had attended me, ſince my coming into this Place, and how God had dealt bountifully with me; had not only puniſhed me leſs than my Iniquity deſerved, but had ſo plentifully provided for me; this gave me great Hopes, that my Repentance was accepted, and that God had yet Mercies in Store for me.

With theſe Reflections I worked my Mind up, not only to Reſignation to the Will of God in the preſent Diſpoſition of my Circumſtances, but even to a ſincere Thankfulneſs for my Condition; and that I, who was yet *a living Man, ought not to complain, ſeeing I had not the due Puniſhment of my Sins*; that I enjoyed ſo many Mercies, which I had no Reaſon to have expected in that Place, that I ought never more to repine at my Condition, but to rejoice, and to give daily Thanks, for that *daily Bread*, which nothing but a Cloud of Wonders could have brought: That I ought to conſider I had been fed even by a Miracle, even as great as that of feeding *Elijah* by Ravens; nay, by a long Series of Miracles; and that I could hardly have named a Place in the uninhabited Part of the World, where I could have been caſt more to my Advantage: A Place, where as I had no Society, which was my Affliction on one hand, ſo I found no ravenous Beaſts, no furious Wolves or Tygers, to threaten my Life; no venomous Creatures or poiſonous, which I might have

fed

ſed on to my Hurt, no Savages to murder and devour me.

In a word, as my Life was a Life of Sorrow one way, ſo it was a Life of Mercy another; and I wanted nothing to make it a Life of Comfort, but to be able to make my Senſe of God's Goodneſs to me, and Care over me in this Condition, be my daily Conſolation; and after I made a juſt Improvement of theſe things, I went away, and was no more ſad.

I had now been here ſo long, that many things which I brought on Shore for my Help, were either quite gone, or very much waſted, and near ſpent.

My Ink, as I obſerved, had been gone for ſome time, all but a very little, which I eek'd out with Water a little and a little, till it was ſo pale it ſcarce left any Appearance of Black upon the Paper: As long as it laſted, I made uſe of it to minute down the Days of the Month on which any remarkable thing happened to me; and firſt by caſting up Times paſt, I remember that there was a ſtrange Concurrence of Days, in the various Providences which befel me, and which, if I had been ſuperſtitiouſly inclined to obſerve Days as fatal or fortunate, I might have had Reaſon to have looked upon with a great deal of Curioſity.

Firſt, I had obſerved, that the ſame Day that I broke away from my Father and my Friends, and ran away to *Hull* in order to go to Sea, the ſame Day afterwards I was taken by the *Sallee* Man of War, and made a Slave.

The ſame Day of the Year that I eſcaped out of the Wreck of that Ship in *Yarmouth* Roads, that ſame Day of the Year afterwards I made my Eſcape from *Sallee* in the Boat.

The ſame Day of the Year I was born on, *viz.* the 20th of *September*, the ſame Day I had my Life ſo miraculouſly ſaved 26 Years after, when I was caſt on Shore in this Iſland; ſo that my wicked Life, and ſolitary Life, began both on a Day.

The next thing to my Ink's being waſted, was that of my Bread, I mean the Biſcuit which I brought out of the Ship: This I had huſbanded to the laſt Degree, allowing myſelf but one Cake of Bread a Day, for above a Year; and yet I was quite without Bread for a Year before I got any Corn of my own; and great Reaſon I had to be thankful that I had any at all, the getting it being, as has been already obſerved, next to miraculous.

My Cloaths too began to decay mightily: As to Linen, I had none a good while, except ſome checquered Shirts which I found in the Chefts of the other Seamen, and which I was very glad to preſerve, becauſe many times I could bear no other Cloaths on but a Shirt; and it was a very great Help to me that I had among all the Men's Cloaths of which there was great Variety, about three dozen of Shirts. There were alſo ſeveral good Watch-coats of the Seamen, which were too hot to wear; and tho' it is true that the Weather was exceeding violent hot, that there was no Need of Cloaths, yet I could not go quite naked; no, that was not to be thought of, which I was not: nor could I abide the Thoughts of it, though I was all alone.

The Reaſon why I could not go quite naked, was, I could not bear the Heat of the Sun ſo well when quite naked, as with ſome Cloaths on; nay, the very Heat frequently bliſtered my Skin; whereas, with a Shirt on, the Air itſelf made ſome Motion, and whiſtling under the Shirt, was twofold cooler than without it: No more could I ever bring myſelf to go out in the Heat of the Sun without a Cap or an Hat; the Heat of the Sun beating with ſuch Violence as it does in that Place, would give me the Head-ach preſently, by darting ſo directly on my Head, without a Cap or Hat on, ſo that I could not bear it; whereas, if I put on my Hat, it would preſently go away.

Upon theſe Views I began to conſider about putting the few Rags I had, which I called Cloaths, into ſome Order: I had worn out all the Waiſtcoats I had, and my Buſineſs was now to try if I could not make Jackets out of the great Watch coats which I had by me, and with ſuch other Materials as I had; ſo I ſet to work a Taylor-ing, or rather indeed a Botching; for I made moſt pite-ous Work of it. However, I made ſhift to make two or three Waiſtcoats, which I hoped would ſerve me a great while; as for Breeches or Drawers, I made but very ſorry ſhift indeed, till afterwards.

I have mentioned that I ſaved the Skins of all the Creatures that I killed, I mean four-footed ones; and I had hung them up ſtretched out with Sticks in the Sun; by which means ſome of them were ſo dry and hard, that they were fit for little; but others, it ſeems, were very

very uſeful. The firſt thing I made of theſe was a great Cap for my Head, with the Hair on the Outſide to ſhoot off the Rain; and this I performed ſo well, that after this I made a Suit of Cloaths wholly of thoſe Skins; that is to ſay, a Waiſtcoat and Breeches open at Knees, and both looſe; for they were rather wanting to keep me cool, than to keep me warm. I muſt not omit to acknowledge, that they were wretchedly made; for if I was a bad *Carpenter*, I was a worſe *Taylor*: However, they were ſuch as I made a very good ſhift with; and when I was abroad, if it happened to rain, the Hair of the Waiſtcoat and Cap being outmoſt, I was kept very dry.

After this I ſpent a great deal of Time and Pains to make me an Umbrella: I was indeed in great Want of one, and had a great Mind to make one: I had ſeen them made in the *Braſils*, where they are very uſeful in the great Heats which are there; and I felt the Heats every jot as great here, and greater too, being nearer the *Equinox*; beſides, as I was obliged to be much abroad, it was a moſt uſeful thing to me, as well for the Rains as the Heats. I took a world of Pains at it; and was a great while before I could make any thing likely to hold; nay, after I thought I had hit the Way, I ſpoiled two or three before I made one to my Mind; but at laſt I made one that anſwered indifferently well; the main Difficulty I found was to make it to let down. I could make it to ſpread; but if it did not let down too, and draw in, it would not be portable for me any way, but juſt over my Head, which would not do: However, at laſt, as I ſaid, I made one to anſwer; I covered it with Skins, the Hair upwards, ſo that it caſt off the Rain like a Penthouſe, and kept off the Sun ſo effectually, that I could walk out in the hotteſt of the Weather, with greater Advantage than I could before in the coolest; and when I had no need of it, I could cloſe it, and carry it under my Arm.

Thus I lived mighty comfortably, my Mind being entirely compoſed by reſigning to the Will of God, and throwing myſelf wholly upon the Diſpoſal of his Providence: This made my Life better than ſociable; for when I began to regret the want of Converſation, I would aſk myſelf, whether thus converſing mutually

with my own Thoughts, and, as I hope, I may ſay, with even my Maker, by Ejaculations and Petitions, was not better than the utmoſt Enjoyment of human Society in the World?

I cannot ſay, that after this, for five Years, any extraordinary thing happened to me; but I lived on in the ſame Courſe, in the ſame Poſture and Place, juſt as before: The chief thing I was employ'd in, beſides my yearly Labour of planting my Barley and Rice, and curing my Raiſins, of both which I always kept up juſt enough to have ſufficient Stock of the Year's Proviſions beforehand; I ſay, beſides this yearly Labour, and my daily Labour of going out with my Gun, I had one Labour to make me a Canoe, which at laſt I finiſhed: So that by digging a Canal to it ſix Feet wide, and four Feet deep, I brought it into the Creek, almoſt half a Mile. As for the firſt, that was ſo vaſtly big, as I made it without conſidering beforehand, as I ought to do, how I ſhould be able to launch it; ſo never being able to bring it to the Water, or bring the Water to it, I was obliged to let it lie where it was, as a *Memorandum* to teach me to be wiſer next time. Indeed the next time, tho' I could not get a Tree proper for it, and was in a Place where I could not get the Water to it, at any leſs Diſtance than, as I have ſaid, of near half a Mile; yet as I ſaw it was practicable at laſt, I never gave it over; and tho' I was near two Years about it, yet I never grudged my Labour, in Hopes of having a Boat to go off to Sea at laſt.

However, though my little *Periagua* was finiſhed, yet the Size of it was not at all anſwerable to the Deſign which I had in View, when I made the firſt; I mean of venturing over to the *Terra Firma*, where it was above forty Miles broad; accordingly, the Smallneſs of my Boat aſſiſted to put an End to that Deſign, and now I thought no more of it: But as I had a Boat, my next Deſign was to make a Tour round the Iſland; for as I had been on the other Side, in one Place, croſſing, as I have already deſcribed it, over the Land, ſo the Diſcoveries I made in that Journey, made me very eager to ſee the other Parts of the Coaſt; and now I had a Boat, I thought of nothing but ſailing round the Iſland.

For

For this Purpoſe, and that I might do every thing with Diſcretion and Conſideration, I fitted up a little Maſt to my Boat, and made a Sail to it out of ſome of the Pieces of the Ship's Sails, which lay in Store, and of which I had a great Store by me.

Having fitted my Maſt and Sail, and tried the Boat, I found ſhe would ſail very well: Then I made little Lockers and Boxes at either End of my Boat, to put Proviſions, Neceſſaries, and Ammunition, *&c.* into, to be kept dry, either from Rain, or the Spray of the Sea; and a little long hollow Place I cut in the Inſide of the Boat, where I could lay my Gun, making a Flap to hang down over it to keep it dry.

I fixed my Umbrella alſo in a Step at the Stern, like a Maſt, to ſtand over my Head, and keep the Heat of the Sun off of me like an Awning; and thus I every now-and-then took a little Voyage upon the Sea, but never went far out, nor far from the little Creek; but at laſt being eager to view the Circumference of my little Kingdom, I reſolved upon my Tour, and accordingly I victual'd my Ship for the Voyage; putting in two Dozen of my Loaves (Cakes I ſhould rather call them) of Barley-bread; an earthen Pot full of parched Rice, a Food I eat a great deal of, a little Bottle of Rum, half a Goat, and Powder, with Shot for killing more, and two large Watch-coats, of thoſe which, as I mentioned before, I had ſaved out of the Seamen's Cheſts; theſe I took, one to lie upon, and the other to cover me in the Night.

It was the ſixth of *November*, in the ſixth Year of my Reign, or my Captivity, which you pleaſe, that I ſet out on this Voyage, and I found it much longer than I expected; for though the Iſland itſelf was not very large, yet when I came to the Eaſt-ſide of it, I found a great Ledge of Rocks lie out about two Leagues into the Sea, ſome above Water, ſome under it; and beyond this a Shoal of Sand, lying dry half a League more; ſo that I was obliged to go a great way out to Sea to double that Point.

When I firſt diſcovered them, I was going to give over my Enterprize, and come back again, not knowing how far it might oblige me to go out to Sea; and above all, doubting how I ſhould get back again; ſo I came

to an Anchor, for I had made me a kind of an Anchor with a Piece of broken Grappling, which I got out of the Ship.

Having ſecured my Boat, I took my Gun, and went on Shore, climbing upon an Hill, which ſeemed to overlook that Point, where I ſaw the full Extent of it, and reſolved to venture.

In my viewing the Sea from that Hill where I ſtood, I perceived a ſtrong, and indeed, a moſt furious Current, which ran to the Eaſt, even came cloſe to the Point; and I took the more notice of it, becauſe I ſaw there might be ſome Danger, that when I came into it, I might be carried out to Sea by the Strength of it, and not be able to make the Iſland again: And indeed, had I not gotten firſt upon this Hill, I believe it would have been ſo; for there was the ſame Current on the other Side of the Iſland, only that it ſet off at a farther Diſtance; and I ſaw there was a ſtrong Eddy under the Shore; ſo I had nothing to do but to get out of the firſt Current, and I ſhould preſently be in an Eddy.

I lay here, however, two Days; becauſe the Wind blowing pretty freſh (E. at S. E. and that being juſt contrary to the ſaid Current) made a great Breach of the Sea upon the Point; ſo that it was not ſafe for me to keep too cloſe to the Shore for the Breach, nor to go too far off becauſe of the Stream.

The third Day in the Morning, the Wind having abated over Night, the Sea was calm, and I ventured; but I am a Warning piece again to all raſh and ignorant Pilots; for no ſooner was I come to the Point, when even I was not my Boat's Length from the Shore, but I found myſelf in a great Depth of Water, and a Current like the Sluice of a Mill: It carried my Boat along with it with ſuch Violence, that all I could do, could not keep her ſo much as on the Edge of it; but I found it hurried me farther and farther out from the Eddy, which was on the Left-hand. There was no Wind ſtirring to help me, and all that I could do with my Paddles ſignified nothing; and now I began to give myſelf over for loſt; for, as the Current was on both Sides the Iſland, I knew in a few Leagues Diſtance they muſt join again, and then I was irrecoverably gone; nor

nor did I ſee any Poſſibility of avoiding it; ſo that I had no Proſpect before me but of periſhing; not by the Sea, for that was calm enough, but of ſtarving for Hunger. I had indeed found a Tortoiſe on the Shore, as big almoſt as I could lift, and had toſs'd it into the Boat; and I had a great Jar of freſh Water, that is to ſay, one of my earthen Pots; but what was all this to being driven into the vaſt Ocean, where, to be ſure, there was no Shore, no main Land or Iſland, for a thouſand Leagues at leaſt?

And now I ſaw how eaſy it was for the Providence of God to make the moſt miſerable Condition that Mankind could be in, *worſe*. Now I look'd back upon my deſolate ſolitary Iſland, as the moſt pleaſant Place in the World, and all the Happineſs my Heart could wiſh for, was to be there again: I ſtretch'd out my Hands to it with eager Wiſhes; O happy Deſart! ſaid I, I ſhall never ſee thee more; O miſerable Creature! ſaid I, whither am I going? Then I reproach'd myſelf with my unthankful Temper, and how I had repin'd at my ſolitary Condition; and now what would I give to be on Shore there again? Thus we never ſee the true State of our Condition, till it is illuſtrated to us by its Contraries; nor know how to value what we enjoy, but by the Want of it: It is ſcarce poſſible to imagine the Conſternation I was now in, being driven from my beloved Iſland (for ſo it appear'd to me now to be) into the wide Ocean, almoſt two Leagues, and in the utmoſt Deſpair of ever recovering it again: However, I worked hard, till indeed my Strength was almoſt exhauſted; and kept my Boat as much to the *Northward*, that is, towards the Side of the Current which the Eddy lay on, as poſſibly I could; when about Noon, as the Sun paſs'd the Meridian, I thought I felt a little Breeze of Wind in my Face, ſpringing up from the S. S. E. This chear'd my Heart a little, and eſpecially when in about half an Hour more it blew a pretty ſmall gentle Gale: By this Time I was gotten at a frightful Diſtance from the Iſland; and, had the leaſt Cloud or hazy Weather interven'd, I had been undone another way too; for I had no Compaſs on board, and ſhould never have known how to have ſteer'd towards the Iſland, if I had but once loſt Sight of it; but the Weather continuing clear, I apply'd

myſelf

myſelf to get up my Maſt again, and ſpread my Sail, ſtanding away to the North as much as poſſible, to get out of the Current.

Juſt as I had ſet my Maſt and Sail, and the Boat began to ſtretch away, I ſaw even by the Clearneſs of the Water, ſome Alteration of the Current was near; for where the Current was ſo ſtrong, the Water was foul; but perceiving the Water clear, I found the Current abate, and preſently I found to the Eaſt, at about half a Mile, a Breach of the Sea upon ſome Rocks; theſe Rocks I found caus'd the Current to part again; and as the main Streſs of it ran away more Southerly, leaving the Rocks to the North-Eaſt, ſo the other return'd by the Repulſe of the Rock, and made a ſtrong Eddy, which ran back again to the North-Weſt with a very ſharp Stream.

They who know what it is to have a Reprieve brought to them upon the Ladder, or to be reſcu'd from Thieves juſt going to murder them, or who have been in ſuch-like Extremities, may gueſs what my preſent Surprize of Joy was, and how gladly I put my Boat into the Stream of this Eddy; and the Wind alſo freſhening, how gladly I ſpread my Sail to it, running chearfully before the Wind, and with a ſtrong Tide or Eddy under Foot.

This Eddy carry'd me about a League in my Way back again directly towards the Iſland, but about two Leagues more towards the Northward than the Current lay, which carry'd me away at firſt; ſo that when I came near the Iſland, I found myſelf open to the Northern Shore of it, that is to ſay, the other End of the Iſland, oppoſite to that which I went out from.

When I had made ſomething more than a League of Way by the Help of this Current or Eddy, I found it was ſpent, and ſav'd me no farther. However I found, that being between the two great Currents, *viz.* that on the South-ſide which had hurried me away, and that on the North, which lay about two Leagues on the other Side; I ſay, between theſe two, in the Weſt of the Iſland, I found the Water at leaſt ſtill, and running no Way; and having ſtill a Breeze of Wind fair for me, I kept on ſteering directly for the Iſland, though not making ſuch freſh Way as I did before.

About 4 o' Clock in the Evening, being then with-*in about* a League of the Iſland, I found the Point of

the

the Rocks which occaſion'd this Diſtance ſtretching out as is deſcribed before, to the Southward, and, caſting off the Current more Southwardly, had of courſe made another Eddy to the North, and this I found very ſtrong, but directly ſetting the Way my Courſe lay, which was due Weſt, but almoſt full North. However, having a freſh Gale, I ſtretch'd acroſs this Eddy, ſlanting North-weſt, and in about an Hour came within about a Mile of the Shore, where, it being ſmooth Water, I ſoon got to Land.

When I was on Shore, I fell on my Knees, and gave God Thanks for my Deliverance, reſolving to lay aſide all Thoughts of my Deliverance by my Boat; and refreſhing myſelf with ſuch Things as I had, I brought my Boat cloſe to the Shore in a little Cove that I had 'ſpy'd under ſome Trees, and laid me down to ſleep, being quite ſpent with the Labour and Fatigue of the Voyage.

I was now at a great Loſs which Way to get home with my Boat; I had run ſo much Hazard, and knew too much the Caſe to think of attempting it by the Way I went out; and what might be at the other Side (I mean the Weſt-ſide,) I knew not, nor had I any mind to run any more Ventures; ſo I only reſolved in the Morning to make my Way Weſtward along the Shore, and to ſee if there was no Creek where I might lay up my Frigate in Safety, ſo as to have her again if I wanted her. In about three Miles, or thereabouts, coaſting the Shore, I came to a very good Inlet, or Bay, about a Mile over, which narrow'd till it came to a very little Rivulet, or Brook, where I found a convenient Harbour for my Boat, and where ſhe lay as if ſhe had been in a little Dock made on Purpoſe for her; here I put in, and having ſtow'd my Boat very ſafe, I went on Shore to look about me, and ſee where I was.

I ſoon found I had but a little paſs'd by the Place where I had been before, when I travell'd on Foot to that Shore; ſo taking nothing out of my Boat, but my Gun and my Umbrella, for it was exceeding hot, I began my March: The Way was comfortable enough after ſuch a Voyage as I had been upon, and I reach'd my old Bower in the Evening, where I found every thing ſtanding as I left it; for I always kept it in good Order, being, as I ſaid before, my Country-houſe.

I got over the Fence, and laid me down in the Shade to reſt my Limbs, for I was very weary, and fell aſleep: But judge you, if you can, that read my Story, what a Surprize I muſt be in, when I was awaked out of my Sleep, by a Voice calling me by my Name ſeveral times, *Robin, Robin, Robin Cruſoe*, poor *Robin Cruſoe!* Where are you, *Robin Cruſoe?* Where are you? Where have you been?

I was ſo dead aſleep at firſt, being fatigued with rowing, or paddling, as it is call'd, the firſt Part of the Day; and walking the latter Part, that I did not awake thoroughly; and dozing between ſleeping and waking, thought I dream'd that ſomebody ſpoke to me: But as the Voice continued to repeat *Robin Cruſoe, Robin Cruſoe*; at laſt I began to awake more perfectly, and was at firſt dreadfully frighted, and ſtarted up in the utmoſt Conſternation: But no ſooner were my Eyes open, but I ſaw my *Pol* ſitting on the Top of the Hedge, and immediately knew that this was he that ſpoke to me; for juſt in ſuch bemoaning Language I had uſed to talk to him, and teach him; and he had learn'd it ſo perfectly, that he would ſit upon my Finger, and lay his Bill cloſe to my Face, and cry, *Poor* Robin Cruſoe, *Where are you? Where have you been? How came you here?* And ſuch things as I had taught him.

However, even tho' I knew it was the Parrot, and that indeed it could be nobody elſe, it was a good while before I could compoſe myſelf. Firſt, I was amaz'd how the Creature got thither, and then how he ſhould juſt keep about the Place, and no-where elſe: But as I was well ſatisfied it could be nobody but honeſt *Pol*, I got it over; and holding out my Hand, and calling him by his Name, *Pol*, the ſociable Creature came to me, and ſat upon my Thumb, as he uſed to do, and continued talking to me, *Poor* Robin Cruſoe, and, *How did I come here?* And, *Where had I been?* Juſt as if he had been overjoy'd to ſee me again; and ſo I carried him home along with me.

I had now had enough of rambling to Sea for ſome time, and had enough to do for many Days to ſit ſtill, and reflect upon the Danger I had been in: I would have been very glad to have had my Boat again on *my Side of* the Iſland, but I knew not how it was practicable

practicable to get it about: As to the Eaſt-ſide of the Iſland, which I had gone round, I knew well enough there was no venturing that Way; my very Heart would ſhrink, and my very Blood run chill, but to think of it: And to the other Side of the Iſland, I did not know how it might be there; but ſuppoſing the Current ran with the ſame Force againſt the Shore at the Eaſt, as it paſs'd by it on the other, I might run the ſame Riſque of being driven down the Stream, and carried by the Iſland, as I had been before of being carried away from it; ſo with theſe Thoughts I contented myſelf to be without any Boat, tho' it had been the Product of ſo many Months Labour to make it, and of ſo many more to get it into the Sea.

In this Government of my Temper I remain'd near a Year, liv'd a very ſedate retir'd Life, as you may well ſuppoſe; and my Thoughts being very much compos'd, as to my Condition, and fully comforted in reſigning myſelf to the Diſpoſitions of Providence, I thought I liv'd really very happily in all things, except that of Society.

I improv'd myſelf, in this Time, in all the mechanic Exerciſes which my Neceſſities put me upon applying myſelf to; and, I believe, could, upon Occaſion, have made a very good Carpenter, eſpecially conſidering how few Tools I had.

Beſides this, I arrived at an unexpected Perfection in my Earthen-ware, and contrived well enough to make them with a Wheel, which I found infinitely eaſier and better; becauſe I made things round and ſhapeable, which before were filthy things indeed to look on. But I think I never was more vain of my own Performance, or more joyful for any thing I found out, than for my being able to make a Tobacco-pipe; and tho' it was a very ugly clumſy thing when it was done, and only burnt red like other Earthen-ware, yet, as it was hard and firm, and would draw the Smoke, I was exceedingly comforted with it; for I had been always uſed to ſmoke, and there were Pipes in the Ship, but I forgot them at firſt, not knowing that there was Tobacco in the Iſland; and afterwards, when I ſearch'd the Ship again, I could not come at any Pipes at all.

In my Wicker-ware I alſo improv'd much, and made Abundance of neceſſary Baſkets, as well as my Invention ſhew'd

ſhew'd me, tho' not very handſome, yet convenient for my laying things up in, or fetching things home in. For Example, if I kill'd a Goat abroad, I could hang it up in a Tree, flay it, and dreſs it, and cut it in Pieces, and bring it home in a Baſket; and the like by a Turtle, I could cut it up, take out the Eggs, and a Piece or two of the Fleſh, which was enough for me, and bring them home in a Baſket, and leave the reſt behind me: Alſo large deep Baſkets were my Receivers for my Corn, which I always rubb'd out as ſoon as it was dry, and cured; and kept it in great Baſkets inſtead of a Granary.

I began now to perceive my Powder abated conſiderably; and this was a Want which it was impoſſible for me to ſupply, and I began ſeriouſly to conſider what I muſt do when I ſhould have no more Powder; that is to ſay, how I ſhould do to kill any Goats. I had, as I obſerv'd in the third Year of my being here, kept a young Kid, and bred her up tame; I was in hopes of getting an He-Kid, but I could not by any means bring it to paſs, till my Kid grew an old Goat; and I could never find in my Heart to kill her, till ſhe dy'd at laſt of mere Age.

But being now in the eleventh Year of my Reſidence, and, as I have ſaid, my Ammunition growing low, I ſet myſelf to ſtudy ſome Art to trap and ſnare the Goats, to ſee whether I could not catch ſome of them alive, and particularly I wanted a She-Goat great with Young.

To this Purpoſe I made Snares to hamper them; and I believe they were more than once taken in them; but my Tackle was not good, for I had no Wire, and always found them broken, and my Bait devoured.

At length I reſolv'd to try a Pit-fall, ſo I dug ſeveral large Pits in the Earth, in Places where I had obſerved the Goats uſed to feed, and over theſe Pits I plac'd Hurdles of my own making too, with a great Weight upon them; and ſeveral times I put Ears of Barley, and dry Rice, without ſetting the Trap; and I could eaſily perceive, that the Goats had gone in, and eaten up the Corn, that I could ſee the Mark of their Feet: At length, I ſet three Traps in one Night, and going the next Morning, I found them all ſtanding, and yet the Bait eaten and gone: This was very diſcouraging; however,

I alter'd my Traps; and, not to trouble you with Particulars, going one Morning to ſee my Traps, I found, in one of them, a large old He-Goat; and, in one of the other, three Kids, a Male and two Females.

As to the old one, I knew not what to do with him; he was ſo fierce I durſt not go into the Pit to him; that is to ſay, to go about to bring him away alive, which was what I wanted: I could have kill'd him, but that was not my Buſineſs, nor would it anſwer my End; ſo I e'en let him out, and he ran away as if he had been frighten'd out of his Wits; but I did not then know what I afterwards learned, that Hunger will tame a Lion: If I had let him ſtay there three or four Days without Food, and then have carried him ſome Water to drink, and then a little Corn, he would have been as tame as one of the Kids; for they are mighty ſagacious tractable Creatures, where they are well uſed.

However, for the preſent I let him go, knowing no better at that time; then I went to the three Kids, and, taking them one by one, I ty'd them with Strings together, and with ſome Difficulty brought them all home.

It was a good while before they would feed, but throwing them ſome ſweet Corn, it tempted them, and they began to be tame: And now I found, that if I expected to ſupply myſelf with Goats-fleſh, when I had no Powder or Shot left, breeding ſome up tame was my only Way, when perhaps I might have them about my Houſe like a Flock of Sheep.

But then it preſently occurr'd to me, that I muſt keep the tame from the wild, or elſe they would always run wild when they grew up; and the only way for this was to have ſome inclos'd Piece of Ground, well fenc'd either with Hedge or Pale, to keep them up ſo effectually, that thoſe within might not break out, or thoſe without break in.

This was a great Undertaking for one Pair of Hands; yet as I ſaw there was an abſolute Neceſſity of doing it, my firſt Piece of Work was to find out a proper Piece of Ground; *viz.* where there was likely to be Herbage for them to eat, Water for them to drink, and Cover to keep them from the Sun.

Thoſe who underſtand ſuch Incloſures, will think I had very little Contrivance, when I pitched upon a

Place

Place very proper for all theſe, being a plain open Piece of Meadow-land or *Savanna* (as our People call it in the Weſtern Colonies) which had two or three little Drills of freſh Water in it, and at one End was very woody; I ſay they will ſmile at my Forecaſt, when I ſhall tell them I began my incloſing of this Piece of Ground in ſuch a Manner, that my Hedge or Pale muſt have been at leaſt two Miles about; nor was the Madneſs of it ſo great as to the Compaſs; for if it was ten Miles about, I was like to have Time enough to do it in; but I did not conſider, that my Goats would be as wild in ſo much Compaſs, as if they had had the whole Iſland; and I ſhould have ſo much Room to chace them in, that I ſhould never catch them.

My Hedge was begun and carried on, I believe, about fifty Yards, when this Thought occurr'd to me; ſo I preſently ſtopp'd ſhort, and for the firſt Beginning I reſolv'd to incloſe a Piece of about 150 Yards in Length, and 100 Yards in Breadth, which as it would maintain as many as I ſhould have in any reaſonable Time, ſo, as my Flock increaſed, I could add more Ground to my Incloſure.

This was acting with ſome Prudence, and I went to work with Courage; I was about three Months hedging in the firſt Piece; and, till I had done it, I tether'd the three Kids in the beſt Part of it, and uſed them to feed as near me as poſſible, to make them familiar; and very often I would go and carry them ſome Ears of Barley, or an Handful of Rice, and feed them out of my Hand; ſo that after my Incloſure was finiſh'd, and I let them looſe, they would follow me up and down, bleating after me for an Handful of Corn.

This anſwer'd my End, and in about a Year and half, I had a Flock of about twelve Goats, Kids and all; and in two Years more I had three-and-forty, beſides ſeveral that I took and kill'd for my Food: and after that I incloſed five ſeveral Pieces of Ground to feed them in, with little Pens to drive them into, to take them as I wanted them; and Gates cut of one Piece of Ground into another.

But this was not all; for now I not only had Goat's-Fleſh to feed on when I pleas'd, but Milk too, a thing which indeed in my Beginning I did not ſo much as *think of*, and which, when it came into my Thoughts

was

was really an agreeable Surprize; for now I ſet up my Dairy, and had ſometimes a Gallon or two of Milk in a Day. And as Nature, who gives Supplies of Food to every Creature, dictates even naturally how to make uſe of it; ſo I, that never milk'd a Cow, much leſs a Goat, or ſaw Butter or Cheeſe made, very readily and handily, tho' after a great many Eſſays and Miſcarriages, made me both Butter and Cheeſe at laſt, and never wanted it afterwards.

How mercifully can our great Creator treat his Creatures, even in thoſe Conditions in which they ſeem'd to be overwhelm'd in Deſtruction! How can he ſweeten the bittereſt Providences, and give us Cauſe to praiſe him for Dungeons and Priſons! What a Table was here ſpread for me in a Wilderneſs, where I ſaw nothing at firſt but to periſh for Hunger!

It would have made a Stoic ſmile, to have ſeen me and my little Family ſit down to Dinner: There was my Majeſty, the Prince and Lord of the whole Iſland; I had the Lives of all my Subjects at abſolute Command; I could hang, draw, give Life and Liberty, and take it away, and no Rebels among all my Subjects.

Then to ſee how like a King I dined too, all alone, attended by my Servants! *Pol*, as if he had been my Favourite, was the only Perſon permitted to talk to me; my Dog, which was now grown very old and crazy, and found no Species to multiply his Kind upon, ſat always at my Right-hand; and two Cats, one on one Side the Table, and one on the other, expecting now and then a Bit from my Hand, as a Mark of ſpecial Favour.

But theſe were not the two Cats which I brought on Shore at firſt; for they were both of them dead, and had been interred near my Habitation by my own Hands; but one of them having multiply'd by I know not what kind of Creature, theſe were two which I preſerv'd tame, whereas the reſt ran wild in the Woods, and became indeed troubleſome to me at laſt; for they would often come into my Houſe, and plunder me too, till at laſt I was obliged to ſhoot them, and did kill a great many; at length they left me with this Attendance, and in this plentiful Manner I liv'd; neither could I be ſaid to want any thing but Society, and of that, in ſome time after this, I was like to have too much.

I was ſomething impatient, as I had obſerved, to have the Uſe of my Boat, tho' very loth to run any more Hazard; and therefore ſometimes I ſat contriving Ways to get her about the Iſland, and at other times I ſat myſelf down contented enough without her. But I had a ſtrange Uneaſineſs in my Mind to go down to the Point of the Iſland, where, as I have ſaid, in my laſt Ramble, I went up the Hill to ſee how the Shore lay, and how the Current ſet, that I might ſee what I had to do: This Inclination increaſed upon me every Day, and at length I reſolved to travel thither by Land, and following the Edge of the Shore, I did ſo: But had any one in *England* been to meet ſuch a Man as I was, it muſt either have frighted them, or raiſed a great deal of Laughter; and as I frequently ſtood ſtill to look at myſelf, I could not but ſmile at the Notion of my travelling thro' *Yorkſhire* with ſuch an Equipage, and in ſuch a Dreſs. Be pleaſed to take a Sketch of my Figure, as follows:

I had a great high ſhapeleſs Cap, made of Goat's-ſkin, with a Flap hanging down behind, as well to keep the Sun from me, as to ſhoot the Rain off from running into my Neck; nothing being ſo hurtful in theſe Climates, as the Rain upon the Fleſh under the Cloaths.

I had a ſhort Jacket of Goat's-ſkin, the Skirts coming down to about the Middle of my Thighs; and a Pair of open-kneed Breeches of the ſame: The Breeches were made of a Skin of an old He-Goat, whoſe Hair hung down ſuch a Length on either Side, that, like *Pantaloons*, it reach'd to the Middle of my Legs. Stockings and Shoes I had none; but I had made me a Pair of ſomething, I ſcarce knew what to call them, like Buſkins, to flap over my Legs, and lace on either Side like Spatterdaſhes; but of a moſt barbarous Shape, as indeed were all the reſt of my Cloaths.

I had on a broad Belt of Goat's-ſkin dry'd, which I drew together with two Thongs of the ſame, inſtead of Buckles; and in a kind of a Frog on either Side of this, inſtead of a Sword and Dagger, hung a little Saw and an Hatchet, one on one Side, one on the other: I had another Belt not ſo broad, and faſtened in the ſame Manner, which hung over my Shoulder; and at the End of it, under my left Arm, hung two Pouches, both made

made of Goat's-ſkin too; in one of which hung my Powder, in the other my Shot: At my Back I carried my Baſket, on my Shoulder my Gun, and over my Head a great clumſy ugly Goat-ſkin Umbrella, but which, after all, was the moſt neceſſary thing I had about me, next to my Gun: As for my Face, the Colour of it was really not ſo *Mulatto*-like, as one might expect from a Man not at all careful of it, and living within 9 or 10 Degrees of the *Equinox*. My Beard I had once ſuffer'd to grow till it was about a Quarter of a Yard long; but as I had both Sciſſars and Razors ſufficient, I had cut it pretty ſhort, except what grew on my Upper Lip, which I had trim'd into a large Pair of *Mahometan* Whiſkers, ſuch as I had ſeen worn by ſome *Turks*, whom I ſaw at *Sallee*; for the *Moors* did not wear ſuch, tho' the *Turks* did: Of theſe Muſtachios, or Whiſkers, I will not ſay they were long enough to hang my Hat upon them; but they were of a Length and Shape monſtrous enough, and ſuch as in *England* would have paſs'd for frightful.

But all this is by the bye; for as to my Figure, I had ſo few to obſerve me, that it was of no manner of Conſequence; ſo I ſay no more to that Part: In this kind of Figure I went my new Journey, and was out five or ſix Days. I travell'd firſt along the Sea-ſhore, directly to the Place where I firſt brought my Boat to an Anchor, to get up upon the Rocks; and, having no Boat now to take care of, I went over the Land a nearer Way, to the ſame Height that I was upon before; when looking forward to the Point of the Rock which lay out, and which I was to double with my Boat, as I ſaid above, I was ſurpriz'd to ſee the Sea all ſmooth and quiet; no Rippling, no Motion, no Current, any more there than in other Places.

I was at a ſtrange Loſs to underſtand this, and reſolv'd to ſpend ſome time in the obſerving it, to ſee if nothing from the Sets of the Tide had occaſion'd it: But I was preſently convinc'd how it was; *viz.* That the Tide of Ebb ſetting from the *Weſt*, and joining with the Current of Waters from ſome great River on the Shore, muſt be the Occaſion of this Current; and that according as the Wind blew more forcible from the *Weſt*, or from the *North*, this Current came near, or went farther from the Shore; for, waiting thereabouts till Evening, I went

up

up to the Rock again, and then the Tide of Ebb being made, I plainly ſaw the Current again as before, only that it ran farther off, being near half a League from the Shore; whereas, in my Caſe, it ſet cloſe upon the Shore, and hurried me in my *Canoe* along with it, which at another Time it would not have done.

This Obſervation convinc'd me, that I had nothing to do but to obſerve the Ebbing and the Flowing of the Tide, and I might very eaſily bring my Boat about the Iſland again: But when I began to think of putting it in Practice, I had ſuch a Terror upon my Spirits at the Remembrance of the Danger I had been in, that I could not think of it again with any Patience; but on the contrary, I took up another Reſolution, which was more ſafe, tho' more laborious; and this was, that I would build, or rather make me another *Periagua*, or *Canoe*; and ſo have one for one Side of the Iſland, and one for the other.

You are to underſtand, that now I had, as I may call it, two Plantations in the Iſland; one my little Fortification or Tent, with the Wall about it under the Rock, with the Cave behind me, which by this Time I had inlarg'd into ſeveral Apartments or Caves, one within another. One of theſe, which was the drieſt, and largeſt, and had a Door out beyond my Wall or Fortification, that is to ſay, beyond where my Wall join'd to the Rock, was all fill'd up with the large earthen Pots, of which I have given an Account, and with fourteen or fifteen great Baſkets, which would hold five or ſix Buſhels each, where I laid up my Stores of Proviſion, eſpecially my Corn, ſome in the Ear cut off ſhort from the Straw, and the other rubb'd out with my Hand.

As for my Wall made, *as before*, with long Stakes or Piles, thoſe Piles grew all like Trees, and were by this time grown ſo big, and ſpread ſo very much, that there was not the leaſt Appearance, to any one's View, of any Habitation behind them.

Near this Dwelling of mine, but a little farther within the Land, and upon lower Ground, lay my two Pieces of Corn-ground; which I kept duly cultivated and ſow'd, and which duly yielded me their Harveſt in its Seaſon; and whenever I had Occaſion for more Corn, I had more *Land adjoining* as fit as that.

Be-

Beſides this, I had my Country-Seat, and I had now a tolerable Plantation there alſo; for firſt, I had my little Bower, as I call'd it, which I kept in Repair; *that is to ſay*, I kept the Hedge which circled it in, conſtantly fitted up to its uſual Height, the Ladder ſtanding always in the Inſide; I kept the Trees, which at firſt were no more than my Stakes, but were now grown very firm and tall; I kept them always ſo cut, that they might ſpread and grow thick and wild, and make the more agreeable Shade, which they did effectually to my Mind. In the Middle of this I had my Tent always ſtanding, being a Piece of a Sail ſpread over Poles ſet up for that Purpoſe, and which never wanted any Repair or Renewing; and under this I had made me a Squab or Couch, with the Skins of the Creatures I had kill'd, and with other ſoft Things, and a Blanket laid on them, ſuch as belong'd to our Sea Bedding, which I had ſaved, and a great Watch-coat to cover me; and here, whenever I had occaſion to be abſent from my chief Seat, I took up my Country Habitation.

Adjoining to this I had my Incloſures for my Cattle, that is to ſay, my Goats: And as I had taken an inconceivable deal of Pains to fence and incloſe this Ground, I was ſo uneaſy to ſee it kept intire, leſt the Goats ſhould break thro', that I never left off, till with infinite Labour I had ſtruck the Outſide of the Hedge ſo full of ſmall Stakes, and ſo near to one another, that it was rather a Pale than an Hedge, and there was ſcarce room to put an Hand thro' between them, which afterwards, when thoſe Stakes grew, as they all did in the next rainy Seaſon, made the Incloſure ſtrong, like a Wall, indeed ſtronger than any Wall.

This will teſtify for me that I was not idle, and that I ſpared no Pains to bring to paſs whatever appear'd neceſſary for my comfortable Support; for I conſider'd the keeping up a Breed of tame Creatures thus at my Hand, would be a living Magazine of Fleſh, Milk, Butter and Cheeſe, for me, as long as I liv'd in the Place, if it were to be forty Years; and that keeping them in my Reach, depended intirely upon my perfecting my Incloſures to ſuch a Degree, that I might be ſure of keeping them together; which by this Method indeed I ſo effectually ſecured, that when theſe little Stakes began

began to grow, I had planted them ſo very thick, I was forced to pull ſome of them up again.

In this Place alſo I had my Grapes growing, which I principally depended on for my Winter Store of Raiſins, and which I never fail'd to preſerve very carefully, as the beſt and moſt agreeable Dainty of my whole Diet; and indeed they were not agreeable only, but phyſical, wholeſome, nouriſhing and refreſhing to the laſt Degree.

As this was alſo about half-way between my other Habitation and the Place where I had laid up my Boat, I generally ſtaid and lay here in my Way thither; for I uſed frequently to viſit my Boat, and I kept all things about or belonging to her in very good Order; ſometimes I went out in her to divert myſelf, but no more hazardous Voyages would I go, nor ſcarce ever above a Stone's Caſt or two from the Shore. I was ſo apprehenſive of being hurried out of my Knowledge again by the Currents, or Winds, or any other Accident: But now I come to a new Scene of my Life.

It happen'd one Day about Noon, going towards my Boat, I was exceedingly ſurpriz'd with the Print of a Man's naked Foot on the Shore, which was very plain to be ſeen in the Sand: I ſtood like one thunder-ſtruck, or as if I had ſeen an Apparition; I liſten'd, I look'd round me, I could hear nothing, nor ſee any thing; I went up to a riſing Ground to look farther: I went up the Shore, and down the Shore, but it was all one, I could ſee no other Impreſſion but that one: I went to it again to ſee if there were any more, and to obſerve if it might not be my Fancy; but there was no room for that, for there was exactly the very Print of a Foot, Toes, Heel, and every Part of a Foot; how it came thither, I knew not, nor could in the leaſt imagine. But after innumerable fluttering Thoughts, like a Man perfectly confuſed, and out of myſelf, I came home to my Fortification, not feeling, as we ſay, the Ground I went on, but terrify'd to the laſt Degree, looking behind me at every two or three Steps, miſtaking every Buſh and Tree, and fanſying every Stump at a Diſtance to be a Man; nor is it poſſible to deſcribe, how many various Shapes an affrighted Imagination repreſented things to me in; how many wild Ideas were form'd every Moment in my Fancy, and what ſtrange unaccountable *Whimſies* came into my Thoughts by the Way.

When

When I came to my Caſtle, for ſo I think I call'd it ever after this, I fled into it like one purſu'd; whether I went over by the Ladder, as firſt contriv'd, or went in at the Hole in the Rock, which I call'd a Door, I cannot remember; for never frighted Hare fled to Cover, or Fox to Earth, with more Terror of Mind than I to this Retreat.

I had no Sleep that Night; the farther I was from the Occaſion of my Fright, the greater my Apprehenſions were; which is ſomething contrary to the Nature of ſuch things, and eſpecially to the uſual Practice of all Creatures in Fear: But I was ſo embarraſs'd with my own frightful Ideas of the thing, that I form'd nothing but diſmal Imaginations to myſelf, even tho' I was now a great Way off it. Sometimes I fanſy'd it muſt be the Devil; and Reaſon join'd in with me upon this Suppoſition: For how ſhould any other thing in human Shape come into the Place? Where was the Veſſel that brought them? What Marks were there of any other Footſteps? And how was it poſſible a Man ſhould come there? But then to think that *Satan* ſhould take human Shape upon him in ſuch a Place where there could be no manner of Occaſion for it, but to leave the Print of his Foot behind him, and that even for no Purpoſe too (for he could not be ſure I ſhould ſee it,) this was an Amazement the other way: I conſider'd that the Devil might have found out abundance of other Ways to have terrified me, than this of the ſingle Print of a Foot: That as I liv'd quite on the other Side of the Iſland, he would never have been ſo ſimple to leave a Mark in a Place where it was ten thouſand to one whether I ſhould ever ſee it or not, and in the Sand too, which the firſt Surge of the Sea upon an high Wind would have defac'd intirely: All this ſeem'd inconſiſtent with the thing itſelf, and with all Notions we uſually entertain of the Subtlety of the Devil.

Abundance of ſuch things as theſe aſſiſted to argue me out of all Apprehenſions of its being the Devil: And I preſently concluded then, that it muſt be ſome more dangerous Creature; *viz.* That it muſt be ſome of the Savages of the main Land over-againſt me, who had wandered out to Sea in their *Canoes*, and, either driven by the Currents, or by contrary Winds, had made the

Iſland; and had been on Shore, but were gone away again to Sea, being as loth, perhaps, to have ſtaid in this deſolate Iſland, as I would have been to have had them

While theſe Reflections were rolling upon my Mind, I was very thankful in my Thought, that I was ſo happy as not to be thereabouts at that Time, or that they did not ſee my Boat, by which they would have concluded, that ſome Inhabitants had been in the Place, and perhaps have ſearch'd farther for me: Then terrible Thoughts rack'd my Imaginations about their having found my Boat, and that there were People here; and that if ſo, I ſhould certainly have them come again in greater Numbers, and devour me; that if it ſhould happen ſo that they ſhould not find me, yet they would find my Incloſure, deſtroy all my Corn, carry away all my Flock of tame Goats, and I ſhould periſh at laſt for mere Want.

Thus my Fear baniſh'd all my religious Hope; all that former Confidence in God, which was founded upon ſuch wonderful Experience as I had had of his Goodneſs, now vaniſh'd; as if he that had fed me by Miracle hitherto, could not preſerve by his Power the Proviſion which he had made for me by his Goodneſs. I reproached myſelf with my Eaſineſs, that would not ſow any more Corn one Year than would juſt ſerve me till the next Seaſon, as if no Accident could intervene to prevent my enjoying the Crop that was upon the Ground: And this I thought ſo juſt a Reproof, that I reſolv'd for the future to have two or three Years Corn before-hand, ſo that whatever might come, I might not periſh for want of Bread.

How ſtrange a Chequer-work of Providence is the Life of Man! And by what ſecret differing Springs are the Affections hurried about, as differing Circumſtances preſent! To-day we love what To-morrow we hate; To-day we ſeek what To-morrow we ſhun; To-day we deſire what To-morrow we fear; nay, even tremble at the Apprehenſions of. This was exemplified in me at this Time in the moſt lively Manner imaginable; for I, whoſe only Affliction was, that I ſeem'd baniſh'd from human Society, that I was alone, circumſcrib'd by the boundleſs Ocean, cut off from Mankind, and condemn'd

to

to what I call ſilent Life; that I was as one whom Heaven thought not worthy to be number'd among the Living, or to appear among the reſt of his Creatures; that to have ſeen one of my own Species, would have ſeem'd to me a raiſing me from Death to Life, and the greateſt Bleſſing that Heaven itſelf, next to the ſupreme Bleſſing of Salvation, could beſtow; I ſay, that I ſhould now tremble at the very Apprehenſions of ſeeing a Man, and was ready to ſink into the Ground, at but the Shadow, or ſilent Appearance of a Man's having ſet his Foot on the Iſland.

Such is the uneven State of Human Life; and it afforded me a great many curious Speculations afterwards, when I had a little recovered my firſt Surprize; I conſidered that this was the Station of Life, the infinitely wiſe and good Providence of God had determined for me; that as I could not foreſee what the Ends of Divine Wiſdom might be in all this, ſo I was not to diſpute his Sovereignty, who, as I was his Creature, had an undoubted Right by Creation to govern and diſpoſe of me abſolutely as he thought fit; and who, as I was a Creature who had offended him, had likewiſe a judicial Right to condemn me to what Puniſhment he thought fit; and that it was my Part to ſubmit to bear his Indignation, becauſe I had ſinn'd againſt him.

I then reflected, that God, who was not only Righteous, but Omnipotent, as he had thought fit thus to puniſh and afflict me, ſo he was able to deliver me; that if he did not think fit to do it, it was my unqueſtioned Duty to reſign myſelf abſolutely and intirely to his Will: And, on the other hand, it was my Duty alſo to hope in him, pray to him, and quietly to attend the Dictates and Directions of his daily Providence.

Theſe Thoughts took me up many Hours, Days, nay, I may ſay, Weeks and Months; and one particular Effect of my Cogitations on this Occaſion, I cannot omit; *viz.* One Morning early, lying in my Bed, and fill'd with Thoughts about my Danger from the Appearance of Savages, I found it diſcompoſed me very much; upon which thoſe Words of the Scripture came into my Thoughts, *Call upon me in the Day of Trouble, and I will deliver thee, and thou ſhalt glorify me.*

Upon this, riſing chearfully out of my Bed, my Heart was not only comforted, but I was guided and encouraged to pray earneſtly to God for Deliverance: When I had done praying, I took up my Bible, and opening it to read, the firſt Words that preſented to me, were, *Wait on the Lord, and be of good Chear, and he ſhall ſtrengthen thy Heart: wait, I ſay, on the Lord.* It is impoſſible to expreſs the Comfort this gave me; and in Return, I thankfully laid down the Book, and was no more ſad, at leaſt, not on that Occaſion.

In the Middle of theſe Cogitations, Apprehenſions, and Reflections, it came into my Thoughts one Day, that all this might be a mere Chimera of my own, and that this Foot might be the Print of my own Foot, when I came on ſhore from my Boat: This chear'd me up a little too, and I began to perſuade myſelf it was all a Deluſion; that it was nothing elſe but my own Foot; and why might not I come that Way from the Boat, as well as I was going that Way to the Boat? Again, I conſider'd alſo, that I could by no means tell for certain where I had trod, and where I had not; and that if at laſt this was only the Print of my own Foot, I had play'd the Part of thoſe Fools, who ſtrive to make Stories of Spectres and Apparitions, and then are themſelves frighted at them more than any body elſe.

Now I began to take Courage, and to peep abroad again; for I had not ſtir'd out of my Caſtle for three Days and Nights, ſo that I began to ſtarve for Proviſion; for I had little or nothing within Doors, but ſome Barley-cakes and Water. Then I knew, that my Goats wanted to be milked too, which uſually was my Evening Diverſion; and the poor Creatures were in great Pain and Inconvenience for want of it; and indeed it almoſt ſpoil'd ſome of them, and almoſt dry'd up their Milk.

Heartening myſelf therefore with the Belief, that this was nothing but the Print of one of my own Feet (and ſo I might be truly ſaid to ſtart at my own Shadow,) I began to go abroad again, and went to my Country-Houſe to milk my Flock; but to ſee with what Fear I went forward, how often I look'd behind me, how I was ready, every now-and-then, to lay down my Baſket, and run for my Life, it would have made any one have

have thought I was haunted with an evil Conſcience, or that I had been lately moſt terribly frighted; and ſo indeed I had.

However, as I went down thus two or three Days, and having ſeen nothing, I began to be a little bolder, and to think there was really nothing in it but my own Imagination; but I could not perſuade myſelf fully of this, till I ſhould go down to the Shore again, and ſee this Print of a Foot, and meaſure it by my own, and ſee if there was any Similitude or Fitneſs, that I might be aſſured it was my own Foot: But when I came to the Place firſt, it appear'd evidently to me, that when I laid up my Boat, I could not poſſibly be on Shore any-where thereabouts: Secondly, when I came to meaſure the Mark with my own Foot, I found my Foot not ſo large by a great deal: Both theſe things fill'd my Head with new Imaginations, and gave me the Vapours again to the higheſt Degree; ſo that I ſhook with Cold, like one in an Ague, and I went home again, fill'd with the Belief, that ſome Man or Men had been on Shore there; or, in ſhort, that the Iſland was inhabited, and I might be ſurpriz'd before I was aware; and what Courſe to take for my Security, I knew not.

O what ridiculous Reſolutions Men take, when poſſeſs'd with Fear! It deprives them of the Uſe of thoſe Means, which Reaſon offers for their Relief. The firſt thing I propoſed to myſelf was, to throw down my Incloſures, and turn all my tame Cattle wild into the Woods, that the Enemy might not find them, and then frequent the Iſland in Proſpect of the ſame, or the like Booty; then to the ſimple thing of digging up my two Corn-fields, that they might not find ſuch a Grain there, and ſtill be prompted to frequent the Iſland; then to demoliſh my Bower and Tent, that they might not ſee any Veſtiges of my Habitation, and be prompted to look farther, in order to find out the Perſons inhabiting.

Theſe were the Subjects of the firſt Night's Cogitation, after I was come home again, while the Apprehenſions which had ſo over-run my Mind were freſh upon me, and my Head was full of Vapours, as above. Thus Fear of Danger is ten thouſand times more terrifying than Danger itſelf, when apparent to the Eyes; and we find the Bur-

den of Anxiety, greater by much, than the Evil which we are anxious about; but, which was worſe than all this, I had not that Relief in this Trouble for the Reſignation I uſed to practiſe, that I hoped to have. I look'd, I thought, like *Saul*, who complained not only that the *Philiſtines* were upon him, but that God had forſaken him; for I did not now take due ways to compoſe my Mind, by crying to God in my Diſtreſs, and reſting upon his Providence, as I had done before, for my Defence and Deliverance; which if I had done, I had, at leaſt, been more chearfully ſupported under this new Surprize, and perhaps carried through it with more Reſolution.

This Confuſion of my Thoughts kept me waking all Night; but in the Morning I fell aſleep, and having by the Amuſement of my Mind been, as it were, tired, and my Spirits exhauſted, I ſlept very ſoundly, and awak'd much better compos'd than I had ever been before: And now I began to think ſedately; and, upon the utmoſt Debate with myſelf, I concluded, that this Iſland, which was ſo exceeding pleaſant, fruitful, and no farther from the main Land than as I had ſeen, was not ſo intirely abandon'd as I might imagine: That altho' there were no ſtated Inhabitants who liv'd on the Spot; yet that there might ſometimes come Boats off from the Shore, who either with Deſign, or perhaps never but when they were driven by croſs Winds, might come to this Place.

That I had lived here 15 Years now, and had not met with the leaſt Shadow or Figure of any People before; and that if at any time they ſhould be driven here, it was probable they went away again as ſoon as ever they could, ſeeing they had never thought fit to fix there upon any Occaſion, to this Time.

That the moſt I could ſuggeſt any Danger from, was, from any ſuch caſual accidental Landing of ſtraggling People from the Main, who, as it was likely, if they were driven hither, were here againſt their Wills; ſo they made no Stay here, but went off again with all poſſible Speed, ſeldom ſtaying one Night on Shore, leſt they ſhould not have the Help of the Tides and Day-light back again; and that therefore I had nothing to do but to conſider of ſome ſafe Retreat, in caſe I ſhould ſee any Savages land upon the Spot.

Now

Now I began ſorely to repent, that I had dug my Cave ſo large, as to bring a Door through again, which Door, as I ſaid, came out beyond where my Fortification join'd to the Rock. Upon maturely conſidering this therefore, I reſolv'd to draw me a ſecond Fortification, in the ſame Manner of a Semicircle, at a Diſtance from my Wall, juſt where I had planted a double Row of Trees about twelve Years before, of which I made mention: Theſe Trees having been planted ſo thick before, there wanted but a few Piles to be driven between them, that they ſhould be thicker and ſtronger, and my Wall would be ſoon finiſh'd.

So that I had now a double Wall, and my outer Wall was thickened with Pieces of Timber, old Cables, and every thing I could think of to make it ſtrong; having in it ſeven little Holes, about as big as I might put my Arm out at. In the Inſide of this I thickened my Wall to about ten Feet thick, continually bringing Earth out of my Cave, and laying it at the Foot of the Wall, and walking upon it; and through the ſeven Holes I contriv'd to plant the Muſquets, of which I took notice, that I got ſeven on Shore out of the Ship; theſe, I ſay, I planted like my Cannon, and fitted them into Frames that held them like a Carriage, that ſo I could fire all the ſeven Guns in two Minutes time: This Wall I was many a weary Month in finiſhing, and yet never thought myſelf ſafe till it was done.

When this was done, I ſtuck all the Ground without my Wall, for a great Way every Way, as full with Stakes or Sticks of the Oſier-like Wood, which I found ſo apt to grow, as they could well ſtand; inſomuch that I believe I might ſet in near twenty thouſand of them, leaving a pretty large Space between them and my Wall, that I might have room to ſee an Enemy, and they might have no Shelter from the young Trees, if they attempted to approach my outer Wall.

Thus in two Years Time I had a thick Grove; and in five or ſix Years Time I had a Wood before my Dwelling, grown ſo monſtrous thick and ſtrong, that it was indeed perfectly impaſſable; and no Man of what kind ſoever, would ever imagine, that there was any thing beyond it, much leſs an Habitation: As for the Way I propoſed to myſelf to go in and out (for I left no

Avenue) it was by ſetting two Ladders; one to a Part of the Rock which was low, and then broke in, and left room to place another Ladder upon that; ſo when the two Ladders were taken down, no Man living could come down to me without miſchiefing himſelf; and if they had come down, they were ſtill on the Outſide of my outer Wall.

Thus I took all the Meaſures human Prudence could ſuggeſt for my own Preſervation; and it will be ſeen at length, that they were not altogether without juſt Reaſon; tho' I foreſaw nothing at that time, more than my mere Fear ſuggeſted to me.

While this was doing, I was not altogether careleſs of my other Affairs; for I had a great Concern upon me for my little Herd of Goats; they were not only a preſent Supply to me upon every Occaſion, and began to be ſufficient to me, without the Expence of Powder and Shot, but alſo abated the Fatigue of my hunting after the wild ones; and I was loth to loſe the Advantage of them, and to have them all to nurſe up over again.

To this Purpoſe, after long Conſideration, I could think of but two Ways to preſerve them; one was to find another convenient Place to dig a Cave under ground, and to drive them into it every Night; and the other was to incloſe two or three little Bits of Land, remote from one another, and as much conceal'd as I could, where I might keep about half a dozen young Goats in each Place; ſo that if any Diſaſter happen'd to the Flock in general, I might be able to raiſe them again with little Trouble and Time: And this, tho' it would require a great deal of Time and Labour, I thought was the moſt rational Deſign.

Accordingly I ſpent ſome Time, to find out the moſt retired Parts of the Iſland; and I pitch'd upon one, which was as private indeed as my Heart could wiſh; for it was a little damp Piece of Ground in the Middle of the hollow and thick Woods, where, as is obſerv'd, I almoſt loſt myſelf once before, endeavouring to come back that Way from the Eaſtern Part of the Iſland: Here I found a clear Piece of Land near three Acres, ſo ſurrounded with Woods, that it was almoſt an *Incloſure by* Nature; at leaſt, it did not want near ſo much

Labour

Labour to make it ſo, as the other Pieces of Ground I had work'd ſo hard at.

I immediately went to work with this Piece of Ground, and in leſs than a Month's Time I had ſo fenced it round, that my Flock or Herd, call it which you pleaſe, which were not ſo wild now as at firſt they might be ſuppoſed to be, were well enough ſecured in it. So without any farther Delay, I removed ten She-Goats and two He-Goats to this Piece; and when they were there, I continued to perfect the Fence, till I had made it as ſecure as the other, which, however, I did at more Leiſure, and it took me up more Time by a great deal.

All this Labour I was at the Expence of, purely from my Apprehenſions on the Account of the Print of a Man's Foot which I had ſeen; for as yet, I never ſaw any human Creature come near the Iſland, and I had now liv'd two Years under theſe Uneaſineſſes, which indeed made my Life much leſs comfortable than it was before; as may well be imagin'd, by any who know what it is to live in the conſtant Snare of *the Fear of Man*; and this I muſt obſerve with Grief too, that the Diſcompoſure of my Mind had too great Impreſſions alſo upon the religious Part of my Thoughts; for the Dread and Terror of falling into the Hands of Savages and Canibals lay ſo upon my Spirits, that I ſeldom found myſelf in a due Temper for Application to my Maker; at leaſt, not with the ſedate Calmneſs and Reſignation of Soul which I was wont to do. I rather pray'd to God as under great Affliction and Preſſure of Mind, ſurrounded with Danger, and in Expectation every Night of being murder'd and devour'd before Morning; and I muſt teſtify from my Experience, that a Temper of Peace, Thankfulneſs, Love and Affection, is much the more proper Frame for Prayer than that of Terror and Diſcompoſure; and that under the Dread of Miſchief impending, a Man is no more fit for a comforting Performance of the Duty of praying to God, than he is for Repentance on a ſick Bed; for theſe Diſcompoſures affect the Mind as the others do the Body; and the Diſcompoſure of the Mind muſt neceſſarily be as great a Diſability as that of the Body, and much greater; praying to God being properly an Act of the Mind, not of the Body.

But to go on; after I had thus ſecur'd one Part of my little living Stock, I went about the whole Iſland, ſearching for another private Place, to make ſuch another Depoſit; when wandering more to the Weſt Point of the Iſland than I had ever done yet, and looking out to Sea, I thought I ſaw a Boat upon the Sea, at a great Diſtance; I had found a Perſpective-glaſs or two, in one of the Seamen's Cheſts, which I ſav'd out of our Ship; but I had it not about me, and this was ſo remote, that I could not tell what to make of it, though I look'd at it till my Eyes were not able too look any longer; whether it was a Boat, or not, I do not know; but as I deſcended from the Hill, I could ſee no more of it, ſo I gave it over; only I reſolv'd to go no more without a Perſpective-glaſs in my Pocket.

When I was come down the Hill, to the End of the Iſland, where indeed I had never been before, I was preſently convinc'd, that the ſeeing the Print of a Man's Foot, was not ſuch a ſtrange thing in the Iſland as I imagin'd; and, but that it was a ſpecial Providence that I was caſt upon the Side of the Iſland, where the Savages never came, I ſhould eaſily have known, that nothing was more frequent than for the *Canoes* from the Main, when they happen'd to be a little too far out at Sea, to ſhoot over to that Side of the Iſland for Harbour; likewiſe, as they often met, and fought in their *Canoes*, the Victors, having taken any Priſoners, would bring them over to this Shore, where, according to their dreadful Cuſtoms, being all Canibals, they would kill and eat them: Of which hereafter.

When I was come down the Hill to the Shore, as I ſaid above, being the S. W. Point of the Iſland, I was perfectly confounded and amaz'd; nor is it poſſible for me to expreſs the Horror of my Mind, at ſeeing the Shore ſpread with Skulls, Hands, Feet, and other Bones of human Bodies; and particularly I obſerv'd a Place where there had been a Fire made, and a Circle dug in the Earth, like a Cock-pit, where it is ſuppoſed the ſavage Wretches had ſat down to their inhuman Feaſtings upon the Bodies of their Fellow-Creatures.

I was ſo aſtoniſh'd with the Sight of theſe things, that I entertain'd no Notions of any Danger to myſelf *from it, for* a long while; all my Apprehenſions were

buried

buried in the Thoughts of ſuch a Pitch of inhuman, helliſh Brutality, and the Horror of the Degeneracy of human Nature; which, tho' I had heard of often, yet I never had ſo near a View of before; in ſhort, I turned away my Face from the horrid Spectacle; my Stomach grew ſick, and I was juſt at the Point of fainting, when Nature diſcharged the Diſorder from my Stomach, and, having vomited with an uncommon Violence, I was a little relieved, but could not bear to ſtay in the Place a Moment; ſo I got me up the Hill again, with all the Speed I could, and walk'd on towards my own Habitation.

When I came a little out of that Part of the Iſland, I ſtood ſtill a while as amaz'd; and then recovering myſelf, I looked up with the utmoſt Affection of my Soul, and, with a Flood of Tears in my Eyes, gave God Thanks, that had caſt my firſt Lot in a Part of the World, where I was diſtinguiſhed from ſuch dreadful Creatures as theſe; and that though I had eſteemed my preſent Condition very miſerable, had yet given me ſo many Comforts in it, that I had ſtill more to give Thanks for, than to complain of; and this above all, that I had, even in this miſerable Condition, been comforted with the Knowledge of Himſelf, and the Hope of his Bleſſing, which was a Felicity more than ſufficiently equivalent to all the Miſery which I had ſuffered, or could ſuffer.

In this Frame of Thankfulneſs, I went home to my Caſtle, and began to be much eaſier now, as to the Safety of my Circumſtances, than ever I was before; for I obſerv'd, that theſe Wretches never came to this Iſland in Search of what they could get; perhaps not ſeeking, not wanting, or not expecting, any thing here; and having often, no doubt, been up in the cover'd woody Part of it, without finding any thing to their Purpoſe: I knew I had been here now almoſt eighteen Years, and never ſaw the leaſt Footſteps of a human Creature there before; and might be here eighteen more as intirely conceal'd as I was now, if I did not diſcover myſelf to them, which I had no manner of Occaſion to do, it being my only Buſineſs to keep myſelf intirely conceal'd, where I was, unleſs I found a

better

better Sort of Creatures than Canibals to make myſelf known to.

Yet I entertain'd ſuch an Abhorrence of the ſavage Wretches that I have been ſpeaking of, and of the wretched inhuman Cuſtom of their devouring and eating one another up, that I continued penſive and ſad, and kept cloſe within my own Circle for almoſt two Years after this: When I ſay my own Circle, I mean by it, my three Plantations, *viz.* my Caſtle, my Country-Seat, which I call'd my Bower, and my Incloſure in the Woods; nor did I look after this for any other Uſe, than as an Incloſure for my Goats; for the Averſion which Nature gave me to theſe hellish Wretches was ſuch, that I was as fearful of ſeeing them, as of ſeeing the Devil himſelf; nor did I ſo much as go to look after my Boat in all this Time, but began rather to think of making me another; for I could not think of ever making any more Attempts to bring the other Boat round the Iſland to me, leſt I ſhould meet with ſome of thoſe Creatures at Sea, in which, if I had happen'd to have fallen into their Hands, I knew what would have been my Lot.

Time however, and the Satisfaction I had, that I was in no Danger of being diſcover'd by theſe People, began to wear off my Uneaſineſs about them; and I began to live juſt in the ſame compos'd manner as before; only with this Difference, that I us'd more Caution, and kept my Eyes more about me, than I did before, leſt I ſhould happen to be ſeen by any of them; and particularly, I was more cautious in firing my Gun, leſt any of them on the Iſland ſhould happen to hear it; and it was therefore a very good Providence to me, that I had furniſh'd myſelf with a tame Breed of Goats, that I had no need to hunt any more about the Woods, or ſhoot at them; and if I did catch any more of them after this, it was by Traps and Snares, as I had done before; ſo that for two Years after this, I believe, I never fir'd my Gun once off, though I never went out without it; and, which was more, as I had ſav'd three Piſtols out of the Ship, I always carried them out with me, or at leaſt two of them, ſticking them in my Goat-ſkin Belt: I likewiſe furbiſh'd up one of the great Cutlaces that I had *out of the* Ship, and made me a Belt to put it on alſo;

ſo

ſo that I was now a moſt formidable Fellow to look at, when I went abroad, if you add to the former Deſcription of myſelf, the Particular of two Piſtols, and a great broad Sword, hanging at my Side in a Belt, but without a Scabbard.

Things going on thus, as I have ſaid, for ſome time, I ſeemed, excepting theſe Cautions, to be reduced to my former calm ſedate Way of living; all theſe things tended to ſhew me more and more how far my Condition was from being miſerable, compared to ſome others; nay, to many other Particulars of Life, which it might have pleaſed God to have made my Lot. It put me upon reflecting, how little repining there would be among Mankind, at any Condition of Life, if People would rather compare their Condition with thoſe that are worſe, in order to be thankful, than be always comparing them with thoſe which are better, to aſſiſt their Murmurings and Complainings.

As in my preſent Condition there were not really many things which I wanted, ſo indeed I thought that the Frights I had been in about theſe ſavage Wretches, and the Concern I had been in for my own Preſervation, had taken off the Edge of my Invention for my own Conveniencies, and I had dropt a good Deſign, which I had once bent my Thoughts upon; and that was, to try if I could not make ſome of my Barley into Malt, and then try to brew myſelf ſome Beer: This was really a whimſical Thought, and I reprov'd myſelf often for the Simplicity of it; for I preſently ſaw there would be the Want of ſeveral things neceſſary to the making my Beer, that it would be impoſſible for me to ſupply; as, firſt, Caſks to preſerve it in, which was a thing that, as I have obſerv'd already, I could never compaſs; no, tho' I ſpent, not many Days, but Weeks, nay, Months, in attempting it, but to no Purpoſe. In the next place, I had no Hops to make it keep, no Yeſt to make it work, no Copper or Kettle to make it boil; and yet, had not all theſe things interven'd, I mean the Frights and Terrors I was in about the Savages, I had undertaken it, and perhaps brought it to paſs too; for I ſeldom gave any thing over without accompliſhing it, when I once had it in my Head enough to begin it.

But my Invention now ran quite another Way; for Night and Day I could think of nothing, but how I might deſtroy ſome of theſe Monſters in their cruel bloody Entertainment; and, if poſſible, ſave the Victim they ſhou'd bring hither to deſtroy. It would take up a larger Volume than this whole Work is intended to be, to ſet down all the Contrivances I hatched, or rather brooded upon in my Thoughts, for the deſtroying theſe Creatures, or at leaſt frighting them, ſo as to prevent their coming hither any more; but all was abortive; nothing could be poſſible to take Effect, unleſs I was to be there to do it myſelf; and what could one Man do among them, when perhaps there might be twenty or thirty of them together, with their Darts, or their Bows and Arrows, with which they could ſhoot as true to a Mark, as I could with my Gun?

Sometimes I contriv'd to dig an Hole under the Place where they made their Fire, and put in five or ſix Pounds of Gunpowder, which, when they kindled their Fire, would conſequently take Fire, and blow up all that was near it; but, as in the firſt Place I ſhould be very loth to waſte ſo much Powder upon them, my Store being now within the Quantity of a Barrel; ſo neither could I be ſure of its going off at any certain Time, when it might ſurprize them; and, at beſt, that it would do little more than juſt blow the Fire about their Ears, and fright them, but not ſufficient to make them forſake the Place; ſo I laid it aſide, and then propoſed, that I would place myſelf in Ambuſh, in ſome convenient Place, with my three Guns all double loaded, and in the middle of their bloody Ceremony let fly at them, when I ſhould be ſure to kill or wound perhaps two or three at every Shoot; and then falling in upon them with my three Piſtols, and my Sword, I made no Doubt but that, if there were twenty, I ſhould kill them all. This Fancy pleaſed my Thoughts for ſome Weeks, and I was ſo full of it, that I often dreamt of it; and ſometimes, that I was juſt going to let fly at them in my Sleep.

I went ſo far with it in my Indignation, that I employ'd myſelf ſeveral Days, to find out proper Places to put myſelf in Ambuſcade, as I ſaid, to watch for them; and I went frequently to the Place itſelf, which was

now

more prosperous familiar to me; and especially while my Mind was thus filled with Thoughts of Prosperity, and of a bloody pursuing twenty or thirty of them to the Spanish, as I may call it; but the Horror I had at the Place, and at the Spanish of the barbarous Wretches devouring one another, abated my Malice.

Well, at length I found a Place in the Side of the Hill, where I was satisfied I might be safe, that no Savage would find me, or see me coming, and might there, even before they would be ready to come on Shore, comfortably rout and defeat the Devil of them, in one of which there was room to lie down enough to conceal me entirely; and where I might lie, and observe all their bloody Doings, and take my full Aim at their Heads, when they were thick together, so that it would be next to impossible that I should miss my Shot, or that I should not kill or wound three or four of them at the first Shot.

In this Place then I set down to fix my Defence, and resolutely I propos'd to die there, and lay me down by the Loss of Life, rather than be eaten by Savages. The two Muskets I loaded with a Brace of Slugs each, and four or five Pistols I loaded with about the Size of Pullet Shot; and the Powder-horn I loaded with near an Handful of Swan-Shot, of the Large Size; I also took my Fifty Pieces of Money, and Powder and Ball. And in this Posture, well provided for Battle, I spent the Night; but no Rest to my Eyes, nor Sleep, I kept Guard all the Night long.

About Day-break, to my great Joy, I heard no more of them; which I concluded thus, that they always went off to their Boats with the Tide, which was now going from me, and I was glad I had not been attacked before I was stirring, and in a Condition to defend myself. As soon as it was Light, and I could see three Miles or more, I look'd all round me, but could perceive nothing, only I was not perfectly out of Fear, but resolved to continue upon the Guard, and not go down into the Plain, or stir from my Castle, as I call'd it, any Way.

About Noon, when I began to think of my Dinner, I was exceedingly surprised with the Sight of Nine Canoes coming to the Shore, all together, upon the Point of the Bay, which came from the Creek where I first landed, and where I resolved to fix my Habitation. They came all on Shore, and I could plainly see that their Coming was with the Tide, for they all put off again with the Ebb, before I came from my Castle. They were so far off, that I could not distinguish what they were doing, but I observed that they had Two Prisoners, which the Event plainly showed; for when they were all landed, One of the Prisoners was soon knocked down, as I suppose, by the Others, and cut open for Dressing, that is, to be eaten, as I shall hereafter describe more particularly. While this was doing, the other Prisoner, who stood by, expecting his Fate, and in the Interval of Time, while he saw no Body regarded him, he suddenly took to his Heels, and ran with incredible Swiftness along the Sands, directly the Length of the Bay, that is, from the Right to the Left, just before the Face of my Castle, and so directly towards that Part where I expected he would come on Shore.

I was dreadfully frighted, I confess, when I saw him run my Way, and supposed, as I thought he was pursued by the whole Body, that he would certainly take Shelter in my Cave; but I was presently convinced that I was mistaken. He had Two Pursuers, who were much nimbler Footmen than he, and who gained upon him so fast, that they would certainly take him before he could get to the Place. When I saw this, I began to prepare myself to fall upon them all, for I was convinced that the Two Pursuers would be my own, if I could but kill the rest. They both came up to the Dead Man, and fell upon him too, as if they would murder him there, and began to drag him away; upon which I began to move, and resolved to fall upon them.

ſign, and my Spirits ſeemed to be all the while in a ſuitable Frame, for ſo outrageous an Execution, as the killing twenty or thirty naked Savages for an Offence, which I had not at all enter'd into a Diſcuſſion of in my Thoughts, any further than my Paſſions were at firſt fired by the Horror I conceiv'd at the unnatural Cuſtom of the People of that Country, who, it ſeems, had been ſuffered by Providence, in his wiſe Diſpoſition of the World, to have no other Guide than that of their own abominable and vitiated Paſſions; and conſequently were left, and perhaps had been for ſome Ages, to act ſuch horrid things, and receive ſuch dreadful Cuſtoms, as nothing but Nature, intirely abandon'd of Heaven, and actuated by ſome helliſh Degeneracy, could have run them into: But now, when, as I have ſaid, I began to be weary of the fruitleſs Excurſion which I had made ſo long, and ſo far, every Morning in vain; ſo my Opinion of the Action itſelf began to alter, and I began with cooler and calmer Thoughts to conſider what it was I was going to engage in; what Authority or Call I had, to pretend to be Judge and Executioner upon theſe Men as Criminals, whom Heaven had thought fit for ſo many Ages to ſuffer, unpuniſhed, to go on, and to be, as it were, the Executioners of his Judgments upon one another; alſo how far theſe People were Offenders againſt me, and what Right I had to engage in the Quarrel of that Blood, which they ſhed promiſcuouſly one upon another: I debated this very often with myſelf thus; How do I know what God himſelf judges in this particular Caſe? It is certain theſe People do not commit this as a Crime; it is not againſt their own Conſciences reproving, or their Light reproaching them. They do not know it to be an Offence, and then commit it in Defiance of divine Juſtice, as we do in almoſt all the Sins we commit. They think it no more a Crime to kill a Captive taken in War, than we do to kill an Ox; nor to eat human Fleſh, than we do to eat Mutton.

When I had conſider'd this a little, it followed neceſſarily, that I was certainly in the wrong in it; that theſe People were not Murderers in the Senſe that I had before condemn'd them in my Thoughts, any more than thoſe Chriſtians were Murderers, who often put to *Death the Priſoners* taken in Battle, or more frequently, upon

upon many Occaſions, put whole Troops of Men to the Sword, without giving Quarter, tho' they threw down their Arms, and ſubmitted.

In the next Place, it occurred to me, that albeit the Uſage they gave one another was thus brutiſh and inhuman, yet it was really nothing to me: Theſe People had done me no Injury: That if they attempted me, or I ſaw it neceſſary for my immediate Preſervation to fall upon them, ſomething might be ſaid for it; but that I was yet out of their Power, and they had really no Knowledge of me, and conſequently no Deſign upon me; and therefore it could not be juſt for me to fall upon them: That this would juſtify the Conduct of the *Spaniards*, in all their Barbarities practiſed in *America*, where they deſtroyed Millions of theſe People, who, however they were Idolaters and Barbarians, and had ſeveral bloody and barbarous Rites in their Cuſtoms, ſuch as ſacrificing human Bodies to their Idols, were yet, as to the *Spaniards*, very innocent People; and that the rooting them out of the Country is ſpoken of with the utmoſt Abhorrence and Deteſtation, even by the *Spaniards* themſelves, at this Time, and by all other Chriſtian Nations of *Europe*, as a mere Butchery, a bloody and unnatural Piece of Cruelty, unjuſtifiable either to God or Man; and ſuch, as for which the very Name of a *Spaniard* is reckoned to be frightful and terrible to all People of Humanity, or of Chriſtian Compaſſion: As if the Kingdom of *Spain* were particularly eminent for the Product of a Race of Men, who were without Principles of Tenderneſs, or the common Bowels of Pity to the Miſerable, which is reckoned to be a Mark of a generous Temper in the Mind.

Theſe Conſiderations really put me to a Pauſe, and to a kind of a full Stop; and I began by little and little to be off of my Deſign, and to conclude I had taken wrong Meaſures in my Reſolutions to attack the Savages; that it was not my Buſineſs to meddle with them, unleſs they firſt attacked me, and this it was my Buſineſs, if poſſible, to prevent; but that, if I were diſcovered and attacked, then I knew my Duty.

On the other hand, I argued with myſelf, that this really was the Way not to deliver myſelf, but intirely to ruin and deſtroy myſelf; for unleſs I was ſure to kill

every one that not only ſhould be on Shore at that Time, but that ſhould ever come on Shore afterwards, if but one of them eſcaped to tell their Country-people what had happened, they would come over again by Thouſands to revenge the Death of their Fellows; and I ſhould only bring upon myſelf a certain Deſtruction, which at preſent I had no manner of Occaſion for.

Upon the whole, I concluded, that neither in Principles nor in Policy, I ought one way or other to concern myſelf in this Affair: That my Buſineſs was, by all poſſible means to conceal myſelf from them, and not to leave the leaſt Signal to them to gueſs by, that there were any living Creatures upon the Iſland; I mean of human Shape.

Religion joined in with this Prudential, and I was convinced now many ways, that I was perfectly out of my Duty, when I was laying all my bloody Schemes for the Deſtruction of innocent Creatures, I mean innocent as to me: As to the Crimes they were guilty of towards one another, I had nothing to do with them; there were national Puniſhments to make a juſt Retribution for national Offences; and to bring public Judgments upon thoſe who offend in a public Manner, by ſuch Ways as beſt pleaſe God.

This appeared ſo clear to me now, that nothing was a greater Satisfaction to me, than that I had not been ſuffered to do a thing which I now ſaw ſo much Reaſon to believe would have been no leſs a Sin, than that of wilful Murder, if I had committed it; and I gave moſt humble Thanks on my Knees to God, that had thus delivered me from Blood-guiltineſs; beſeeching him to grant me the Protection of his Providence, that I might not fall into the Hands of Barbarians; or that I might not lay my Hands upon them, unleſs I had a more clear Call from Heaven to do it, in Defence of my own Life.

In this Diſpoſition I continued for near a Year after this; and ſo far was I from deſiring an Occaſion for falling upon theſe Wretches, that in all that Time I never once went up the Hill to ſee whether there were any of them in Sight, or to know whether any of them had been on Shore there, or not; that I might not be tempted to renew any of my Contrivances againſt them, or be provoked by any Advantage which might preſent itſelf, to

fall

fall upon them; only this I did, I went and removed my Boat, which I had on the other Side the Iſland, and carried it down to the Eaſt-end of the whole Iſland, where I ran it into a little Cove which I found under ſome high Rocks, and where I knew, by reaſon of the Currents, the Savages durſt not, at leaſt would not, come with their Boats, upon any Account whatſoever.

With my Boat I carried away every thing that I had left there belonging to her, tho' not neceſſary for the bare going thither; *viz.* a Maſt and Sail, which I had made for her, and a thing like an Anchor, but indeed, which could not be called either Anchor or Grapling; however, it was the beſt I could make of its kind. All theſe I removed, that there might not be the leaſt Shadow of any Diſcovery, or any Appearance of any Boat, or of any Habitation upon the Iſland.

Beſides this, I kept myſelf, as I ſaid, more retir'd than ever, and ſeldom went from my Cell, other than upon my conſtant Employment, *viz.* to milk my She-Goats, and manage my little Flock in the Wood; which, as it was quite on the other Part of the Iſland, was quite out of Danger: For certain it is, that theſe ſavage People, who ſometimes haunted this Iſland, never came with any Thoughts of finding any thing here, and conſequently never wander'd off from the Coaſt; and I doubt not, but they might have been ſeveral times on Shore, after my Apprehenſions of them had made me cautious, as well as before; and indeed, I look'd back with ſome Horror upon the Thoughts of what my Condition would have been, if I had chopp'd upon them, and been diſcover'd before that, when naked and unarm'd, except with one Gun, and that loaded often only with ſmall Shot. I walked every where, peeping and peering about the Iſland, to ſee what I could get: What a Surprize ſhould I have been in, if, when I diſcovered the Print of a Man's Foot, I had inſtead of that ſeen fifteen or twenty Savages, and found them purſuing me, and, by the Swiftneſs of their running, no Poſſibility of my eſcaping them!

The Thoughts of this ſometimes ſunk my very Soul within me, and diſtreſs'd my Mind ſo much, that I could not ſoon recover it; to think what I ſhould have done, and how I not only ſhould not have been able to reſiſt them,

them, but even ſhould not have had Preſence of Mind enough to do what I might have done; much leſs, what now after ſo much Conſideration and Preparation I might be able to do. Indeed, after ſerious thinking of theſe things, I would be very melancholy, and ſometimes it would laſt a great while; but I reſolv'd it at laſt all into Thankfulneſs to that Providence which had delivered me from ſo many unſeen Dangers, and had kept me from thoſe Miſchiefs, which I could no way have been the Agent in delivering myſelf from; becauſe I had not the leaſt Notion of any ſuch thing depending, or the leaſt Suppoſition of its being poſſible.

This renew'd a Contemplation, which often had come to my Thoughts in former Time, when firſt I began to ſee the merciful Diſpoſitions of Heaven, in the Dangers we run through in this Life; how wonderfully we are deliver'd when we know nothing of it: How when we are in a *Quandary* (as we call it) a Doubt or Heſitation, whether to go this Way, or that Way, a ſecret Hint ſhall direct us this Way, when we intended to go that Way; nay, when Senſe, our own Inclination, and perhaps Buſineſs, has called to go the other Way, yet a ſtrange Impreſſion upon the Mind, from we know not what Springs, and by we know not what Power, ſhall over-rule us to go this Way; and it ſhall afterwards appear, that had we gone that Way which we would have gone, and even to our Imagination ought to have gone, we ſhould have been ruined and loſt: Upon theſe, and many like Reflections, I afterwards made it a certain Rule with me, that whenever I found thoſe ſecret Hints, or Preſſings of my Mind, to doing or not doing any thing that preſented, or to going this Way, or that Way, I never failed to obey the ſecret Dictate; tho' I knew no other Reaſon for it, than that ſuch a Preſſure, or ſuch an Hint, hung upon my Mind: I could give many Examples of the Succeſs of this Conduct in the Courſe of my Life; but more eſpecially in the latter Part of my inhabiting this unhappy Iſland; beſides many Occaſions which it is very likely I might have taken notice of, if I had ſeen with the ſame Eyes then, that I ſaw with now: But 'tis never too late to be wiſe; and I cannot but adviſe all conſidering Men, whoſe Lives are attended with

ſuch

ſuch extraordinary Incidents as mine, or even though not ſo extraordinary, not to ſlight ſuch ſecret Intimations of Providence, let them come from what inviſible Intelligence they will; that I ſhall not diſcuſs, and perhaps cannot account for; but certainly they are a Proof of the Converſe of Spirits, and the ſecret Communication between thoſe embodied, and thoſe unembodied; and ſuch a Proof as can never be withſtood: Of which I ſhall have Occaſion to give ſome very remarkable Inſtances, in theRemainder of my ſolitary Reſidence in this diſmal Place.

I believe the Reader of this will not think it ſtrange, if I confeſs that theſe Anxieties, theſe conſtant Dangers I lived in, and the Concern that was now upon me, put an End to all Invention, and to all the Contrivances that I had laid for my future Accommodations and Conveniencies. I had the Care of my Safety more now upon my Hands, than that of my Food. I cared not to drive a Nail, or chop a Stick of Wood now, for fear the Noiſe I ſhould make ſhould be heard; much leſs would I fire a Gun, for the ſame Reaſon; and, above all, I was very uneaſy at making any Fire, leſt the Smoke, which is viſible at a great Diſtance in the Day, ſhould betray me; and for this Reaſon I removed that Part of my Buſineſs, which required Fire, ſuch as burning of Pots, and Pipes, &c. into my new Apartment in the Woods; where after I had been ſome time, I found, to my unſpeakable Conſolation, a mere natural Cave in the Earth, which went in a vaſt Way, and where, I dare ſay, no Savage, had he been at the Mouth of it, would be ſo hardy as to venture in, nor indeed would any Man elſe, but one who, like me, wanted nothing ſo much as a ſafe Retreat.

The Mouth of this Hollow was at the Bottom of a great Rock, where, by mere Accident (I would ſay, if I did not ſee an abundant Reaſon to aſcribe all ſuch things now to Providence) I was cutting down ſome thick Branches of Trees to make Charcoal; and before I go on, I muſt obſerve the Reaſon of my making this Charcoal, which was thus:

I was afraid of making a Smoke about my Habitation, as I ſaid before; and yet I could not live there without baking my Bread, cooking my Meat, &c. ſo I

contrived

contrived to burn ſome Wood here, as I had ſeen done in *England* under Turf, till it became Chark, or dry Coal; and then putting the Fire out, I preſerved the Coal to carry home, and perform the other Services, which Fire was wanting for at home, without Danger or Smoke.

But this by the bye: While I was cutting down ſome Wood here, I perceived that behind a very thick Branch of low Bruſh wood, or Under-wood, there was a kind of hollow Place: I was curious to look into it, and getting with Difficulty into the Mouth of it, I found it was pretty large, that is to ſay, ſufficient for me to ſtand upright in it, and perhaps another with me; but I muſt confeſs to you, I made more haſte out than I did in; when looking further into the Place, which was perfectly dark, I ſaw two broad ſhining Eyes of ſome Creature, whether Devil or Man, I knew not, which twinkled like two Stars, the dim Light from the Cave's Mouth ſhining directly in, and making the Reflexion.

However, after ſome Pauſe, I recovered myſelf, and began to call myſelf a thouſand Fools, and tell myſelf, that he that was afraid to ſee the Devil, was not fit to live twenty Years in an Iſland all alone, and that I durſt to believe there was nothing in this Cave that was more frightful than myſelf: Upon this, plucking up my Courage, I took up a large Firebrand, and in I ruſh'd again, with the Stick flaming in my Hand: I had not gone three Steps in, but I was almoſt as much frighten'd as I was before; for I heard a very loud Sigh, like that of a Man in ſome Pain; and it was followed by a broken Noiſe, as if of Words half expreſs'd, and then a deep Sigh again: I ſtepped back, and was indeed ſtruck with ſuch a Surprize, that it put me into a cold Sweat; and if I had had an Hat on my Head, I will not anſwer for it, that my Hair might not have lifted it off. But ſtill plucking up my Spirits as well as I could, and encouraging myſelf a little, with conſidering that the Power and Preſence of God was every-where, and was able to protect me; upon this I ſtepped forward again, and by the Light of the Firebrand, holding it up a little over my Head, I ſaw lying on the Ground a moſt monſtrous frightful old He-Goat, juſt making his Will, as we ſay, gaſping for Life, and dying indeed of mere old

I ſtirred him a little to ſee if I could get him out, and he eſſayed to get up, but was not able to raiſe himſelf; and I thought with myſelf, he might e'en lie there; for if he had frighten'd me ſo, he would certainly fright any of the Savages, if any of them ſhould be ſo hardy as to come in there, while he had any Life in him.

I was now recovered from my Surpriſe, and began to look round me, when I found the Cave was but very ſmall; that is to ſay, it might be about twelve Feet over, but in no manner of Shape, either round or ſquare, no Hands having ever been employ'd in making it, but thoſe of mere Nature: I obſerved alſo, that there was a Place at the farther Side of it that went in farther, but, ſo low, that it required me to creep upon my Hands and Knees to get into it, and whither it went, I knew not; ſo having no Candle, I gave it over for ſome time, but reſolved to come again the next Day, provided with Candles and a Tinder-box, which I had made of the Lock of one of the Muſquets, with ſome Wildfire in the Pan.

Accordingly, the next Day, I came provided with ſix large Candles of my own making, for I made very good Candles now of Goat's Tallow; and, going into this low Place, I was obliged to creep upon all Fours, as I have ſaid, almoſt ten Yards; which, by the way, I thought was a Venture bold enough, conſidering that I knew not how far it might go, or what was beyond it: When I was got thro' the Streight, I found the Roof roſe higher up, I believe near twenty Feet; but never was ſuch a glorious Sight ſeen in the Iſland, I dare ſay, as it was, to look round the Sides and Roof of this Vault or Cave: The Walls reflected an hundred thouſand Lights to me from my two Candles; what it was in the Rock, whether Diamonds, or any other precious Stones, or Gold, which I rather ſuppoſed it to be, I knew not.

The Place I was in was a moſt delightful Cavity, or Grotto, of its kind, as could be expected, though perfectly dark; the Floor was dry and level, and had a ſort of ſmall looſe Gravel upon it; ſo that there was no nauſeous Creature to be ſeen; neither was there any Damp or Wet on the Sides of the Roof: The only Difficulty in it was the Entrance, which, however, as it was a Place of Security, and ſuch a Retreat as I wanted, I thought

that was a Convenience; ſo that I was really rejoiced at the Diſcovery, and reſolved, without any Delay, to bring ſome of thoſe things which I was moſt anxious about, to this Place; particularly, I reſolved to bring hither my Magazine of Powder, and all my ſpare Arms, *viz.* two Fowling-pieces (for I had three in all) and three Muſquets (for of them I had eight in all;) ſo I kept at my Caſtle only five, which ſtood ready mounted, like Pieces of Cannon, on my outmoſt Fence; and were ready alſo to take out upon any Expedition.

Upon this Occaſion of removing my Ammunition, I was obliged to open the Barrel of Powder which I took up out of the Sea, and which had been wet; and I found, that the Water had penetrated about three or four Inches into the Powder on every Side, which, caking and growing hard, had preſerved the Inſide like a Kernel in a Shell; ſo that I had near ſixty Pounds of very good Powder in the Centre of the Caſk; and this was an agreeable Diſcovery to me at that Time; ſo I carried all away thither, never keeping above two or three Pounds of Powder with me in my Caſtle, for fear of a Surpriſe of any Kind. I alſo carried thither all the Lead I had left for Bullets.

I fanſied myſelf now like one of the antient Giants, which were ſaid to live in Caves and Holes in the Rocks, where none could come at them; for I perſuaded myſelf, while I was here, if five hundred Savages were to hunt me, they could never find me out; or if they did, they would not venture to attack me here.

The old Goat, which I found expiring, died in the Mouth of the Cave, the next Day after I made this Diſcovery; and I found it much eaſier to dig a great Hole there, and throw him in, and cover him with Earth, than to drag him out: So I interred him there, to prevent Offence to my Noſe.

I was now in my twenty-third Year of Reſidence in this Iſland, and was ſo naturalized to the Place, and to the Manner of living, that could I have but enjoyed the Certainty, that no Savages would come to the Place to diſturb me, I could have been content to have capitulated for ſpending the reſt of my Time there, even to the laſt Moment, till I had laid me down and died, like the old Goat, in the Cave: I had alſo arrived to ſome little Diverſions and Amuſements, which

which made the Time paſs more pleaſantly with me a great deal than it did before; as, firſt, I had taught my *Pol*, as I noted before, to ſpeak; and he did it ſo familiarly, and talked ſo articulately and plain, that it was very pleaſant to me; and he lived with me no leſs than ſix-and-twenty Years: How long he might live afterwards, I knew not; tho' I know they have a Notion in the *Braſils*, that they live an hundred Years; perhaps ſome of my *Pols* may be alive there ſtill, calling after *Poor Robin Cruſoe* to this Day; I wiſh no *Engliſhman* the ill Luck to come there and hear them; but if he did, he would certainly believe it was the Devil. My Dog was a very pleaſant and loving Companion to me for no leſs than ſixteen Years of my Time, and then died of mere old Age; as for my Cats, they multiply'd, as I have obſerv'd, to that Degree, that I was obliged to ſhoot ſeveral of them at firſt, to keep them from devouring me, and all I had; but at length, when the two old ones I brought with me were gone, and after ſome Time continually driving them from me, and letting them have no Proviſion with me, they all ran wild into the Woods, except two or three Favourites, which I kept tame, and whoſe Young, when they had any, I always drowned, and theſe were Part of my Family: Beſides theſe, I always kept two or three Houſhold Kids about me, which I taught to feed out of my Hand; and I had alſo more Parrots, which talked pretty well, and would all call *Robin Cruſoe*, but none like my firſt; nor, indeed, did I take the Pains with any of them that I had done with him: I had alſo ſeveral tame Sea-fowls, whoſe Names I know not, which I caught upon the Shore, and cut their Wings; and the little Stakes, which I had planted before my Caſtle-Wall, being now grown up to a good thick Grove, theſe Fowls all lived among theſe low Trees, and bred there, which was very agreeable to me; ſo that, as I ſaid above, I began to be very well contented with the Life I led, if it might but have been ſecured from the Dread of the Savages.

But it was otherwiſe directed; and it may not be amiſs for all People who ſhall meet with my Story, to make this juſt Obſervation from it; *viz.* How frequently, in the Courſe of our Lives, the Evil, which in itſelf we ſeek moſt to ſhun, and which, when we are fallen

into, is the moſt dreadful to us, is oftentimes the very Means or Door of our Deliverance, by which alone we can be raiſed again from the Affliction we are fallen into: I could give many Examples of this in the Courſe of my unaccountable Life; but in nothing was it more particularly remarkable, than in the Circumſtances of my laſt Years of ſolitary Reſidence in this Iſland.

It was now the Month of *December*, as I ſaid above, in my twenty-third Year; and this being the Southern Solſtice, for Winter I cannot call it, was the particular Time of my Harveſt, and required my being pretty much abroad in the Fields; when going out pretty early in the Morning, even before it was thorough Day-light, I was ſurpriſed with ſeeing a Light of ſome Fire upon the Shore, at a Diſtance from me of about two Miles, towards the End of the Iſland, where I had obſerv'd ſome Savages had been, as before; but not on the other Side; but, to my great Affliction, it was on my Side of the Iſland.

I was indeed terribly ſurpris'd at the Sight, and ſtopp'd ſhort within my Grove, not daring to go out, leſt I might be ſurpris'd; and yet I had no more Peace within, from the Apprehenſions I had, that if theſe Savages, in rambling over the Iſland, ſhould find my Corn ſtanding, or cut, or any of my Works and Improvements, they would immediately conclude, that there were People in the Place, and would then never give over till they found me out: In this Extremity I went back directly to my Caſtle, pull'd up the Ladder after me, having made all things without look as wild and natural as I could.

Then I prepar'd myſelf within, putting myſelf in a Poſture of Defence; I loaded all my Cannon, as I called them, *that is to ſay*, my Muſquets, which were mounted upon my new Fortification, and all my Piſtols, and reſolved to defend myſelf to the laſt Gaſp; not forgetting ſeriouſly to recommend myſelf to the Divine Protection, and earneſtly to pray to God to deliver me out of the Hands of the Barbarians; and in this Poſture I continu'd about two Hours, but began to be mighty impatient for Intelligence abroad, for I had no Spies to ſend out.

After ſitting a while longer, and muſing what I ſhould do in this Caſe, I was not able to bear ſitting in Ignorance

Ignorance longer; ſo ſetting up my Ladder to the Side of the Hill, where there was a flat Place, as I obſerved before, and then pulling the Ladder up after me, I ſet it up again, and mounted to the Top of the Hill; and pulling out my Perſpective-glaſs, which I had taken on Purpoſe, I laid me down flat on my Belly on the Ground, and began to look for the Place: I preſently found there were no leſs than nine naked Savages ſitting round a ſmall Fire they had made; not to warm them, for they had no Need of that, the Weather being extreme hot; but, as I ſuppoſed, to dreſs ſome of their barbarous Diet of human Fleſh, which they had brought with them, whether alive or dead, I could not know.

They had two *Canoes* with them, which they had haled up upon the Shore; and as it was then Tide of Ebb, they ſeemed to me to wait the Return of the Flood to go away again. It is not eaſy to imagine what Confuſion this Sight put me into, eſpecially ſeeing them come on my Side the Iſland, and ſo near me too; but when I obſerved their coming muſt be always with the Current of the Ebb, I began afterwards to be more ſedate in my Mind, being ſatisfied that I might go abroad with Safety, all the Time of Tide of Flood, if they were not on Shore before; and having made this Obſervation, I went abroad about my Harveſt-work with the more Compoſure.

As I expected, ſo it proved; for as ſoon as the Tide made to the Weſtward, I ſaw them all take Boat, and row (or paddle, as we call it) all away: I ſhould have obſerved, that for an Hour and more before they went off, they went to dancing, and I could eaſily diſcern their Poſtures and Geſtures by my Glaſſes: I could not perceive, by my niceſt Obſervation, but that they were ſtark-naked, and had not the leaſt Covering upon them; but whether they were Men or Women, that I could not diſtinguiſh.

As ſoon as I ſaw them ſhipped and gone, I took two Guns upon my Shoulders, and two Piſtols at my Girdle, and my great Sword by my Side, without a Scabbard; and with all the Speed I was able to make, I went away to the Hill, where I had diſcover'd the firſt Appearance of all. As ſoon as I got thither, which was not leſs than two Hours (for I could not go apace, being ſo loaden with Arms as I was) I perceived there had been three Canoes more of

Savages on that Place; and looking out further, I ſaw they were all at Sea together, making over for the Main.

This was a dreadful Sight to me, eſpecially when going down to the Shore, I could ſee the Marks of Horror which the diſmal Work they had been about had left behind it, *viz.* the Blood, the Bones, and Part of the Fleſh of human Bodies, eaten and devoured by thoſe Wretches, with Merriment and Sport. I was ſo filled with Indignation at the Sight, that I began now to premeditate the Deſtruction of the next that I ſaw there, let them be who or how many ſoever.

It ſeemed evident to me, that the Viſits which they thus made to this Iſland, were not very frequent; for it was above fifteen Months before any more of them came on Shore there again; *that is to ſay*, I never ſaw them, or any Footſteps or Signals of them, in all that Time; for as to the rainy Seaſons, then they are ſure not to come abroad, at leaſt not ſo far; yet all this while I lived uncomfortably, by reaſon of the conſtant Apprehenſions I was in of their coming upon me by Surpriſe; from whence I obſerve, that the Expectation of Evil is more bitter than the Suffering, eſpecially if there is no room to ſhake off that Expectation or thoſe Apprehenſions.

During all this Time, I was in the murdering Humour; and took up moſt of my Hours, which ſhould have been better employed, in contriving how to circumvent and fall upon them the very next Time I ſhould ſee them; eſpecially if they ſhould be divided, as they were the laſt Time, into two Parties; nor did I conſider at all, that if I killed one Party, ſuppoſe ten or a dozen, I was ſtill the next Day, or Week, or Month, to kill another, and ſo another, even *ad infinitum*, till I ſhould be at length no leſs a Murderer than they were in being Men-eaters, and perhaps much more ſo.

I ſpent my Days now in great Perplexity and Anxiety of Mind, expecting that I ſhould one Day or other fall into the Hands of theſe mercileſs Creatures; if I did at any Time venture abroad, it was not without looking round me with the greateſt Care and Caution imaginable; and now I found, to my great Comfort, how happy it was that I had provided a tame Flock or Herd of Goats; for I durſt not, upon any account, fire my Gun, *eſpecially* near that Side of the Iſland, where they uſually came,

came, leſt I ſhould alarm the Savages; and if they had fled from me now, I was ſure to have them come back again, with perhaps two or three hundred *Canoes* with them in a few Days, and then I knew what to expect.

However, I wore out a Year and three Months more, before I ever ſaw any more of the Savages, and then I found them again, as I ſhall ſoon obſerve: It is true, they might have been there once or twice; but either they made no Stay, or, at leaſt, I did not hear them; but in the Month of *May*, as near as I could calculate, and in my four-and-twentieth Year, I had a very ſtrange Encounter with them, of which in its Place.

The Perturbation of my Mind, during this fifteen or ſixteen Months Interval, was very great; I ſlept unquiet, dreamed always frightful Dreams, and often ſtarted out of my Sleep in the Night; in the Day great Troubles overwhelmed my Mind; in the Night I dreamed often of killing the Savages, and the Reaſons why I might juſtify the doing of it: But to wave all this for a while, it was in the Middle of *May*, on the ſixteenth Day, I think, as well as my poor wooden Calender would reckon; for I marked all upon the Poſt ſtill; I ſay, it was on the ſixteenth of *May*, that it blew a very great Storm of Wind all Day, with a great deal of Lightning and Thunder, and a very foul Night was after it: I know not what was the particular Occaſion of it; but as I was reading in the Bible, and taken up with ſerious Thoughts about my preſent Condition, I was ſurpriſed with the Noiſe of a Gun, as I thought, fired at Sea.

This was, to be ſure, a Surpriſe of a quite different Nature from any I had met with before; for the Notions this put into my Thoughts were quite of another Kind: I ſtarted up in the greateſt Haſte imaginable; and in a trice clapped up my Ladder to the middle Place of the Rock, and pulled it after me, and, mounting it the ſecond Time, got to the Top of the Hill; that very Moment a Flaſh of Fire bad me liſten for a ſecond Gun, which accordingly in about half a Moment I heard, and by the Sound knew that it was from that Part of the Sea where I was driven out with the Current in my Boat.

I immediately conſider'd, that this muſt be ſome Ship in Diſtreſs, and that they had ſome Comrade, or ſome other

Ship in Company, and fired theſe Guns for Signals of Diſtreſs, and to obtain Help: I had this Preſence of Mind at that Minute, as to think, that though I could not help them, it may be they might help me; ſo I brought together all the dry Wood I could get at hand, and making a good handſome Pile, I ſet it on Fire upon the Hill; the Wood was dry, and blazed freely, and tho' the Wind blew very hard, yet it burnt fairly out, ſo that I was certain, if there was any ſuch thing as a Ship, they muſt needs ſee it, and no doubt they did; for as ſoon as ever my Fire blazed up, I heard another Gun, and after that ſeveral others, all from the ſame Quarter. I ply'd my Fire all Night long, till Day broke; and when it was broad Day, and the Air cleared up, I ſaw ſomething at a great Diſtance at Sea, full Eaſt of the Iſland, whether a Sail, or an Hull, I could not diſtinguiſh, no not with my Glaſſes, the Diſtance was ſo great, and the Weather ſtill ſomething hazy alſo; at leaſt it was ſo out at Sea.

I looked frequently at it all that Day, and ſoon perceived that it did not move; ſo I preſently concluded, that it was a Ship at Anchor; and being eager, you may be ſure, to be ſatisfied, I took my Gun in my Hand, and ran towards the *South-eaſt* Side of the Iſland, to the Rocks, where I had been formerly carried away with the Current; and getting up there, the Weather by this time being perfectly clear, I could plainly ſee, to my great Sorrow, the Wreck of a Ship caſt away in the Night upon thoſe concealed Rocks which I found when I was out in my Boat; and which Rocks, as they checked the Violence of the Stream, and made a kind of Counter-ſtream, or Eddy, were the Occaſion of my recovering then from the moſt deſperate hopeleſs Condition that ever I had been in all my Life.

Thus, what is one Man's Safety, is another Man's Deſtruction; for it ſeems, theſe Men, whoever they were, being out of their Knowledge, and the Rocks being wholly under Water, had been driven upon them in the Night, the Wind blowing hard at *E.* and *E. N. E.* Had they ſeen the Iſland, as I muſt neceſſarily ſuppoſe they did not, they muſt, as I thought, have endeavoured to have ſaved themſelves on Shore by the Help of their Boat; but their Firing of their Guns for Help, eſpecially when they ſaw, as I imagined, my Fire, filled me with

with many Thoughts: Firſt I imagined, that, upon ſeeing my Light, they might have put themſelves into their Boat, and have endeavoured to make the Shore; but that the Sea going very high, they might have been caſt away; other Times I imagin'd, that they might have loſt their Boat before, as might be the Caſe many ways; as particularly, by the breaking of the Sea upon their Ship, which many Times obliges Men to ſtave, or take in Pieces their Boat; and ſometimes to throw it overboard with their own Hands: Other Times I imagined, they had ſome other Ship or Ships in Company, who, upon the Signals of Diſtreſs they had made, had taken them up, and carried them off: Other whiles I fanſied, they were all gone off to Sea in their Boat, and being hurried away by the Current that I had been formerly in, were carried out into the great Ocean, where there was nothing but Miſery and Periſhing; and that perhaps they might by this Time think of ſtarving, and of being in a Condition to eat one another.

As all theſe were but Conjectures at beſt, ſo, in the Condition I was in, I could do no more than look upon the Miſery of the poor Men, and pity them; which had ſtill this good Effect on my Side, that it gave me more and more Cauſe to give Thanks to God, who had ſo happily and comfortably provided for me in my deſolate Condition; and that of two Ships Companies who were now caſt away upon this Part of the World, not one Life ſhould be ſpared but mine. I learnt here again to obſerve, that it is very rare, that the Providence of God caſts us into any Condition of Life ſo low, or any Miſery ſo great, but we may ſee ſomething or other to be thankful for, and may ſee others in worſe Circumſtances than our own.

Such certainly was the Caſe of theſe Men, of whom I could not ſo much as ſee room to ſuppoſe any of them were ſaved; nothing could make it rational, ſo much as to wiſh or expect that they did not all periſh there, except the Poſſibility only of their being taken up by another Ship in Company: And this was but mere Poſſibility indeed; for I ſaw not the leaſt Signal or Appearance of any ſuch thing.

I cannot explain, by any poſſible Energy of Words, and a ſtrange Longing, or Hankering of Deſire, I felt in my Soul upon this Sight; breaking out ſometimes

thus: O that there had been but one or two, nay, or but one Soul ſaved out of the Ship, to have eſcaped to me, that I might but have had one Companion, one Fellow-Creature, to have ſpoken to me, and to have convers'd with! In all the Time of my ſolitary Life, I never felt ſo earneſt, ſo ſtrong a Deſire after the Society of my Fellow-Creatures, or ſo deep a Regret at the Want of it.

There are ſome ſecret moving Springs in the Affections, which, when they are ſet a going by ſome Object in View, or be it ſome Object, though not in View, yet rendered preſent to the Mind by the Power of Imagination, that Motion carries out the Soul by its Impetuoſity to ſuch violent, eager Embracings of the Object, that the Abſence of it is inſupportable.

Such were theſe earneſt Wiſhings, That but one Man had been ſaved! *O that it had been but One!* I believe I repeated the Words, *O that it had been but One!* a thouſand Times; and my Deſires were ſo moved by it, that when I ſpoke the Words, my Hands would clinch together, and my Fingers preſs the Palms of my Hands, that if I had had any ſoft thing in my Hand, it would have cruſhed it involuntarily; and my Teeth in my Head would ſtrike together, and ſet againſt one another ſo ſtrong, that for ſome Time I could not part them again.

Let the Naturaliſts explain theſe things, and the Reaſon and Manner of them: All I can ſay of them, is, to deſcribe the Fact, which was ever ſurpriſing to me when I found it; tho' I knew not from what it ſhould proceed; it was doubtleſs the Effect of ardent Wiſhes, and of ſtrong Ideas formed in my Mind, realizing the Comfort which the Converſation of one of my Fellow-Chriſtians would have been to me.

But it was not to be; either their Fate, or mine, or both, forbad it; for till the laſt Year of my being on this Iſland, I never knew, whether any were ſaved out of that Ship or no; and had only the Affliction ſome Days after, to ſee the Corpſe of a drown'd Boy come on Shore, at the End of the Iſland, which was next the Shipwreck: He had on no Cloaths, but a Seaman's Waiſtcoat, a Pair of open-kneed Linen Drawers, and a blue Linen Shirt; but nothing to direct me ſo much as to gueſs what Nation he was of: He had nothing in his Pocket but two Pieces of Eight, and a Tobacco-pipe; the laſt was to me of ten *Times* more Value than the firſt.

It

It was now calm, and I had a great Mind to venture out in my Boat to this Wreck, not doubting but I might find ſomething on board, that might be uſeful to me; but that did not altogether preſs me ſo much, as the Poſſibility that there might be yet ſome living Creature on board, whoſe Life I might not only ſave, but might, by ſaving that Life, comfort my own to the laſt Degree: And this Thought clung ſo to my Heart, that I could not be quiet, Night nor Day, but I muſt venture out in my Boat on board this Wreck; and committing the reſt to God's Providence, I thought the Impreſſion was ſo ſtrong upon my Mind, that it could not be reſiſted, that it muſt come from ſome inviſible Direction, and that I ſhould be wanting to myſelf, if I did not go.

Under the Power of this Impreſſion, I haſtened back to my Caſtle, prepared every thing for my Voyage, took a Quantity of Bread, a great Pot for freſh Water, a Compaſs to ſteer by, a Bottle of Rum (for I had ſtill a great deal of that left) a Baſket full of Raiſins: And thus loading myſelf with every thing neceſſary, I went down to my Boat, got the Water out of her, and got her afloat, loaded all my Cargo in her, and then went home again for more: My ſecond Cargo was a great Bag full of Rice, the Umbrella to ſet up over my Head for Shade, another large Pot full of freſh Water, and about two dozen of my ſmall Loaves, or Barley-Cakes, more than before, with a Bottle of Goat's Milk, and a Cheeſe; all which, with great Labour and Sweat, I brought to my Boat; and praying to God to direct my Voyage, I put out, and rowing or paddling the *Canoe* along the Shore, I came at laſt to the utmoſt Point of the Iſland, on that Side; *viz.* N. E. And now, I was to launch out into the Ocean; and either to venture, or not to venture; I looked on the rapid Currents which ran conſtantly on both Sides of the Iſland, at a Diſtance, and which were very terrible to me, from the Remembrance of the Hazard I had been in before, and my Heart began to fail me; for I foreſaw, that if I was driven into either of thoſe Currents, I ſhould be carried a vaſt Way ought to Sea, and perhaps out of my Reach, or Sight of the Iſland again; and that then, as my Boat was but ſmall, if any little Gale of Wind ſhould riſe, I ſhould be inevitably loſt.

Theſe Thoughts ſo oppreſs'd my Mind, that I began to give over my Enterpriſe, and having haled my Boat into a little Creek on the Shore, I ſtepped out, and ſat me down upon a little Spot of riſing Ground, very penſive and anxious, between Fear and Deſire about my Voyage; when as I was muſing, I could perceive that the Tide was turned, and the Flood came on, upon which my going was for ſo many Hours impracticable: Upon this it preſently occurred to me, that I ſhould go up to the higheſt Piece of Ground I could find, and obſerve, if I could, how the Sets of the Tide or Currents lay, when the Flood came in, that I might judge whether, if I was driven one Way out, I might not expect to be driven another Way home, with the ſame Rapidneſs of the Currents: This Thought was no ſooner in my Head, but I caſt my Eye upon a little Hill which ſufficiently overlooked the Sea both Ways, and from whence I had a clear View of the Currents, or Sets of the Tide, and which Way I was to guide myſelf in my Return: Here I found, that as the Current of the Ebb ſet out cloſe by the South Point of the Iſland, ſo the Current of the Flood ſet in cloſe by the Shore of the North-ſide; and that I had nothing to do but to keep to the North of the Iſland in my Return, and I ſhould do well enough.

Encourag'd with this Obſervation, I reſoly'd the next Morning to ſet out with the firſt of the Tide; and repoſing myſelf for that Night in the *Canoe*, under the great Watch-coat I mention'd, I launched out; I made firſt a little out to Sea full North, till I began to feel the Benefit of the Current, which ſet Eaſtwards, and which carried me at a great Rate, and yet did not ſo hurry me as the Southern Side Current had done before, and ſo as to take from me all Government of the Boat; but having a ſtrong Steerage with my Paddle, I went, *I ſay*, at a great Rate, directly for the Wreck, and in leſs than two Hours I came up to it.

It was a diſmal Sight to look at: The Ship, which by its Building was *Spaniſh*, ſtuck faſt, jambed in between two Rocks; all the Stern and Quarter of her was beaten to Pieces with the Sea; and as her Forecaſtle, which ſtuck in the Rocks, had run on with great Violence, her Main-maſt and Fore-maſt were brought by the Board,

that is to ſay, broken ſhort off, but her Bow-ſprit was ſound, and the Head and Bough appear'd firm: When I came cloſe to her, a Dog appear'd upon her, which, ſeeing me coming, yelp'd and cry'd, and as ſoon as I called him, jump'd into the Sea, to come to me; and I took him into the Boat, but found him almoſt dead for Hunger and Thirſt: I gave him a Cake of my Bread, and he eat like a ravenous Wolf, that had been ſtarving a Fortnight in the Snow: I then gave the poor Creature ſome freſh Water, with which, if I would have let him, he would have burſt himſelf.

After this I went on board; the firſt Sight I met with, was two Men drown'd in the Cook-room, or Forecaſtle of the Ship, with their Arms faſt about one another. I concluded, as is indeed probable, that when the Ship ſtruck, it being in a Storm, the Sea broke ſo high, and ſo continually over her, that the Men were not able to bear it, and were ſtrangled with the conſtant ruſhing in of the Water, as much as if they had been under Water: Beſides the Dog, there was nothing left in the Ship that had Life, nor any Goods that I could ſee, but what were ſpoil'd by the Water: There were ſome Caſks of Liquor, whether Wine or Brandy, I knew not, which lay lower in the Hold, and which, the Water being ebb'd out, I could ſee; but they were too big to meddle with: I ſaw ſeveral Cheſts, which I believ'd belong'd to ſome of the Seamen, and I got two of them into the Boat, without examining what was in them.

Had the Stern of the Ship been fix'd, and the Fore-part broken off, I am perſuaded I might have made a good Voyage; for by what I found in theſe two Cheſts, I had room to ſuppoſe the Ship had a great deal of Wealth on board; and if I may gueſs by the Courſe ſhe ſteer'd, ſhe muſt have been bound from the *Buenos Ayres*, or the *Rio de la Plata*, in the South Part of *America*, beyond the *Braſils*, to the *Havanna*, in the Gulph of *Mexico*, and ſo perhaps to *Spain*: She had, no doubt, a great Treaſure in her, but of no Uſe at that Time to any body; and what became of the reſt of her People, I then knew not.

I found, beſides theſe Cheſts, a little Caſk full of Liquor, of about twenty Gallons, which I got into my Boat, with much Difficulty: There were ſeveral Muſquets

in

in a Cabin, and a great Powder-horn, with about four Pounds of Powder in it; as for the Muſquets, I had no Occaſion for them, ſo I left them, but took the Powder-horn: I took a Fire-ſhovel and Tongs, which I wanted extremely; as alſo two little braſs Kettles, a copper Pot to make Chocolate, and a Gridiron; and with this Cargo, and the Dog, I came away, the Tide beginning to make home again; and the ſame Evening, about an Hour within Night, I reach'd the Iſland again, weary and fatigu'd to the laſt Degree.

I repos'd that Night in the Boat, and in the Morning I reſolv'd to harbour what I had gotten in my new Cave, not to carry it home to my Caſtle: After refreſhing myſelf, I got all my Cargo on Shore, and began to examine the Particulars: The Caſk of Liquor I found to be a Kind of Rum, but not ſuch as we had at the *Braſils*; and in a Word, not at all good; but when I came to open the Cheſts, I found ſeveral things which I wanted: For Example, I found in one a fine Caſe of Bottles, of an extraordinary Kind, and filled with Cordial Waters, fine, and very good; the Bottles held about three Pints each, and were tipped with Silver; I found two Pots of very good Succades, or Sweetmeats, ſo faſten'd alſo on the Top, that the Salt Water had not hurt them; and two more of the ſame, which the Water had ſpoil'd: I found ſome very good Shirts, which were very welcome to me, and about a dozen and an half of white Linen Handkerchiefs, and colour'd Neckcloths; the former were alſo very welcome, being exceeding refreſhing to wipe my Face in an hot Day; beſides this, when I came to the Till in the Cheſts, I found there three great Bags of Pieces of Eight, which held about eleven hundred Pieces in all; and in one of them, wrapt up in a Paper, ſix Doubloons of Gold, and ſome ſmall Bars or Wedges of Gold; I ſuppoſe they might all weigh near a Pound.

The other Cheſt I found had ſome Cloaths in it, but of little Value; but by the Circumſtances it muſt have belong'd to the Gunner's Mate, though there was no Powder in it, but about two Pounds of glaz'd Powder, in the three Flaſks, kept, I ſuppoſe, for charging their Fowling pieces on Occaſion: Upon the Whole, I got very little by this Voyage, that was of much Uſe to me; for,

for, as to the Money, I had no manner of Occaſion for it; 'twas to me as the Dirt under my Feet; and I would have given it all for three or four Pair of *Engliſh* Shoes and Stockings, which were things I greatly wanted, but had not had on my Feet now for many Years: I had, indeed, gotten two Pair of Shoes now, which I took off of the Feet of the two drown'd Men, whom I ſaw in the Wreck; and I found two Pair more in one of the Cheſts, which were very welcome to me; but they were not like our *Engliſh* Shoes, either for Eaſe or Service, being rather what we call Pumps than Shoes: I found in this Seaman's Cheſt about fifty Pieces of Eight in Royals, but no Gold; I ſuppoſe this belong'd to a poorer Man than the other, which ſeem'd to belong to ſome Officer.

Well, however, I lugged this Money home to my Cave, and laid it up, as I had done that before, which I brought from our own Ship; but it was great Pity, as I ſaid, that the other Part of the Ship had not come to my Share, for I am ſatisfied I might have loaded my *Canoe* ſeveral Times over with Money, which, if I had ever eſcap'd to *England*, would have lain here ſafe enough till I might have come again and fetch'd it.

Having now brought all my things on Shore, and ſecur'd them, I went back to my Boat, and row'd or paddled her along the Shore to her old Harbour, where I laid her up, and made the beſt of my Way to my old Habitation, where I found every thing ſafe and quiet; ſo I began to repoſe myſelf, live after my old Faſhion, and take care of my Family Affairs; and for a while I lived eaſy enough; only that I was more vigilant than I us'd to be, look'd out oftener, and did not go abroad ſo much; and if at any time I did ſtir with any Freedom, it was always to the Eaſt Part of the Iſland, where I was pretty well ſatisfy'd the Savages never came, and where I could go without ſo many Precautions, and ſuch a Load of Arms and Ammunition, as I always carry'd with me, if I went the other Way.

I liv'd in this Condition near two Years more; but my unlucky Head, that was always to let me know it was born to make my Body miſerable, was all thoſe two Years fill'd with Projects and Deſigns, how, if it were poſſible, I might get away from this Iſland; for ſome-

times

[illegible] Wreck, tho' [illegible] worth [illegible] one [illegible] had [illegible] venturd [illegible]

[illegible] Instances, a *Memento* [illegible] general Plague of [illegible] half of their [illegible] being ſatisfy'd with [illegible] Nature had plac'd them; [illegible] primitive Condition, and [illegible] the Oppoſition to [illegible] my Original Sin, my ſubſequent Miſeries of the ſame Kind have been the Means of my bringing on this miſerable Condition; for had that Providence, which at firſt placed me at the *Brazils* as a Planter, bleſs'd me with contin'd Deſires, and calm Reaſon to have gone on gradually, I might have been by this Time, *I mean in the Time of my being in that Land*, one of the moſt conſiderable Planters in the Province. I am perſuaded, that by the Improvements I had made in that little Time I liv'd there, and the Increaſe I ſhould probably have made, if I had ſtay'd, I might have been worth an hundred thouſand *Moidores*; and what Buſineſs had I to leave a ſettled Fortune, well-ſtock'd Plantation, improving and increaſing, to turn *Sea-Adventurer* to *Guinea*, to fetch *Negroes*, when Patience and Time would have ſo increas'd our Stock at Home, that we could have bought them at our own Doors, from thoſe whoſe Buſineſs it was to fetch them? And though it had coſt us ſomething more, yet the Difference of that Price was by no Means worth ſaving at ſo great a Hazard.

But as this is ordinarily the Fate of young Heads, ſo Reflection upon the Folly of it, is as ordinarily the Exerciſe of more Years, or of the dear-bought Experience of Time; and ſo it was with me now; and yet ſo deep had the Miſtake taken Root in my Temper, that I could not ſatisfy myſelf in my Station, but was continually poring upon the Means and Poſſibility of my Eſcape from this Place; *and that I may*, with the greater Pleaſure to the Reader,

bring

bring on the remaining Part of my Story, it may not be improper to give ſome Account of my firſt Conceptions on the Subject of this fooliſh Scheme for my Eſcape; and how, and upon what Foundation, I acted.

I am now to be ſuppos'd to be retir'd into my Caſtle, after my late Voyage to the Wreck, my Frigate laid up, and ſecur'd under Water as uſual, and my Condition reſtor'd to what it was before: I had more Wealth, indeed, than I had before, but was not at all the richer; for I had no more Uſe for it, than the *Indians* of *Peru* had before the *Spaniards* came thither.

It was one of the Nights, in the rainy Seaſon in *March*, the four-and-twentieth Year of my firſt ſetting Foot in this Iſland of Solitarineſs, I was lying in my Bed, or Hammock, awake, very well in Health, had no Pain, no Diſtemper, no Uneaſineſs of Body, no, nor any Uneaſineſs of Mind more than ordinary, but could by no Means cloſe my Eyes; that is, ſo as to ſleep; no, not a Wink all Night long, otherwiſe than as follows:

It is as impoſſible as needleſs, to ſet down the innumerable Croud of Thoughts that whirl'd through that great Thoroughfare of the Brain, the Memory, in this Night's Time: I ran over the whole Hiſtory of my Life in Miniature, or by Abridgment, as I may call it, to my coming to this Iſland; and alſo of that Part of my Life ſince I came to this Iſland; in my Reflections upon the State of my Caſe, ſince I came on Shore on this Iſland; I was comparing the happy Poſture of my Affairs, in the firſt Years of my Habitation here, to that Courſe of Anxiety, Fear and Care, which I had liv'd in ever ſince I had ſeen the Print of a Foot in the Sand; not that I did not believe the Savages had frequented the Iſland even all the while, and might have been ſeveral Hundreds of them at times on Shore there; but as I had never known it, and was incapable of any Apprehenſions about it, my Satisfaction was perfect, though my Danger was the ſame; and I was as happy in not knowing my Danger, as if I had never really been expos'd to it; this furniſh'd my Thoughts with many very profitable Reflections, and particularly this one, How infinitely good that Providence is, which has ſettled in its Government of Mankind ſuch narrow Bounds to his

Sight

Sight and Knowledge of things; and tho' he walks in the midſt of ſo many thouſand Dangers, the Sight of which, if diſcover'd to him, would diſtract his Mind, and ſink his Spirits, he is kept ſerene and calm, by having the Events of things hid from his Eyes, and knowing nothing of the Dangers which ſurround him.

After theſe Thoughts had for ſome Time entertained me, I came to reflect ſeriouſly upon the real Danger I had been in for ſo many Years in this very Iſland; and how I had walk'd about in the greateſt Security, and with all poſſible Tranquillity, even when perhaps nothing but a Brow of an Hill, a great Tree, or the caſual Approach of Night, had been between me and the worſt Kind of Deſtruction; *viz.* that of falling into the Hands of Canibals and Savages, who would have ſeiz'd on me with the ſame View, as I did on a Goat or a Turtle, and have thought it no more a Crime to kill and devour me, than I did of a Pigeon or a Curlieu; I ſhould unjuſtly ſlander myſelf, if I ſhould ſay I was not ſincerely thankful to my great Preſerver, to whoſe ſingular Protection I acknowledged, with great Humility, that all theſe unknown Deliverances were due, and without which I ſhould inevitably have fallen into their mercileſs Hands.

When theſe Thoughts were over, my Head was for ſome Time taken up in conſidering the Nature of theſe wretched Creatures, I mean, the Savages; and how it came to paſs in the World, that the wiſe Governor of all things ſhould give up any of his Creatures to ſuch Inhumanity, nay, to ſomething ſo much below even Brutality itſelf, as to devour its own Kind: But as this ended in ſome (at that Time fruitleſs) Speculations, it occurr'd to me to inquire what Part of the World theſe Wretches liv'd in; how far off the Coaſt was from whence they came; what they ventur'd ſo far from Home for; what kind of Boats they had; and why I might not order myſelf, and my Buſineſs ſo, that I might be as able to go over thither, as they were to come to me.

I never ſo much as troubled myſelf to conſider, what I ſhould do with myſelf when I came thither; what ſhould become of me, if I fell into the Hands of the Savages; or how I ſhould eſcape from them, if they attempted me; no, *nor ſo much* as how it was poſſible for me to reach the

Coaſt, and not be attempted by ſome or other of them, without any Poſſibility of delivering myſelf; and if I ſhould not fall into their Hands, what I ſhould do for Proviſion, or whither I ſhould bend my Courſe; none of theſe Thoughts, I ſay, ſo much as came in my Way; but my Mind was wholly bent upon the Notion of my paſſing over in my Boat to the main Land: I look'd back upon my preſent Condition, as the moſt miſerable that could poſſibly be; that I was not able to throw myſelf into any thing but Death that could be call'd worſe; that if I reach'd the Shore of the Main, I might, perhaps, meet with Relief; or I might coaſt along, as I did on the Shore of *Africa*, till I came to ſome inhabited Country, and where I might find ſome Relief; and after all, perhaps, I might fall in with ſome Chriſtian Ship that might take me in; and if the worſt came to the worſt, I could but die, which would put an End to all theſe Miſeries at once. Pray, *Note*, All this was the Fruit of a diſturbed Mind, an impatient Temper, made, as it were, deſperate by the long Continuance of my Troubles, and the Diſappointments I had met in the Wreck I had been on board of, and where I had been ſo near the obtaining what I ſo earneſtly longed for, *viz.* ſome-body to ſpeak to, and to learn ſome Knowledge from, of the Place where I was, and of the probable Means of my Deliverance; I ſay, I was agitated wholly by theſe Thoughts. All my Calm of Mind in my Reſignation to Providence, and waiting the Iſſue of the Diſpoſitions of Heaven, ſeem'd to be ſuſpended; and I had, as it were, no Power to turn my Thoughts to any thing, but the Project of a Voyage to the Main, which came upon me with ſuch Force, and ſuch an Impetuoſity of Deſire, that it was not to be reſiſted.

When this had agitated my Thoughts for two Hours or more, with ſuch Violence, that it ſet my very Blood into a Ferment, and my Pulſe beat as high as if I had been in a Fever, merely with the extraordinary Fervour of my Mind about it; Nature, as if I had been fatigued and exhauſted with the very Thought of it, threw me into a ſound Sleep: One would have thought I ſhould have dream'd of it; but I did not, nor of any thing relating to it; but I dream'd, that as I was going out in the Morning, as uſual, from my Caſtle, I ſaw upon

upon the Shore two *Canoes*, and eleven Savages coming to Land, and that they brought with them another Savage, whom they were going to kill, in order to eat him; when on a ſudden, the Savage that they were going to kill, jumped away, and ran for his Life; then I thought in my Sleep, that he came running into my little thick Grove, before my Fortification, to hide himſelf; and that I ſeeing him alone, and not perceiving that the others ſought him that way, ſhew'd myſelf to him, and ſmiling upon him, encouraged him: That he kneel'd down to me, ſeeming to pray me to aſſiſt him; upon which I ſhew'd my Ladder, made him go up it, and carried him into my Cave, and he became my Servant; and that as ſoon as I had gotten this Man, I ſaid to myſelf, Now I may certainly venture to the main Land; for this Fellow will ſerve me as a Pilot, and will tell me what to do, and whither to go for Proviſions, and whither not to go for fear of being devoured, what Places to venture into, and what to eſcape. I waked with this Thought, and was under ſuch inexpreſſible Impreſſions of Joy at the Proſpect of my Eſcape in my Dream, that the Diſappointments which I felt upon coming to myſelf, and finding it was no more than a Dream, were equally extravagant the other Way, and threw me into a very great Dejection of Spirit.

Upon this, however, I made this Concluſion, That my only way to go about an Attempt for an Eſcape, was, if poſſible, to get a Savage in my Poſſeſſion; and, if poſſible, it ſhould be one of their Priſoners, whom they had condemned to be eaten, and ſhould bring hither to kill; but theſe Thoughts ſtill were attended with this Difficulty, that it was impoſſible to effect this, without attacking a whole Caravan of them, and killing them all; and this was not only a very deſperate Attempt, and might miſcarry; but, on the other hand, I had greatly ſcrupled the Lawfulneſs of it to me, and my Heart trembled at the Thoughts of ſhedding ſo much Blood, tho' it was for my Deliverance: I need not repeat the Arguments which occurr'd to me againſt this, they being the ſame mentioned before: But though I had other Reaſons to offer now; *viz.* that thoſe Men were Enemies to my Life, and would devour me, if they could; that it was *Self-preſervation* in the higheſt Degree, to deliver myſelf

from

from this Death of a Life, and was acting in my own Defence, as much as if they were actually aſſaulting me, and the like; I ſay, though theſe things argued for it, yet the Thoughts of ſhedding human Blood for my Deliverance, were very terrible to me, and ſuch as I could by no Means reconcile myſelf to a great while.

However, at laſt, after many ſecret Diſputes with myſelf, and after great Perplexities about it (for all theſe Arguments, one way and another, ſtruggled in my Head a long Time) the eager prevailing Deſire of Deliverance at length maſtered all the reſt, and I reſolved, if poſſible, to get one of theſe Savages into my Hands, coſt what it would: My next thing then was to contrive how to do it; and this indeed was very difficult to reſolve on: But as I could pitch upon no probable Means for it, ſo I reſolved to put myſelf upon the Watch, to ſee them when they came on Shore, and leave the reſt to the Event, taking ſuch Meaſures as the Opportunity ſhould preſent, let it be what it would.

With theſe Reſolutions in my Thoughts, I ſet myſelf upon the Scout, as often as poſſible, and indeed ſo often, till I was heartily tired of it; for it was above a Year and an half that I waited, and for a great Part of that Time went out to the Weſt End, and to the South-weſt Corner of the Iſland, almoſt every Day to ſee the *Canoes*, but none appeared: This was very diſcouraging, and began to trouble me much; tho' I can't ſay that it did in this Caſe as it had done ſome Time before that; *viz.* wear off the Edge of my Deſire to the thing; but the longer it ſeem'd to be delay'd, the more eager I was for it: In a Word, I was not at firſt more careful to ſhun the Sight of theſe Savages, and avoid being ſeen by them, than I was now eager to be upon them.

Beſides, I fanſied myſelf able to manage one, nay, two or three Savages, if I had them, ſo as to make them intirely Slaves to me, to do whatever I ſhould direct them, and to prevent their being able, at any Time, to do me any Hurt: It was a great while that I pleaſed myſelf with this Affair, but nothing ſtill preſented; all my Fancies and Schemes came to nothing, for no Savages came near me for a great while.

About a Year and an half after I had entertained theſe Notions, and, by long muſing, had, as it were, reſolved them

them all into nothing, for want of an Occaſion to put them in Execution, I was ſurpriſed one Morning early, with ſeeing no leſs than five *Canoes* all on Shore together, on my Side the Iſland, and the People who belonged to them all landed, and out of my Sight: The Number of them broke all my Meaſures; for ſeeing ſo many, and knowing that they always came four, or ſix, or ſometimes more, in a Boat, I could not tell what to think of it, or how to take my Meaſures to attack twenty or thirty Men ſingle-handed; ſo I lay ſtill in my Caſtle, perplexed, and diſcomforted; however, I put myſelf into all the ſame Poſtures for an Attack, that I had formerly provided, and was juſt ready for Action, if any thing had preſented: Having waited a good while, liſtening to hear if they made any Noiſe, at length being very impatient, I ſet my Guns at the Foot of my Ladder, and clambered up to the Top of the Hill by my two Stages, as uſual; ſtanding ſo however, that my Head did not appear above the Hill; ſo that they could not perceive me by any Means: Here I obſerved, by the Help of my Perſpective-glaſs, that they were no leſs than thirty in Number, that they had a Fire kindled, and that they had had Meat dreſs'd; how they cooked it, that I know not, or what it was; but they were all dancing, in I know not how many barbarous Geſtures and Figures, their own Way, round the Fire.

While I was thus looking on them, I perceiv'd by my Perſpective two miſerable Wretches dragged from the Boats, where, it ſeems, they were laid by, and were now brought out for the Slaughter: I perceiv'd one of them immediately fell, being knock'd down, I ſuppoſe, with a Club or wooden Sword, for that was their Way; and two or three others were at work immediately, cutting him open for their Cookery, while the other Victim was left ſtanding by himſelf, till they ſhould be ready for him: In that very Moment this poor Wretch ſeeing himſelf a little at Liberty, Nature inſpired him with Hopes of Life, and he ſtarted away from them, and ran with incredible Swiftneſs along the Sands, directly towards me, I mean, towards that Part of the Coaſt where my Habitation was.

I was dreadfully frighted (that I muſt acknowledge) when I perceived him to run my Way; and eſpecially when, as I thought, I ſaw him purſued by the whole Body;

He relcues his Man Friday and Kills his Purſuers. *Vol. I. Page 190.*

Body; and now I expected that Part of my Dream was coming to paſs, and that he would certainly take Shelter in my Grove; but I could not depend, by any Means, upon my Dream for the reſt of it, *viz.* that the other Savages would not purſue him thither, and find him there: However, I kept my Station, and my Spirits began to recover, when I found that there were not above three Men that followed him; and ſtill more was I encouraged, when I found that he outſtript them exceedingly in running, and gained ground of them, ſo that if he could but hold it for half an Hour, I ſaw eaſily he would fairly get away from them all.

There was between them and my Caſtle the Creek, which I mention'd often at the firſt Part of my Story, when I landed my Cargoes out of the Ship; and this I knew, he muſt neceſſarily ſwim over, or the poor Wretch would be taken there: But when the Savage eſcaping came thither, he made nothing of it, tho' the Tide was then up; but plunging in, ſwam thro' in about thirty Strokes, or thereabouts, landed, and ran on with exceeding Strength and Swiftneſs; when the three Purſuers came to the Creek, I found that two of them could ſwim, but the third could not, and that he ſtanding on the other Side, look'd at the other, but went no farther; and ſoon after went ſoftly back again, which, as it happened, was very well for him in the main.

I obſerved that the two who ſwam, were yet more than twice as long ſwimming over the Creek, than the Fellow was that fled from them: It came now very warmly upon my Thoughts, and indeed irreſiſtibly, that now was my Time to get me a Servant, and perhaps a Companion, or Aſſiſtant, and that I was called plainly by Providence to ſave this poor Creature's Life: I immediately got down the Ladders with all poſſible Expedition, fetched my two Guns, for they were both at the Foot of the Ladder, as I obſerved above; and getting up again with the ſame Haſte to the Top of the Hill, I croſſed towards the Sea; and, having a very ſhort Cut, and all down-hill, clap'd myſelf in the Way between the Purſuers and the Purſued, hollowing aloud to him that fled, who, looking back, was at firſt perhaps as much frighted at me as at them; but I beckoned with

my

my Hand to him to come back, and in the mean Time, I ſlowly advanced towards the two that followed; then ruſhing at once upon the foremoſt, I knock'd him down with the Stock of my Piece; I was loth to fire, becauſe I would not have the reſt hear; tho' at that Diſtance it would not not have been eaſily heard; and being out of Sight of the Smoke too, they would not have eaſily known what to make of it. Having knock'd this Fellow down, the other who purſu'd him ſtopp'd, as if he had been frighten'd, and I advanced apace towards him; but as I came nearer, I perceiv'd preſently he had a Bow and Arrow, and was fitting it to ſhoot at me; ſo I was then neceſſitated to ſhoot at him firſt; which I did, and killed him at the firſt Shot. The poor Savage who fled, but had ſtopp'd, tho' he ſaw both his Enemies fallen, and killed (as he thought) yet was ſo frighted with the Fire and Noiſe of my Piece, that he ſtood ſtock-ſtill, and neither came forward, nor went backward, tho' he ſeemed rather inclin'd to fly ſtill, than to come on. I hollowed again to him, and made Signs to come forward, which he eaſily underſtood, and came a little Way, then ſtopp'd again, and then a little farther, and ſtopp'd again, and I could then perceive that he ſtood trembling, as if he had been taken Priſoner, and had juſt been to be kill'd, as his two Enemies were. I beckon'd him again to come to me, and gave him all the Signs of Encouragement, that I could think of; and he came nearer and nearer, kneeling down every ten or twelve Steps, in Token of Acknowledgment for ſaving his Life. I ſmil'd at him, and look'd pleaſantly, and beckon'd to him to come ſtill nearer. At length he came cloſe to me, and then he kneel'd down again, kiſs'd the Ground, and laid his Head upon the Ground, and taking me by the Foot, ſet my Foot upon his Head: This, it ſeems, was in Token of ſwearing to be my Slave for ever. I took him up, and made much of him, and encouraged him all I could. But there was more Work to do yet; for I perceiv'd the Savage, whom I knock'd down, was not kill'd, but ſtunn'd with the Blow, and began to come to himſelf: So I pointed to him, and ſhewing him the Savage, that he was not dead, upon this he ſpoke ſome Words to me; and tho' I could not underſtand them, yet I thought *they were* pleaſant to hear, for they were the firſt Sound

of

of a Man's Voice that I had heard, *my own excepted*, for above five-and-twenty Years: But there was no Time for ſuch Reflections now; the Savage, who was knock'd down, recover'd himſelf ſo far, as to ſit up upon the Ground; and I perceiv'd, that my Savage began to be afraid; but when I ſaw that, I preſented my other Piece at the Man, as if I would ſhoot him; upon this my Savage, *for ſo I call him now*, made a Motion to me to lend him my Sword, which hung naked in a Belt by my Side; ſo I did: He no ſooner had it, but he runs to his Enemy, and at one Blow cut off his Head as cleverly, no Executioner in *Germany* could have done it ſooner or better; which I thought very ſtrange, for one, who, I had Reaſon to believe, never ſaw a Sword in his Life before, except their own wooden Swords; however, it ſeems, as I learn'd afterwards, they make their wooden Swords ſo ſharp, ſo heavy, and the Wood is ſo hard, that they will cut off Heads even with them, ay, and Arms, and that at one Blow too. When he had done this, he comes laughing to me in Sign of Triumph, and brought me the Sword again, and with Abundance of Geſtures, which I did not underſtand, laid it down with the Head of the Savage that he had killed, juſt before me.

But that which aſtoniſh'd him moſt was, to know how I had kill'd the other *Indian* ſo far off; ſo pointing to him, he made Signs to me to let him go to him: So I bad him go, as well as I could; when he came to him, he ſtood like one amaz'd, looking at him; turn'd him firſt on one Side, then on t'other; look'd at the Wound the Bullet had made, which it ſeems was juſt in his Breaſt, where it had made an Hole, and no great Quantity of Blood had followed, but he had bled inwardly, for he was quite dead: Then he took up his Bow and Arrows, and came back; ſo I turn'd to go away, and beckon'd to him to follow me, making Signs to him, that more might come after them.

Upon this he ſign'd to me, that he ſhould bury them with Sand, that they might not be ſeen by the reſt, if they followed; and ſo I made Signs again to him to do ſo; he fell to work, and in an Inſtant he had ſcrap'd an Hole in the Sand with his Hands, big enough to bury the firſt in, and then dragg'd him into it, and cover'd him, and did ſo alſo by the other; I believe he had buried them both in a Quarter of an Hour; then calling

him away, I carry'd him not to my Caſtle, but quite away to my Cave, on the farther Part of the Iſland; ſo I did not let my Dream come to paſs in that Part; *viz.* that he came into my Grove for Shelter.

Here I gave him Bread, and a Bunch of Raiſins to eat, and a Draught of Water, which I found he was indeed in great Diſtreſs for, by his running; and having refreſh'd him, I made Signs for him to go lie down and ſleep, pointing to a Place where I had laid a great Parcel of Rice Straw, and a Blanket upon it, which I uſed to ſleep upon myſelf ſometimes; ſo the poor Creature lay down, and went to ſleep.

He was a comely handſome Fellow, perfectly well made, with ſtrait long Limbs, not too large, tall, and well-ſhap'd, and, as I reckon, about twenty-ſix Years of Age. He had a very good Countenance, not a fierce and ſurly Aſpect, but ſeem'd to have ſomething very manly in his Face, and yet he had all the Sweetneſs and Softneſs of an *European* in his Countenance too, eſpecially when he ſmil'd: His Hair was long and black, not curl'd like Wool; his Forehead very high, and large, and a great Vivacity and ſparkling Sharpneſs in his Eyes. The Colour of his Skin was not quite black, but very tawny, and yet not of an ugly yellow nauſeous Tawny, as the *Braſilians*, and *Virginians*, and other Natives of *America* are, but of a bright kind of a dun Olive Colour, that had in it ſomething very agreeable, tho' not very eaſy to deſcribe. His Face was round and plump, his Noſe ſmall, not flat like the *Negroes*, a very good Mouth, thin Lips, and his Teeth fine, well-ſet, and white as Ivory: After he had ſlumber'd, rather than ſlept, about half an Hour, he wak'd again, and comes out of the Cave to me, for I had been milking my Goats which I had in the Incloſure juſt by: When he eſpy'd me, he came running to me, laying himſelf down again upon the Ground, with all the poſſible Signs of an humble thankful Diſpoſition, making many antick Geſtures to ſhew it. At laſt he lays his Head flat upon the Ground, cloſe to my Foot, and ſets my other Foot upon his Head, as he had done before; and after this, made all the Signs to me of Subjection, Servitude, and Submiſſion imaginable, to let me know how much he would ſerve me as long as he liv'd: I underſtood him in many things, and let him know I was very well

pleas'd

pleas'd with him; in a little Time I began to ſpeak to him, and teach him to ſpeak to me; and firſt, I made him know his Name ſhould be *Friday*, which was the Day I ſav'd his Life; and I call'd him ſo for the Memory of the Time; I likewiſe taught him to ſay *Maſter*, and then let him know that was to be my Name; I likewiſe taught him to ſay *Yes* and *No*, and to know the Meaning of them; I gave him ſome Milk in an earthen Pot, and let him ſee me drink it before him, and ſop my Bread in it; and I gave him a Cake of Bread to do the like, which he quickly comply'd with, and made Signs that it was very good for him.

I kept there with him all that Night, but as ſoon as it was Day, I beckon'd him to come with me, and let him know I would give him ſome Cloaths, at which he ſeem'd very glad, for he was ſtark-naked: As we went by the Place where he had bury'd the two Men, he pointed exactly to the Spot, and ſhewed me the Marks that he had made to find them again, making Signs to me that we ſhould dig them up again, and eat them; at this I appeared very angry, expreſs'd my Abhorrence of it, made as if I would vomit at the Thoughts of it, and beckon'd with my Hand to him to come away, which he did immediately, with great Submiſſion: I then led him up to the Top of the Hill, to ſee if his Enemies were gone, and pulling out my Glaſs, I look'd, and ſaw plainly the Place where they had been, but no Appearance of them, or of their *Canoes*; ſo that it was plain that they were gone, and had left their two Comrades behind them, without any Search after them.

But I was not content with this Diſcovery, but having now more Courage, and conſequently more Curioſity, I took my Man *Friday* with me, giving him the Sword in his Hand, with the Bow and Arrows at his Back, which I found he could uſe very dexterouſly, making him carry one Gun for me, and I two for myſelf, and away we marched to the Place where theſe Creatures had been; for I had a Mind now to get ſome fuller Intelligence of them: When I came to the Place, my very Blood ran chill in my Veins, and my Heart ſunk within me at the Horror of the Spectacle: Indeed it was a dreadful Sight, at leaſt it was ſo to me, though *Friday* made nothin of it: The Place was cover'd with hu-

man Bones, the Ground dy'd with the Blood, great Pieces of Fleſh left here-and-there, half-eaten, mangled, and ſcorch'd; and in ſhort, all the Tokens of the triumphant Feaſt they had been making there, after a Victory over their Enemies: I ſaw three Skulls, five Hands, and the Bones of three or four Legs and Feet, and Abundance of other Parts of the Bodies; and *Friday*, by his Signs, made me underſtand, that they brought over four Priſoners to feaſt upon; that three of them were eaten up, and that he, pointing to himſelf, was the fourth; that there had been a great Battle between them and their next King, whoſe Subjects, it ſeems, he had been one of; and that they had taken a great Number of Priſoners, all which were carried to ſeveral Places by thoſe that had taken them in the Flight, in order to feaſt upon them, as was done here by theſe Wretches upon thoſe they brought hither.

I cauſed *Friday* to gather all the Skulls, Bones, Fleſh, and whatever remain'd, and lay them together on an Heap, and make a great Fire upon it, and burn them all to Aſhes: I found *Friday* had ſtill an hankering Stomach after ſome of the Fleſh, and was ſtill a Canibal in his Nature; but I diſcovered ſo much Abhorrence at the very Thoughts of it, and at the leaſt Appearance of it, that he durſt not diſcover it; for I had, by ſome Means, let him know, that I would kill him if he offered it.

When we had done this, we came back to our Caſtle, and there I fell to work for my Man *Friday*; and firſt of all, I gave him a Pair of Linen Drawers, which I had out of the poor Gunner's Cheſt I mention'd, and which I found in the Wreck; and which, with a little Alteration, fitted him very well; then I made him a Jerkin of Goat's-ſkin, as well as my Skill would allow, and I was now grown a tolerable good Taylor; and I gave him a Cap, which I had made of an Hare-ſkin, very convenient, and faſhionable enough: And thus he was dreſs'd, for the preſent, tolerably well, and mighty well was he pleas'd to ſee himſelf almoſt as well cloath'd as his Maſter: It is true, he went aukwardly in theſe things at firſt; wearing the Drawers was very aukward to him, and the Sleeves of the Waiſtcoat gall'd his Shoulders, and the Inſide of his Arms; but a little eaſing them, where he complain'd they hurt him, and uſing himſelf to them, at length he took to them very well.

The

The next Day after I came home to my Hutch with him, I began to conſider where I ſhould lodge him; and that I might do well for him, and yet be perfectly eaſy myſelf, I made a little Tent for him in the vacant Place between my two Fortifications, in the Inſide of the laſt, and in the Outſide of the firſt: And as there was a Door or Entrance there into my Cave, I made a formal fram'd Door-caſe, and a Door to it of Boards, and ſet it up in the Paſſage, a little within the Entrance; and cauſing the Door to open on the Inſide, I barr'd it up in the Night, taking in my Ladders too; ſo that *Friday* could no Way come at me in the Inſide of my innermoſt Wall, without making ſo much Noiſe in getting over, that it muſt needs awaken me; for my firſt Wall had now a complete Roof over it of long Poles, covering all my Tent, and leaning up to the Side of the Hill, which was again laid croſs with ſmall Sticks inſtead of Laths, and then thatch'd over a great Thickneſs with the Rice-ſtraw, which was ſtrong like Reeds; and at the Hole or Place which was left to go in or out by the Ladder, I had plac'd a kind of Trap-door, which if it had been attempted on the Outſide, would not have open'd at all, but would have fallen down, and made a great Noiſe; and as to Weapons, I took them all in to my Side every Night.

But I needed none of all this Precaution; for never Man had a more faithful, loving, ſincere Servant than *Friday* was to me; without Paſſions, Sullenneſs, or Deſigns; perfectly obliged and engaged; his very Affections were ty'd to me, like thoſe of a Child to a Father; and I dare ſay, he would have ſacrific'd his Life for the ſaving mine, upon any Occaſion whatſoever: The many Teſtimonies he gave me of this, put it out of Doubt; and ſoon convinc'd me, that I needed to uſe no Precautions as to my Safety on his Account.

This frequently gave me Occaſion to obſerve, and that with Wonder, that, however it had pleas'd God in his Providence, and in the Government of the Works of his Hands, to take from ſo great a Part of the World of his Creatures, the beſt Uſes to which their Faculties, and the Powers of their Souls, are adapted; yet that he has beſtow'd upon them the ſame Powers, the ſame Reaſon, the ſame Affections, the ſame Sentiments of Kind-

... and Retirement ...
... Sincerity, Fi-
... and receiving
... when he pleases
... them. they are as
... them to the right Use
... we are. And this
... sometimes, in reflecting, as
... how mean an Use we
... we have these Powers en-
... instruction, the Spirit of
... the Word, added to our
... pleased God to hide the
... many Millions of Souls,
... the poor savage, would make
... we are.

... mind ... was led too far to invade
... and, is it were, arraign
... a Direction of Things, that
... and reveal it to others,
... But I shut it up,
... Conclusion: First,
... Light and Law they
... as God was necessarily,
... holy and just,
... these Creatures were all
... from himself: it was on account of
... what I gave them, as the Scripture says,
... them Rules as their
... would acknowledge to be just, though the
... And, secondly, That
... the Clay in the Hand of the Potter, no
... Why hast thou form'd me thus?

... my new Companion: I was greatly
... with him, and made it my Business to teach
... every thing that was proper to make him useful,
... and loving; but especially to make him speak,
... understand me when I spake; and he was the aptest
... that ever was; and particularly was so merry, so
... diligent, and so pleas'd when he could but un-
... me, or make me understand him, that it was
... pleasant to me to talk to him; and now my Life
began

began to be ſo eaſy, that I began to ſay to myſelf, that could I but have been ſafe from more Savages, I car'd not if I was never to remove from the Place while I liv'd.

After I had been two or three Days return'd to my Caſtle, I thought, that, in order to bring *Friday* off from his horrid Way of feeding, and from the Reliſh of a Canibal's Stomach, I ought to let him taſte other Fleſh; ſo I took him out with me one Morning to the Woods; I went, indeed, intending to kill a Kid out of my own Flock, and bring it home and dreſs it: But as I was going, I ſaw a She-Goat lying down in the Shade, and two young Kids ſitting by her: I catch'd hold of *Friday*, Hold, ſaid I, ſtand ſtill; and made Signs to him not to ſtir; immediately I preſented my Piece, ſhot and kill'd one of the Kids. The poor Creature, who had at a Diſtance, indeed, ſeen me kill the Savage, his Enemy, but did not know, or could imagine, how it was done, was ſenſibly ſurpris'd, trembled and ſhook, and look'd ſo amaz'd, that I thought he would have ſunk down: He did not ſee the Kid I had ſhot at, or perceive I had kill'd it, but ripp'd up his Waiſtcoat to feel if he was not wounded; and, as I found, preſently thought I was reſolv'd to kill him; for he came and kneel'd down to me, and, embracing my Knees, ſaid a great many things I did not underſtand, but I could eaſily ſee, that his Meaning was to pray me not to kill him.

I ſoon found a Way to convince him, that I would do him no Harm; and taking him up by the Hand, laugh'd at him, and, pointing to the Kid which I had kill'd, beckon'd to him to run and fetch it, which he did; and while he was wondering and looking to ſee how the Creature was kill'd, I loaded my Gun again, and by-and-by I ſaw a great Fowl, like an Hawk, ſit upon a Tree within Shot; ſo, to let *Friday* underſtand a little what I would do, I call'd him to me again, pointing at the Fowl, which was indeed a Parrot, tho' I thought it had been an Hawk; I ſay, pointing to the Parrot, and to my Gun, and to the Ground under the Parrot, to let him ſee I would make him fall, I made him underſtand that I would ſhoot and kill that Bird; accordingly I fir'd, and bad him look, and immediately he ſaw the Parrot fall: He ſtood like one frighted again, notwithſtanding all that I had ſaid to him; and I found he was the

more amaz'd, becauſe he did not ſee my put any thing into the Gun; but thought there muſt be ſome wonderful Fund of Death and Deſtruction in that thing, able to kill Man, Beaſt, Bird, or any thing near or far off; for the Aſtoniſhment this created in him, was ſuch, as could not wear off for a long Time; and I believe, if I would have let him, he would have worſhipp'd me and my Gun: As for the Gun itſelf, he would not ſo much as touch it for ſeveral Days after; but would ſpeak to it, and talk to it, as if it had anſwer'd him, when he was by himſelf; which, as I afterwards learn'd of him, was to deſire it not to kill him.

Well: After his Aſtoniſhment was a little over at this, I pointed to him to run and fetch the Bird I had ſhot, which he did, but ſtaid ſome Time; for the Parrot, not being quite dead, was flutter'd a good way off from the Place where ſhe fell; however, he found her, took her up, and brought her to me; and, as I had perceiv'd his Ignorance about the Gun before, I took this Advantage to charge the Gun again, and not let him ſee me do it, that I might be ready for any other Mark that might preſent; but nothing more offer'd at that Time; ſo I brought home the Kid; and the ſame Evening I took the Skin off, and cut it out as well as I could, and having a Pot for that Purpoſe, I boil'd or ſtew'd ſome of the Fleſh, and made ſome very good Broth; after I had begun to eat ſome, I gave ſome to my Man, who ſeem'd very glad of it, and lik'd it very well; but that which was ſtrangeſt to him, was, to ſee me eat Salt with it. He made a Sign to me, that the Salt was not good to eat, and putting a little into his own Mouth, he ſeem'd to neauſeate it, and would ſpit and ſputter at it, waſhing his Mouth with freſh Water after it; on the other hand, I took ſome Meat in my Mouth without Salt, and I pretended to ſpit and ſputter for Want of Salt, as faſt as he had done at the Salt; but it would not do, he would never care for Salt with Meat, or in his Broth; at leaſt, not a great while, and then but a very little.

Having thus fed him with boil'd Meat and Broth, I was reſolv'd to feaſt him the next Day with roaſting a Piece of the Kid; this I did by hanging it before the *Fire in* a String, as I had ſeen many People do in *England*.

land, ſetting two Poles up, one on each Side the Fire, and one croſs on the Top, and tying the String to the croſs Stick, letting the Meat turn continually: This *Friday* admir'd very much; but when he came to taſte the Fleſh, he took ſo many ways to tell me how well he lik'd it, that I could not but underſtand him: And at laſt he told me he would never eat Man's Fleſh any more, which I was very glad to hear.

The next Day I ſet him to work to beating ſome Corn out, and ſifting it in the Manner I uſed to do, as I obſerv'd before; and he ſoon underſtood how to do it as well as I, eſpecially after he had ſeen what the Meaning of it was, and that it was to make Bread of; for after that I let him ſee me make my Bread, and bake it too; and in a little Time *Friday* was able to do all the Work for me, as well as I could do it myſelf.

I began now to conſider, that, having two Mouths to feed inſtead of one, I muſt provide more Ground for my Harveſt, and plant a larger Quantity of Corn, than I us'd to do; ſo I mark'd out a larger Piece of Land, and began the Fence in the ſame Manner as before, in which *Friday* not only work'd very willingly, and very hard, but did it very chearfully; and I told him what it was for, that it was for Corn to make more Bread, becauſe he was now with me, and that I might have enough for him and myſelf too: He appear'd very ſenſible of that Part, and let me know, that he thought I had much more Labour upon me on his Account, than I had for myſelf, and that he would work the harder for me, if I would tell him what to do.

This was the pleaſanteſt Year of all the Life I led in this Place: *Friday* began to talk pretty well, and underſtand the Names of almoſt every thing I had Occaſion to call for, and of every Place I had to ſend him to, and talk a great deal to me; ſo that, in ſhort, I began now to have ſome Uſe for my Tongue again, which indeed I had very little Occaſion for before; *that is to ſay, about Speech:* Beſides the Pleaſure of talking to him, I had a ſingular Satisfaction in the Fellow himſelf; his ſimple unfeigned Honeſty appear'd to me more and more every Day, and I began really to love the Creature; and on his Side, I believe he lov'd me more than it was poſſible for him ever to love any thing before.

How came you to be taken Priſoner then, *Friday*?

Friday. My Nation beat much for all that.

Maſter. How beat; if your Nation beat then came you to be taken?

Friday. They more than my Nation in the Place me was; they take one, two, three, and me: My over-beat them in the yonder Place, where me n there my Nation take one, two, great Thouſand.

Maſter. But why did not your Side recover yo the Hands of your Enemies then?

Friday. They run one, two, three, and me, an go in the *Canoe*; my Nation have no *Canoe* that T

Maſter. Well, *Friday*, and what does your Na with the Men they take? Do they carry them aw eat them as theſe did?

Friday. Yes, my Nation eat Mans too, eat all

Maſter. Where do they carry them?

Friday. Go to other Place where they think.

Maſter. Do they come hither?

Friday. Yes, yes, they come hither; come other el

Maſter. Have you been here with them?

Friday. Yes, I been here [*Points to the* N. W. *the Iſland, which, it ſeems, was their Side.*]

By this I underſtood, that my Man *Friday* had f been among the Savages, who uſed to come on S

I have told this Paſſage, becauſe it introduces what follows; that after I had had this Diſcourſe with him, I aſk'd him, how far it was from our Iſland to the Shore, and whether the *Canoes* were not often loſt: He told me there was no Danger, no *Canoes* ever loſt; but that after a little Way out to Sea, there was a Current, and a Wind always one Way in the Morning, the other in the Afternoon.

This I underſtand to be no more than the Sets of the Tide, as going out, or coming in; but I afterwards underſtood it was occaſion'd by the great Draught and Reflux of the mighty River *Oroonoque*; in the Mouth of which River, as I thought afterwards, our Iſland lay; and that this Land, which I perceived to the W. and N. W. was the great Iſland *Trinidad*, on the North Point of the Mouth of the River: I aſk'd *Friday* a thouſand Queſtions about the Country, the Inhabitants, the Sea, the Coaſt, and what Nations were near; he told me all he knew, with the greateſt Openneſs imaginable: I aſk'd him the Names of the ſeveral Nations of his Sort of People, but could get no other Name than *Caribs*; from whence I eaſily underſtood, that theſe were the *Caribbees*, which our Maps place on that Part of *America* which reaches from the Mouth of the River *Oroonoque* to *Guiana*, and onwards to *St. Martha*: He told me, that up a great Way beyond the Moon, that was, beyond the Setting of the Moon, which muſt be W. from their Country, there dwelt white-bearded Men, like me, and pointed to my great Whiſkers, which I mention'd before; and that they had kill'd *much Mans*, that was his Word: By all which I underſtood he meant the *Spaniards*, whoſe Cruelties in *America* had been ſpread over the whole Countries, and were remember'd by all the Nations from Father to Son.

I inquired if he could tell me how I might come from this Iſland, and get among thoſe white Men; he told me, Yes, yes, I might go in *two Canoe*; I could not underſtand what he meant by *two Canoe*; till at laſt, with great Difficulty, I found he meant, that it muſt be in a large great Boat, as big as *two Canoes*.

This Part of *Friday*'s Diſcourſe began to reliſh with me very well; and from this Time I entertained ſome Hopes, that one Time or other I might find an Opportu-

nity to make my Eſcape from this Place, and that this poor Savage might be a Means to help me to do it.

During the long Time that *Friday* had now been with me, and that he began to ſpeak to me, and underſtand me, I was not wanting to lay a Foundation of religious Knowledge in his Mind; particularly, I aſk'd him one Time, who made him? The poor Creature did not underſtand me at all, but thought I had aſk'd who was his Father: But I took it by another Handle, and aſk'd him, who made the Sea, the Ground he walk'd on, and the Hills and Woods? He told me, it was one old *Benamuckee*, that liv'd beyond all: He could deſcribe nothing of this great Perſon, but that he was very old; much older, he ſaid, than the Sea or the Land, than the Moon or the Stars: I aſk'd him then, if this old Perſon had made all things, why did not all things worſhip him? He look'd very grave, and with a perfect Look of Innocence, ſaid, *All things ſaid O to him:* I aſk'd him, if the People who die in his Country, went away any-where: He ſaid, yes, they all went to *Benamuckee:* Then I aſk'd him, Whether thoſe they eat up went thither too? He ſaid, Yes.

From theſe things I began to inſtruct him in the Knowledge of the true God. I told him, that the great Maker of all things liv'd there, pointing up towards Heaven: That he governs the World by the ſame Power and Providence by which he made it: That he was omnipotent, could do every thing for us; give every thing to us, take every thing from us; and thus, by degrees, I open'd his Eyes: He liſten'd with great Attention, and receiv'd with Pleaſure the Notion of *Jeſus Chriſt* being ſent to redeem us, and of the Manner of making our Prayers to God, and his being able to hear us, even into Heaven: He told me one Day, that if our God could hear us up beyond the Sun, he muſt needs be a greater God than their *Benamuckee*, who liv'd but a little Way off, and yet could not hear, till they went up to the great Mountains where he dwelt, to ſpeak to him. I aſk'd him, if ever he went thither to ſpeak to him? He ſaid, No, they never went that were young Men; none went thither but the old Men; whom he call'd their *Oowakakee*, that is, as I made him explain it to me, their Religious, or Clergy; and that they went to ſay O (ſo he call'd ſaying Prayers) and then came back, and told them

what *Benamuckee* ſaid: By this I obſerv'd, that there is *Prieſtcraft* even amongſt the moſt blinded ignorant Pagans in the World; and the Policy of making a ſecret Religion, in order to preſerve the Veneration of the People to the Clergy, is not only to be found in the *Roman*, but perhaps among all Religions in the World, even among the moſt brutiſh and barbarous Savages.

I endeavour'd to clear up this Fraud to my Man *Friday*; and told him, that the Pretence of their old Men going up to the Mountains to ſay O to their God *Benamuckee*, was a Cheat; and their bringing Word from thence what he ſaid, was much more ſo; that if they met with any Anſwer, or ſpoke with any one there, it muſt be with an evil Spirit: And then I enter'd into a long Diſcourſe with him about the Devil, the Original of him, his Rebellion againſt God, his Enmity to Man, the Reaſon of it, his ſetting himſelf up in the dark Parts of the World to be worſhipp'd inſtead of God, and as God, and the many Stratagems he made uſe of, to delude Mankind to their Ruin; how he had a ſecret Acceſs to our Paſſions, and to our Affections, to adapt his Snares ſo to our Inclinations, as to cauſe us even to be our own Tempters, and to run upon our own Deſtruction by our own Choice.

I found it was not ſo eaſy to imprint right Notions in his Mind about the Devil, as it was about the Being of a God: Nature aſſiſted all my Arguments to evidence to him even the Neceſſity of a great firſt Cauſe, and over-ruling governing Power, a ſecret directing Providence, and of the Equity and Juſtice of paying Homage to him that made us, and the like: But there appear'd nothing of all this in the Notion of an evil Spirit, of his Original, his Being, his Nature, and above all, of his Inclination to do Evil, and to draw us in to do ſo too: And the poor Creature puzzled me once in ſuch a Manner, by a Queſtion merely natural and innocent, that I ſcarce knew what to ſay to him. I had been talking a great deal to him of the Power of God, his Omnipotence, his dreadful Averſion to Sin, his being a conſuming Fire to the Workers of Iniquity; how, as he had made us all, he could deſtroy us, and all the World, in a Moment; and he liſten'd with great Seriouſneſs to me all the while.

After

After this, I had been telling him how the Devil was God's Enemy in the Hearts of Men, and uſed all his Malice and Skill to defeat the good Deſigns of Providence, and to ruin the Kingdom of Chriſt in the World, and the like: Well, ſays *Friday*, but you ſay, God is ſo ſtrong, ſo great, is he not much ſtrong, much might, as the Devil? Yes, yes, ſaid I, *Friday*, God is ſtronger than the Devil, God is above the Devil, and therefore we pray to God to tread him under our Feet, and enable us to reſiſt his Temptations, and quench his fiery Darts. *But*, ſays he again, *if God much ſtrong, much might, as the Devil, why God not kill the Devil, ſo make him no more wicked?*

I was ſtrangely ſurpriſed at his Queſtion, and after all, though I was now an old Man, yet I was but a young Doctor, and ill enough qualified for a Caſuiſt, or a Solver of Difficulties: And, at firſt, I could not tell what to ſay; ſo I pretended not to hear him, and aſked him what he ſaid: But he was too earneſt for an Anſwer to forget his Queſtion; ſo that he repeated it in the very ſame broken Words, as above. By this Time I had recovered myſelf a little, and I ſaid, *God will at laſt puniſh him ſeverely, he is reſerved for the Judgment, and is to be caſt into the bottomleſs Pit, to dwell with everlaſting Fire:* This did not ſatisfy *Friday*; but he returns upon me, repeating my Words, *Reſerve at laſt, me no underſtand: But why not kill the Devil now, not kill great ago?* You may as well aſk me, *ſaid I*, why God does not kill you and me, when we do wicked Things here that offend him: We are preſerv'd to repent and be pardon'd. He muſes a while at this; *Well, well*, ſays he, mighty affectionately, *that well, ſo you, I, Devil, all wicked, all preſerve, repent, God pardon all:* Here I was run down again by him to the laſt Degree, and it was a Teſtimony to me, how the mere Notions of Nature, though they will guide reaſonable Creatures to the Knowledge of a God, and of a Worſhip or Homage due to the Supreme Being of God, as the Conſequence of our Nature; yet nothing but Divine Revelation can form the Knowledge of *Jeſus Chriſt*, and of a Redemption purchaſed for us; of a Mediator of a new Covenant; and of an Interceſſor at the Footſtool of God's Throne, I ſay, nothing but a Revelation from Heaven can form theſe in the Soul; and that therefore the Goſpel of our Lord and Saviour

Jeſus Chriſt, I mean the Word of God, and the Spirit of God, promiſed for the Guide and Sanctifier of his People, are the abſolutely neceſſary Inſtructors of the Souls of Men in the ſaving Knowledge of God, and the Means of Salvation.

I therefore diverted the preſent Diſcourſe between me and my Man, riſing up haſtily, as upon ſome ſudden Occaſion of going out; then ſending him for ſomething a great Way off, I ſeriouſly prayed to God, that he would enable me to inſtruct ſavingly this poor Savage, aſſiſting by his Spirit the Heart of the poor ignorant Creature to receive the Light of the Knowledge of God in *Chriſt*, reconciling him to himſelf, and would guide me to ſpeak ſo to him from the Word of God, as his Conſcience might be convinced, his Eyes opened, and his Soul ſaved: When he came again to me, I entered into a long Diſcourſe with him upon the Subject of the Redemption of Man by the Saviour of the World, and of the Doctrine of the Goſpel preached from Heaven, *viz.* of Repentance towards God, and Faith in our bleſſed Lord *Jeſus*: I then explained to him, as well as I could, why our bleſſed Redeemer took not on him the Nature of Angels, but the Seed of *Abraham*, and how for that Reaſon the fallen Angels had no Share in the Redemption; that he came only to the loſt Sheep of the Houſe of *Iſrael*, and the like.

I had, *God knows*, more Sincerity than Knowledge, in all the Methods I took for this poor Creature's Inſtruction; and muſt acknowledge, what I believe all that act upon the ſame Principle will find, that in laying things open to him, I really informed and inſtructed myſelf in many things that either I did not know, or had not fully conſider'd before; but which occurr'd naturally to my Mind, upon my ſearching into them, for the Information of this poor Savage; and I had more Affection in my Inquiry after Things upon this Occaſion, than ever I felt before; ſo that whether this poor wild Wretch was the better for me or no, I had great Reaſon to be thankful, that ever he came to me: My Grief ſat lighter upon me, my Habitation grew comfortable to me beyond meaſure; and when I reflected, that in this ſolitary Life which I had been confined to, I had not only been moved myſelf to look

As to the Diſputes, Wranglings, Strife, and Contention, which has happen'd in the World about Religion, whether Niceties in Doctrines, or Schemes of Church-government, they were all perfectly uſeleſs to us, as, for aught I can yet ſee, they have been to all the reſt in the World: We had the *ſure Guide* to Heaven, *viz.* the Word of God; and we had, *bleſſed be God*, comfortable Views of the Spirit of God, teaching and inſtructing us by his Word, *leading us into all Truth*, and making us both willing and obedient to the Inſtruction of his Word; and I cannot ſee the leaſt Uſe that the greateſt Knowledge of the diſputed Points in Religion, which have made ſuch Confuſions in the World, would have been to us, if we could have obtain'd it: But I muſt go on with the hiſtorical Part of things, and take every Part in its Order.

After *Friday* and I became more intimately acquainted, and that he could underſtand almoſt all I ſaid to him, and ſpeak fluently, though in broken *Engliſh*, to me; I acquainted him with my own Story, or at leaſt ſo much of it as related to my coming into the Place, how I had liv'd there, and how long: I let him into the Myſtery (for ſuch it was to him) of Gunpowder and Bullets, and taught him how to ſhoot: I gave him a Knife, which he was wonderfully delighted with, and I made him a Belt with a Frog hanging to it, ſuch as in *England* we wear Hangers in; and in the Frog, inſtead of an Hanger, I gave him an Hatchet, which was not only as good a Weapon in ſome Caſes, but much more uſeful upon many Occaſions.

I deſcribed to him the Countries of *Europe*, and particularly *England*, which I came from; how we liv'd, how we worſhipp'd God, how we behav'd to one another, and how we traded in Ships to all the Parts of the World: I gave him an Account of the Wreck which I had been on board of, and ſhew'd him, as near as I could, the Place where ſhe lay; but ſhe was all beaten in Pieces long before, and quite gone.

I ſhew'd him the Ruins of our Boat, which we loſt when we eſcap'd, and which I could not ſtir with my whole Strength then, but was now fallen almoſt all to Pieces: Upon ſeeing this Boat, *Friday* ſtood muſing a great while, and ſaid nothing; I aſk'd him what it

was

was he ſtudied upon? at laſt, ſays he, *Me ſee ſuch Boat like come to Place at my Nation.*

I did not underſtand him a good while; but at laſt, when I had examined further into it, I underſtood by him, that a Boat, ſuch as that had been, came on Shore upon the Country where he liv'd; that is, as he explain'd it, was driven thither by Streſs of Weather: I preſently imagin'd, that ſome *European* Ship muſt have been caſt away upon their Coaſt, and the Boat might get looſe, and drive aſhore; but was ſo dull, that I never once thought of Men making Eſcape from a Wreck thither, much leſs whence they might come; ſo I only inquired after a Deſcription of the Boat.

Friday deſcribed the Boat to me well enough; but brought me better to underſtand him, when he added, with ſome Warmth, *We ſave the white Mans from drown:* Then I preſently aſk'd him, if there were any white Mans, as he called them, in the Boat: *Yes*, he ſaid, *the Boat full of white Mans:* I aſk'd him, how many? He told upon his Fingers ſeventeen: I aſk'd him then, what became of them? He told me, *They live, they dwell at my Nation.*

This put new Thoughts into my Head again; for I preſently imagined, that theſe might be the Men belonging to the Ship that was caſt away in Sight of my Iſland, as I now call it; and who, after the Ship was ſtruck on the Rock, and they ſaw her inevitably loſt, had ſaved themſelves in their Boat, and were landed upon that wild Shore among the Savages.

Upon this I inquired of him more critically, what was become of them; he aſſur'd me they liv'd ſtill there, that they had been there about four Years, that the Savages let them alone, and gave them Victuals to live: I aſk'd him, how it came to paſs they did not kill them, and eat them? He ſaid, *No, they make Brother with them*; that is, as I underſtood him, a Truce: And then he added, *They no eat Mans but when make the War fight:* That is to ſay, they never eat any Men, but ſuch as come to fight with them, and are taken in Battle.

It was after this, ſome conſiderable Time, that being on the Top of the Hill, at the Eaſt-ſide of the Iſland, from whence, as I have ſaid, I had in a clear Day diſcover'd the Main or Continent of *America*; *Friday*, the Weather

ther being very ſerene, looks very earneſtly towards the main Land, and in a kind of Surpriſe falls a jumping and dancing, and calls out to me, for I was at ſome Diſtance from him: I aſk'd him what was the Matter? *O Joy!* ſays he, *O Glad! There ſee my Country, there my Nation!*

I obſerv'd an extraordinary Senſe of Pleaſure appear'd in his Face, and his Eyes ſparkled, and his Countenance diſcover'd a ſtrange Eagerneſs, as if he had a Mind to be in his own Country again; and this Obſervation of mine put a great many Thoughts into me, which made me at firſt not ſo eaſy about my new Man *Friday*, as I was before; and I made no doubt, but that if *Friday* could get back to his own Nation again, he would not only forget all his Religion, but all his Obligations to me; and would be forward enough to give his Countrymen an Account of me, and come back perhaps, with an Hundred or two of them, and make a Feaſt upon me, at which he might be as merry as he uſed to be with thoſe of his Enemies, when they were taken in War.

But I wrong'd the poor honeſt Creature very much, for which I was very ſorry afterwards: However, as my Jealouſy increaſed, and held me ſome Weeks, I was a little more circumſpect, and not ſo familiar and kind to him as before; in which I was certainly in the wrong too, the honeſt grateful Creature having no Thought about it, but what conſiſted of the beſt Principles, both as a religious Chriſtian, and as a grateful Friend, as appeared afterwards to my full Satisfaction.

Whilſt my Jealouſy of him laſted, you may be ſure I was every Day pumping him to ſee if he would diſcover any of the new Thoughts, which I ſuſpected were in him; but I found every thing he ſaid was honeſt, and ſo innocent, that I could find nothing to nouriſh my Suſpicion; and, in ſpite of all my Uneaſineſs, he made me at laſt intirely his own again; nor did he in the leaſt perceive, that I was uneaſy; and therefore I could not ſuſpect him of Deceit.

One Day, walking up the ſame Hill, but the Weather being hazy at Sea, ſo that we could not ſee the Continent, I called to him, and ſaid, *Friday*, do not you wiſh yourſelf in your own Country, your own Nation? *Yes*, he ſaid, *I be much O glad to be at my own Nation.* What would you do there? ſaid I: Would you

turn wild again, eat Mans Fleſh again, and be a Savage as you were before? He look'd full of Concern, and ſhaking his Head, ſaid, *No, no,* Friday *tell them to live good, tell them to pray God, tell them to eat Corn-bread, Cattle-fleſh, Milk, no eat Man again.* Why then, ſaid I to him, *they will kill you:* He look'd grave at that, and then ſaid, *No, they no kill me, they willing love learn:* He meant by this, they would be willing to learn: He added, they learn'd much of the bearded Mans that came in the Boat: Then I aſk'd him, if he would go back to them? He ſmil'd at that, and told me he could not ſwim ſo far: I told him I would make a *Canoe* for him: He told me he would go, if I would go with him. I go! ſaid I, why they will eat me if I come there: *No, no,* ſays he, *me make them no eat you, me make they much love you:* He meant he would tell them how I had kill'd his Enemies and ſav'd his Life, and ſo he would make them love me: Then he told me as well as he could, how kind they were to ſeventeen white Men, or bearded Men, as he call'd them, who came on Shore in Diſtreſs.

From this Time, I confeſs, I had a Mind to venture over, and ſee if I could poſſibly join with theſe bearded Men, who, I made no doubt, were *Spaniards* or *Portugueſe*; not doubting but, if I could, we might find ſome Method to eſcape from thence, being upon the Continent, and a good Company together, better than I could from an Iſland forty Miles off the Shore, and alone without Help: So, after ſome Days, I took *Friday* to work again, by way of Diſcourſe; and told him, I would give him a Boat to go back to his own Nation; and accordingly I carried him to my Frigate, which lay on the other Side of the Iſland; and having clear'd it of Water (for I always kept it ſunk in the Water) I brought it out, ſhew'd it him, and we both went into it.

I found he was a moſt dextrous Fellow at managing it, would make it go almoſt as ſwift and faſt again as I could; ſo when he was in, I ſaid to him, Well, now *Friday*, ſhall we go to your Nation? He look'd very dull at my ſaying ſo, which, it ſeems, was becauſe he thought the Boat too ſmall to go ſo far: I told him then I had a bigger; ſo the next Day, I went to the Place where the firſt Boat lay which I had made, but which

I could

I could not get into the Water; he ſaid that was big enough; but then, as I had taken no Care of it, and it had lain two or three-and-twenty Years there, the Sun had ſplit and dry'd it, that it was in a manner rotten. *Friday* told me, ſuch a Boat would do very well, and would carry *much enough Vittle, Drink, Bread,* that was his Way of talking.

Upon the Whole, I was by this Time ſo fix'd upon my Deſign of going over with him to the Continent, that I told him we would go and make one as big as that, and he ſhould go home in it. He anſwer'd not one Word, but look'd very grave and ſad. I aſk'd him what was the Matter with him. He aſk'd me again thus, *Why you angry mad with* Friday? *what me done?* I aſk'd him what he meant; I told him I was not angry with him at all: *No angry! No angry!* ſays he, repeating the Words ſeveral Times, *Why ſend* Friday *home away to my Nation?* Why, ſaid I, *Friday,* did you not ſay you wiſh'd you were there? *Yes, yes,* ſays he, *wiſh be both there, no wiſh* Friday *there, no Maſter there.* In a word, he would not think of going there without me. I go there, *Friday!* ſaid I: What ſhould I do there? He turn'd very quick upon me at this; *You do great deal much Good,* ſays he, *you teach wild Mans be good, ſober, tame Mans; you tell them know God, pray God, and live new Life.* Alas, *Friday,* ſaid I, thou knoweſt not what thou ſayeſt; I am but an ignorant Man myſelf. *Yes, yes,* ſays he, *you teachee me Good, you teachee them Good.* No, no, *Friday,* ſaid I, you ſhall go without me; leave me here to live by myſelf, as I did before. He look'd confus'd again at that Word, and running to one of the Hatchets which he uſed to wear, he takes it up haſtily, and gives it me. What muſt I do with this? ſaid I to him: *You take kill* Friday, ſays he. What muſt I kill you for? ſaid I again. He returns very quick, *What you ſend* Friday *away for? Take kill* Friday, *no ſend* Friday *away.* This he ſpoke ſo earneſtly, that I ſaw Tears ſtand in his Eyes. In a word, I ſo plainly diſcover'd the utmoſt Affection in him to me, and a firm Reſolution in him, that I told him then, and often after, that I would never ſend him away from me, if he was willing to ſtay with me.

Upon

Upon the Whole, as I found by all his Diſcourſe, a ſettled Affection to me, and that nothing ſhould part him from me, ſo I found all the Foundation of his Deſire to go to his own Country, was laid in his ardent Affection to the People, and his Hopes of my doing them good; a thing, which as I had no Notion of myſelf, ſo I had not the leaſt Thought, or Intention, or Deſire of undertaking it: But ſtill I found a ſtrong Inclination to my attempting an Eſcape, as above, founded on the Suppoſition gathered from the former Diſcourſe; *viz.* That there were ſeventeen bearded Men there; and therefore, without any Delay, I went to work with *Friday*, to find out a great Tree proper to fell, and make a large *Periagua* or *Canoe*, to undertake the Voyage: There were Trees enough in the Iſland to have built a little Fleet, not of *Periaguas* and *Canoes* only, but even of good large Veſſels: But the main thing I looked at, was to get one ſo near the Water, that we might launch it when it was made, to avoid the Miſtake I committed at firſt.

At laſt, *Friday* pitched upon a Tree; for I found he knew much better than I, what kind of Wood was fitteſt for it; nor can I tell to this Day, what Wood to call the Tree we cut down, except that it was very like the Tree we call *Fuſtic*, or between that and the *Nicaragua* Wood, for it was much of the ſame Colour and Smell: *Friday* was for burning the Hollow or Cavity of this Tree out, to make it into a Boat: But I ſhewed him how rather to cut it out with Tools, which after I ſhew'd him how to uſe, he did very handily, and in about a Month's hard Labour we finiſh'd it, and made it very handſome, eſpecially when with our Axes, which I ſhewed him how to handle, we cut and hew'd the Outſide into the true Shape of a Boat; after this, however, it coſt us near a Fortnight's Time to get her along, as it were Inch by Inch, upon great Rollers, into the Water: But when ſhe was in, ſhe would have carried twenty Men with great Eaſe.

When ſhe was in the Water, and tho' ſhe was ſo big, it amaz'd me to ſee with what Dexterity and how ſwift my Man *Friday* would manage her, turn her, and paddle her along; ſo I aſked him if he would, and if we might venture over in her: *Yes*, he ſaid, *he venture over in*

in her very well, though great blow Wind: However, I had a farther Deſign that he knew nothing of, and that was to make a Maſt and Sail, and to fit her with an Anchor and Cable: As to a Maſt, that was eaſy enough to get; ſo I pitch'd upon a ſtrait young Cedar-tree, which I found near the Place, and which there was great Plenty of in the Iſland; and I ſet *Friday* to work to cut it down, and gave him Directions how to ſhape and order it: But as to the Sail, that was my particular Care; I knew I had old Sails, or rather Pieces of old Sails enough; but as I had them now twenty-ſix Years by me, and had not been very careful to preſerve them, not imagining that I ſhould ever have this kind of Uſe for them, I did not doubt but they were all rotten; and indeed moſt of them were ſo; however, I found two Pieces which appeared pretty good, and with theſe I went to work, and with a great deal of Pains, and aukward tedious Stitching (you may be ſure) for want of Needles, I at length made a three-corner'd ugly thing, like what we call in *England* a Shoulder-of-mutton Sail, to go with a Boom at Bottom, and a little ſhort Sprit at the Top, ſuch as uſually our Ships Long-boats ſail with, and ſuch as I beſt knew how to manage; becauſe it was ſuch an one as I uſed in the Boat in which I made my Eſcape from *Barbary*, as related in the firſt Part of my Story.

I was near two Months performing this laſt Work; *viz.* rigging and fitting my Maſt and Sails; for I finiſh'd them very complete, making a ſmall Stay, and a Sail or Foreſail to it, to aſſiſt, if we ſhould turn to Windward; and, which was more than all, I fix'd a Rudder to the Stern of her, to ſteer with; and tho' I was but a bungling Shipwright, yet as I knew the Uſefulneſs and even Neceſſity of ſuch a thing, I applied myſelf with ſo much Pains to do it, that at laſt I brought it to paſs, tho', conſidering the many dull Contrivances I had for it that fail'd, I think it coſt me almoſt as much Labour as making the Boat.

After all this was done, I had my Man *Friday* to teach as to what belong'd to the Navigation of my Boat; for tho' he knew very well how to paddle the *Canoe*, he knew nothing what belong'd to a Sail and a Rudder, and was the moſt amaz'd when he ſaw me work the

Boat

Boat to-and-again in the Sea by the Rudder, and how the Sail gyb'd, and fill'd this way or that way, as the Courſe we ſail'd chang'd; I ſay, when he ſaw this, he ſtood like one aſtoniſh'd and amaz'd: However, with a little Uſe, I made all theſe things familiar to him, and he became an expert Sailor, except that as to the Compaſs, I could make him underſtand very little of that: On the other hand, as there was very little cloudy Weather, and ſeldom or never ány Fogs in thoſe Parts, there was the leſs Occaſion for a Compaſs, ſeeing the Stars were always to be ſeen by Night, and the Shore by Day, except in the rainy Seaſons; and then nobody cared to ſtir abroad, either by Land or Sea.

I was now enter'd on the ſeven-and-twentieth Year of my Captivity in this Place; though the three laſt Years that I had this Creature with me, ought rather to be left out of the Account, my Habitation being quite of another kind than in all the reſt of my Time. I kept the Anniverſary of my landing here with the ſame Thankfulneſs to God for his Mercies as at firſt; and if I had ſuch Cauſe of Acknowledgment at firſt, I had much more ſo now, having ſuch additional Teſtimonies of the Care of Providence over me, and the great Hopes I had of being effectually and ſpeedily deliver'd; for I had an invincible Impreſſion upon my Thoughts, that my Deliverance was at hand, and that I ſhould not be another Year in this Place: However, I went on with my Huſbandry, digging, planting, fencing as uſual; I gather'd and cur'd my Grapes, and did every neceſſary thing, as before.

The rainy Seaſon was in the mean Time upon me, when I kept more within-doors than at other Times; ſo I had ſtow'd our new Veſſel as ſecure as we could, bringing her up into the Creek, where, as I ſaid in the Beginning, I landed my Rafts from the Ship; and haling her up to the Shore, at high-water Mark, I made my Man *Friday* dig a little Dock, juſt big enough to hold her, and juſt deep enough to give her Water enough to float in; and then when the Tide was out, we made a ſtrong Dam croſs the End of it, to keep the Water out; and ſo ſhe lay dry, as to the Tide, from the Sea; and to keep the Rain off, we laid a great *many* Boughs of Trees ſo thick, that ſhe was as well thatch'd

thatch'd as an Houſe; and thus we waited for the Months of *November* and *December*, in which I deſign'd to make my Adventure.

When the ſettled Seaſon began to come in, as the Thought of my Deſign return'd with the fair Weather, I was preparing daily for the Voyage; and the firſt thing I did was to lay up a certain Quantity of Proviſion, being the Store for the Voyage; and intended in a Week or a Fortnight's Time, to open the Dock, and launch out our Boat: I was buſy one Morning upon ſomething of this kind, when I call'd to *Friday*, and bid him go to the Sea-ſhore, and ſee if he could find a Turtle, or Tortoiſe, a thing which we generally got once a Week, for the ſake of the Eggs, as well as the Fleſh. *Friday* had not been long gone, when he came running back, and flew over my outward Wall, or Fence, like one that felt not the Ground, or the Steps he ſet his Feet on; and before I had Time to ſpeak to him, he cry'd out to me, *O Maſter! O Maſter! O Sorrow! O bad!* What's the Matter, *Friday?* ſaid I; *O yonder there*, ſays he, *one, two, three Canoe! one, two, three!* By this way of ſpeaking I concluded there were ſix; but on Inquiry I found there were but three. Well *Friday*, ſaid I, do not be frighted; ſo I hearten'd him up as well as I could: However, I ſaw the poor Fellow moſt terribly ſcar'd; for nothing ran in his Head but that they were come to look for him, and would cut him in Pieces, and eat him; and the poor Fellow trembled ſo, that I ſcarce knew what to do with him: I comforted him as well as I could, and told him I was in as much Danger as he, and that they would eat me as well as him. *But*, ſaid I, Friday, *we muſt reſolve to fight them: Can you fight*, Friday? *Me ſhoot*, ſays he, *but there come many great Number.* No matter for that, ſaid I again, our Guns will fright them that we do not kill. So I aſk'd him, Whether, if I reſolv'd to defend him, he would defend me, and ſtand by me, and do juſt as I bad him? He ſaid, *Me die, when you bid die, Maſter*; ſo I went and fetch'd a good Dram of Rum, and gave him; for I had been ſo good an Huſband of my Rum, that I had a great deal left: When he had drank it, I made him take the two Fowling-pieces which we always carry'd, and load them with large Swan-ſhot, as big as ſmall Piſtol-bullets; then I took

four Muſquets, and loaded them with two Slugs, and five ſmall Bullets each; and my two Piſtols I loaded with a Brace of Bullets each: I hung my great Sword, as uſual, naked by my Side, and gave *Friday* his Hatchet.

When I had thus prepar'd myſelf, I took my Perſpective-glaſs, and went up to the Side of the Hill, to ſee what I could diſcover; and I found quickly, by my Glaſs, that there were one and twenty Savages, three Priſoners, and three *Canoes*; and that their whole Buſineſs ſeem'd to be the triumphant Banquet upon theſe three human Bodies; a barbarous Feaſt indeed, but nothing more than as I had obſerv'd was uſual with them.

I obſerv'd alſo, that they were landed, not where they had done when *Friday* made his Eſcape, but nearer to my Creek, where the Shore was low, and where a thick Wood came cloſe almoſt down to the Sea: This, with the Abhorrence of the inhuman Errand theſe Wretches came about, ſo fill'd me with Indignation, that I came down again to *Friday*, and told him, I was reſolv'd to go down to them, and kill them all; and aſk'd him if he would ſtand by me. He was now gotten over his Fright, and his Spirits being a little rais'd with the Dram I had given him, he was very chearful; and told me, as before, *he would die when I bid die.*

In this Fit of Fury, I took firſt and divided the Arms which I had charg'd, as before, between us: I gave *Friday* one Piſtol to ſtick in his Girdle, and three Guns upon his Shoulder; and I took one Piſtol, and the other three, myſelf; and in this Poſture we march'd out; I took a ſmall Bottle of Rum in my Pocket, and gave *Friday* a large Bag with more Powder and Bullet; and as to Orders, I charg'd him to keep cloſe behind me, and not to ſtir, or ſhoot, or do any thing till I bid him; and in the mean Time, not to ſpeak a Word: In this Poſture I fetch'd a Compaſs to my Right Hand of near a Mile, as well to get over the Creek as to get into the Wood; ſo that I might come within Shot of them before I ſhould be diſcover'd, which I had ſeen by my Glaſs it was eaſy to do.

While I was making this March, my former Thoughts returning, I began to abate my Reſolution; I do not mean, that I entertain'd any Fear of their Number; for as they were naked, unarm'd Wretches, 'tis certain I was ſuperior

to

to them; nay, though I had been alone: But it occurr'd to my Thoughts, what Call, what Occaſion, much leſs, what Neceſſity, I was in to go and dip my Hands in Blood, to attack People, who had neither done or intended me any Wrong: Who as to me, were innocent, and whoſe barbarous Cuſtoms were their own Diſaſter, being in them a Token indeed of God's having left them, with the other Nations of that Part of the World, to ſuch Stupidity, and to ſuch inhuman Courſes; but did not call me to take upon me to be a Judge of their Actions, much leſs an Executioner of his Juſtice; that whenever he thought fit, he would take the Cauſe into his own Hands, and by national Vengeance puniſh them for national Crimes; but that in the mean Time, it was none of my Buſineſs: That it was true, *Friday* might juſtify it, becauſe he was a declar'd Enemy, and in a State of War with thoſe very particular People, and it was lawful for him to attack them; but I could not ſay the ſame with reſpect to me: Theſe things were ſo warmly preſs'd upon my Thoughts all the Way as I went, that I reſolv'd I would only go place myſelf near them, that I might obſerve their barbarous Feaſt, and that I would act then as God ſhould direct; but that unleſs ſomething offer'd that was more a Call to me than yet I knew of, I would not meddle with them.

With this Reſolution I enter'd the Wood, and with all poſſible Warineſs and Silence (*Friday* following cloſe at my Heels,) I march'd till I came to the Skirt of the Wood, on the Side which was next to them; only that one Corner of the Wood lay between me and them: Here I call'd ſoftly to *Friday*, and ſhewing him a great Tree, which was juſt at the Corner of the Wood, I bad him go to the Tree, and bring me Word if he could ſee there plainly what they were doing: He did ſo, and came immediately back to me, and told me they might be plainly view'd there; that they were all about the Fire, eating the Fleſh of one of their Priſoners; and that another lay bound upon the Sand, a little from them, whom he ſaid they would kill next, and which fir'd the very Soul within me. He told me, it was not one of their Nation, but one of the bearded Men whom he had told me of, who came to their Country in the Boat. I was fill'd with Horror at the very naming the white bearded Man, and, going to the

Tree, I ſaw plainly, by my Glaſs, a white Man, who lay upon the Beach of the Sea, with his Hands and his Feet ty'd with Flags, or things like Ruſhes; and that he was an *European*, and had Cloaths on.

There was another Tree, and a little Thicket beyond it, about fifty Yards nearer to them than the Place where I was, which, by going a little Way about, I ſaw I might come at undiſcover'd, and that then I ſhould be within half Shot of them; ſo I with-held my Paſſion, tho' I was indeed enrag'd to the higheſt Degree; and going back about twenty Paces, I got behind ſome Buſhes, which held all the Way till I came to the other Tree, and then I came to a little riſing Ground, which gave me a full View of them, at the Diſtance of about eighty Yards.

I had now not a Moment to loſe; for nineteen of the dreadful Wretches ſat upon the Ground all cloſe huddled together, and had juſt ſent the other two to butcher the poor *Chriſtian*, and bring him, perhaps Limb by Limb, to their Fire; and they were ſtoop'd down to untie the Bands at his Feet. I turn'd to *Friday*; Now, *Friday*, ſaid I, do as I bid thee. *Friday* ſaid, he would. Then, *Friday*, ſaid I, do exactly as you ſee me do; fail in nothing. So I ſet down one of the Muſquets and the Fowling-piece upon the Ground, and *Friday* did the like by his; and with the other Muſquet I took my Aim at the Savages, bidding him do the like. Then aſking him if he was ready, he ſaid, Yes. Then fire at them, ſaid I; and the ſame Moment I fir'd alſo.

Friday took his Aim ſo much better than I, that on the Side that he ſhot, he kill'd two of them, and wounded three more; and on my Side, I kill'd one, and wounded two. They were, you may be ſure, in a dreadful Conſternation; and all of 'em, who were not hurt, jump'd up upon their Feet immediately, but did not know which Way to run, or which Way to look; for they knew not from whence their Deſtruction came: *Friday* kept his Eyes cloſe upon me, that as I had bid him, he might obſerve what I did; ſo, as ſoon as the firſt Shot was made, I threw down the Piece, and took up the Fowling-piece, and *Friday* did the like; he ſees me cock, and preſent; he did the ſame again. Are you ready, *Friday?* ſaid I. Yes, ſays he. Let fly then, ſaid I, in the Name of God; and with that I fir'd again among the amaz'd Wretches, and

ſo

ſo did *Friday*; and as our Pieces were now loaden with what I call'd Swan-ſhot, or ſmall Piſtol-Bullets, we found only two drop; but ſo many were wounded, that they ran about yelling and ſcreaming like mad Creatures, all bloody and miſerably wounded, moſt of them; whereof three more fell quickly after, though not quite dead.

Now, *Friday*, ſaid I, laying down the diſcharg'd Pieces, and taking up the Muſquet, which was yet loaden, Follow me, ſaid I; which he did, with a deal of Courage; upon which I ruſh'd out of the Wood, and ſhew'd myſelf, and *Friday* cloſe at my Foot: As ſoon as I perceiv'd they ſaw me, I ſhouted as loud as I could, and bad *Friday* do ſo too; and running as faſt as I could, *which by the way was not very faſt, being loaded with Arms as I was*, I made directly towards the poor Victim, who was, as I ſaid, lying upon the Beach, or Shore, between the Place where they ſat and the Sea; the two Butchers, who were juſt going to work with him, had left him, at the Surpriſe of our firſt Fire, and fled in a terrible Fright to the Sea-ſide, and had jump'd into a *Canoe*, and three more of the reſt made the ſame Way: I turn'd to *Friday*, and bad him ſtep forwards, and fire at them; he underſtood me immediately, and running about forty Yards to be near them, he ſhot at them, and I thought he had kill'd them all; for I ſaw them all fall on an Heap into the Boat; though I ſaw two of them up again quickly: However, he kill'd two of them, and wounded the third, ſo that he lay down in the Bottom of the Boat, as if he had been dead.

While my Man *Friday* fir'd at them, I pull'd out my Knife, and cut the Flags that bound the poor Victim; and looſing his Hands and Feet, I lifted him up, and aſk'd him in the *Portugueſe* Tongue, what he was? He anſwer'd in *Latin*, *Chriſtianus*; but was ſo weak and faint, that he could ſcarce ſtand, or ſpeak; I took my Bottle out of my Pocket, and gave it him, making Signs that he ſhould drink, which he did; and I gave him a Piece of Bread, which he eat; then I aſk'd him, what Countryman he was? And he ſaid, *Eſpagnole*; and, being a little recover'd, let me know, by all the Signs he could poſſibly make, how much he was in my Debt for his Deliverance: *Seignior*, ſaid I, with as much *Spaniſh* as I could make up, we will talk afterwards, but we muſt

fight now: If you have any Strength left, take this Piſtol and Sword, and lay about you: He took them very thankfully, and no ſooner had he the Arms in his Hands, but as if they had put new Vigour into him, he flew upon his Murderers like a Fury, and had cut two of them in Pieces in an Inſtant; for the Truth is, as the Whole was a Surpriſe to them, ſo the poor Creatures were ſo much frighted with the Noiſe of our Pieces, that they fell down for mere Amazement and Fear, and had no more Power to attempt their own Eſcape, than their Fleſh had to reſiſt our Shot; and that was the Caſe of thoſe five that *Friday* ſhot in the Boat; for as three of them fell with the Hurt they receiv'd, ſo the other two fell with the Fright.

I kept my Piece in my Hand ſtill, without firing, being willing to keep my Charge ready, becauſe I had given the *Spaniard* my Piſtol and Sword; ſo I call'd to *Friday*, and bad him run up to the Tree from whence we firſt fir'd, and fetch the Arms which lay there, that had been diſcharg'd, which he did with great Swiftneſs; and then giving him my Muſquet, I ſat down myſelf to load all the reſt again, and bad them come to me when they wanted: While I was loading theſe Pieces, there happen'd a fierce Engagement between the *Spaniard* and one of the Savages, who made at him with one of their great wooden Swords, the ſame Weapon that was to have kill'd him before, if I had not prevented it: The *Spaniard*, who was as bold and as brave as could be imagin'd, tho' weak, had fought this *Indian* a good while, and had cut him two great Wounds on his Head; but the Savage, being a ſtout luſty Fellow, cloſing in with him, had thrown him down (being faint) and was wringing my Sword out of his Hand, when the *Spaniard*, tho' undermoſt, wiſely quitting his Sword, drew the Piſtol from his Girdle, ſhot the Savage through the Body, and kill'd him upon the Spot, before I, who was running to help, could come near him.

Friday, being now left at his Liberty, purſu'd the flying Wretches with no Weapon in his Hand but his Hatchet; and with that he diſpatch'd thoſe three, who, as I ſaid before, were wounded at firſt and fallen, and all the reſt he could come up with; and the *Spaniard* coming to me for a Gun, I gave him one of the Fowling-pieces, with which he purſu'd two of the Savages, and wounded them

them both; but as he was not able to run, they both got from him into the Wood, where *Friday* purſu'd them, and kill'd one of them; but the other was too nimble for him; and tho' he was wounded, yet had plung'd into the Sea, and ſwam with all his Might off to thoſe who were left in the *Canoe*, which three in the *Canoe*, with one wounded, who we know not whether he dy'd or no, were all that eſcap'd our Hands of one-and-twenty. The Account of the reſt is as follows;

3 Kill'd at our Shot from the Tree.
2 Kill'd at the next Shot.
2 Kill'd by *Friday* in the Boat.
2 Kill'd by *Ditto*, of thoſe at firſt wounded.
1 Kill'd by *Ditto*, in the Wood.
3 Kill'd by the *Spaniard*.
4 Kill'd, being found dropt here-and-there of their Wounds, or kill'd by *Friday* in his Chace of them.
4 Eſcap'd in the Boat, whereof one wounded, if not dead.

21 In all.

Thoſe that were in the *Canoe*, work'd hard to get out of Gun-ſhot; and tho' *Friday* made two or three Shot at them, I did not find, that he hit any of them: *Friday* would fain have had me take one of their *Canoes*, and purſue them; and indeed I was very anxious about their Eſcape, leſt, carrying the News home to their People, they ſhould come back, perhaps, with two or three hundred of their *Canoes*, and devour us by mere Multitudes; ſo I conſented to purſue them by Sea; and running to one of their *Canoes*, I jump'd in, and bad *Friday* follow me; but when I was in the *Canoe*, I was ſurpris'd to find another poor Creature lie there alive, bound Hand and Foot, as the *Spaniard* was, for the Slaughter, and almoſt dead with Fear, not knowing what the Matter was; for he had not been able to look up over the Side of the Boat, he was tied ſo hard, Neck and Heels, and had been tied ſo long, that he had really little Life in him.

I immediately cut the twiſted Flags, or Ruſhes, which they had bound him with, and would have help'd him up; but he could not ſtand, or ſpeak, but groan'd moſt piteouſly, believing, it ſeems, ſtill that he was only unbound in order to be kill'd.

When *Friday* came to him, I bad him ſpeak to him, and tell him of his Deliverance; and pulling out my Bottle, made him give the poor Wretch a Dram, which, with the News of his being deliver'd, reviv'd him, and he ſat up in the Boat; but when *Friday* came to hear him ſpeak, and look'd in his Face, it would have mov'd any one to Tears, to have ſeen how *Friday* kiſs'd him, embrac'd him, hugg'd him, cry'd, laugh'd, hallow'd, jump'd about, danc'd, ſung, then cry'd again, wrung his Hands, beat his own Face and Head, and then ſung and jump'd about again, like a diſtracted Creature: It was a good while, before I could make him ſpeak to me, or tell me what was the Matter, but when he came a little to himſelf, he told me, that it was his Father.

It was not eaſy for me to expreſs how it mov'd me, to ſee what Ecſtaſy and filial Affection had work'd in this poor Savage, at the Sight of his Father, and of his being deliver'd from Death; nor indeed can I deſcribe half the Extravagancies of his Affection after this; for he went into the Boat and out of the Boat a great many Times: When he went in to him, he would ſit down by him, open his Breaſt, and hold his Father's Head cloſe to his Boſom, half an Hour together, to nouriſh it: Then he took his Arms and Ankles, which were numb'd and ſtiff with the Binding, and chafed and rubb'd them with his Hands; and I, perceiving what the Caſe was, gave him ſome Rum out of my Bottle to rub them with, which did them a great deal of Good.

This Action put an End to our Purſuit of the *Canoe* with the other Savages, who were now gotten almoſt out of Sight; and it was happy for us, that we did not; for it blew ſo hard within two Hours after, and before they could be gotten a Quarter of their Way, and continued blowing ſo hard all Night, and that from the North-weſt, which was againſt them, that I could not ſuppoſe their Boat could live, or that they ever reach'd to their own Coaſt.

But

But to return to *Friday*; he was ſo buſy about his Father, that I could not find in my Heart to take him off for ſome Time: But after I thought he could leave him a little, I called him to me, and he came jumping and laughing, and pleas'd to the higheſt Extreme. Then I aſk'd him, if he had given his Father any Bread? He ſhook his Head, and ſaid, *None: Ugly Dog eat all up ſelf.* So I gave him a Cake of Bread out of a little Pouch I carry'd on Purpoſe; I alſo gave him a Dram for himſelf, but he would not taſte it, but carried it to his Father: I had in my Pocket alſo two or three Bunches of my Raiſins, ſo I gave him a Handful of them for his Father. He had no ſooner given his Father theſe Raiſins, but I ſaw him come out of the Boat and run away as if he had been bewitch'd. He ran at ſuch a Rate (for he was the ſwifteſt Fellow of his Foot that ever I ſaw) I ſay, he ran at ſuch a Rate, that he was out of Sight, as it were in an Inſtant; and tho' I call'd and hallow'd too after him, it was all one; away he went, and in a Quarter of an Hour I ſaw him come back again, tho' not ſo faſt as he went; and as he came nearer, I found his Pace was ſlacker, becauſe he had ſomething in his Hand.

When he came up to me, I found he had been quite Home for an earthen Jug, or Pot, to bring his Father ſome freſh Water; and that he had got two more Cakes or Loaves of Bread. The Bread he gave me, but the Water he carry'd to his Father: However, as I was very thirſty too, I took a little Sup of it: This Water reviv'd his Father more than all the Rum or Spirits I had given him; for he was juſt fainting with Thirſt.

When his Father had drank, I call'd him to know if there was any Water left; he ſaid, Yes; and I bad him give to the poor *Spaniard*, who was in as much Want of it as his Father; and I ſent one of the Cakes, that *Friday* brought, to the *Spaniard* too, who was indeed very weak, and was repoſing himſelf upon a green Place, under the Shade of a Tree, and whoſe Limbs were alſo very ſtiff, and very much ſwell'd with the rude Bandage he had been ty'd with: When I ſaw that upon *Friday*'s coming to him with the Water, he ſat up and drank, and took the Bread, and began to eat, I went to him, and gave him an Handful of Raiſins; he look'd up in my Face with all the Tokens of Gratitude and Thankfulneſs that could

appear in any Countenance; but was ſo weak, notwithſtanding he had ſo exerted himſelf in the Fight, that he could not ſtand up upon his Feet; he tried to do it two or three Times, but was really not able, his Ankles were ſo ſwell'd, and ſo painful to him; ſo I bad him ſit ſtill, and caus'd *Friday* to rub his Ankles, and bathe them with Rum, as he had done his Father's.

I obſerv'd the poor affectionate Creature every two Minutes, or perhaps leſs, all the while he was here, turn'd his Head about, to ſee if his Father was in the ſame Place and Poſture as he left him ſitting; and at laſt he found he was not to be ſeen; at which he ſtarted up, and without ſpeaking a Word, flew with that Swiftneſs to him, that one could ſcarce perceive his Feet to touch the Ground as he went: But when he came, he only found he had laid himſelf down to eaſe his Limbs: So *Friday* came back to me preſently, and I then ſpoke to the *Spaniard* to let *Friday* help him up, if he could, and lead him to the Boat, and then he ſhould carry him to our Dwelling, where I would take care of him: But *Friday*, a luſty young Fellow, took the *Spaniard* quite up upon his Back, and carried him away to the Boat, and ſet him down ſoftly upon the Side or Gunnel of the *Canoe*, with his Feet in the Inſide of it, and then lifted them quite in, and ſet him cloſe to his Father, and preſently ſtepping out again, launch'd the Boat off, and paddled it along the Shore faſter than I could walk, tho' the Wind blew pretty hard too; ſo he brought them both ſafe into our Creek; and leaving them in the Boat, runs away to fetch the other *Canoe:* As he paſs'd me, I ſpoke to him, and aſk'd him, whither he went? He told me, *Go fetch more Boat*; ſo away he went, like the Wind; for ſure never Man or Horſe ran like him, and he had the other *Canoe* in the Creek, almoſt as ſoon as I got to it by Land; ſo he wafted me over, and then went to help our new Gueſts out of the Boat, which he did; but they were neither of them able to walk; ſo that poor *Friday* knew not what to do.

To remedy this, I went to work in my Thought, and calling to *Friday* to bid them ſit down on the Bank while he came to me, I ſoon made a kind of Hand-barrow to lay them on, and *Friday* and I carried them up both together upon it between us: But when we got them

them to the Outside of our Wall, or Fortification, we were at a worse Loss than before; for it was impossible to get them over; and I was resolv'd not to break it down: So I set to work again; and *Friday* and I, in about two Hours Time, made a very handsome Tent, cover'd with old Sails, and above that with Boughs of Trees, being in the Space without our outward Fence, and between that and the Grove of young Wood which I had planted: And here we made two Beds of such things as I had; *viz.* of good Rice-straw, with Blankets laid upon it to lie on, and another to cover them on each Bed.

My Island was now peopled, and I thought myself very rich in Subjects; and it was a merry Reflection which I frequently made, how like a King I look'd: First of all, the whole Country was my own mere Property; so that I had an undoubted Right of Dominion. *2dly*, My People were perfectly subjected: I was absolute Lord and Lawgiver; they all ow'd their Lives to me, and were ready to lay down their Lives, *if there had been Occasion for it*, for me: It was remarkable too, I had but three Subjects, and they were of three different Religions. My Man *Friday* was a Protestant; his Father a *Pagan* and a *Canibal*; and the *Spaniard* was a *Papist*: However, I allow'd Liberty of Conscience throughout my Dominions: But this is by the way.

As soon as I had secur'd my two weak rescued Prisoners, and given them Shelter, and a Place to rest them upon, I began to think of making some Provision for them: And the first thing I did, I order'd *Friday* to take a yearling Goat, betwixt a Kid and a Goat, out of my particular Flock, to be kill'd: Then I cut off the hinder Quarter, and, chopping it into small Pieces, I set *Friday* to work, to boiling and stewing, and made them a very good Dish, I assure you, of Flesh and Broth; having put some Barley and Rice also, into the Broth; and as I cook'd it without Doors (for I made no Fire within my inner Wall) so I carried it all into the new Tent; and having set a Table there for them, I sat down and eat my Dinner also with them; and, as well as I could, chear'd them and encouraged them, *Friday* being my Interpreter, especially to his Father, and indeed to the *Spaniard* too; for the *Spaniard* spoke the Language of the *Savages* pretty well.

After we had din'd, or rather ſupp'd, I order'd *Friday* to take one of the *Canoes*, and go and fetch our Muſquets and other Fire-arms, which for Want of Time we had left upon the Place of Battle; and the next Day I order'd him to go and bury the dead Bodies of the Savages, which lay open to the Sun, and would preſently be offenſive; and I alſo order'd him to bury the horrid Remains of their barbarous Feaſt, which I knew were pretty much, and which I could not think of doing myſelf; nay, I could not bear to ſee them, if I went that Way: All which he punctually perform'd, and defac'd the very Appearance of the *Savages* being there; ſo that when I went again, I could ſcarce know where it was, otherwiſe than by the Corner of the Wood pointing to the Place.

I then began to enter into a little Converſation with my two new Subjects; and firſt I ſet *Friday* to inquire of his Father, what he thought of the Eſcape of the *Savages* in that *Canoe*, and whether he might expect a Return of them with a Power too great for us to reſiſt? His firſt Opinion was, that the *Savages* in the Boat never could live out the Storm, which blew that Night they went off, but muſt of Neceſſity be drown'd or driven South to thoſe other Shores, where they were as ſure to be devour'd, as they were to be drown'd if they were caſt away; but as to what they would do if they came ſafe on Shore, he ſaid, he knew not; but it was his Opinion, that they were ſo dreadfully frighted with the Manner of being attack'd, the Noiſe, and the Fire, that he believ'd they would tell their People they were all kill'd by Thunder and Lightning, and not by the Hand of Man; and that the two which appear'd (*viz.* *Friday* and I) were two heavenly Spirits or Furies come down to deſtroy them, and not Men with Weapons. This, he ſaid, he knew, becauſe he heard them all cry out ſo in their Language to one another; for it was impoſſible to them, to conceive that a Man ſhould dart Fire, and ſpeak Thunder, and kill at a Diſtance, without lifting up the Hand, as was done now. And this old Savage was in the right; for, as I underſtood ſince by other Hands, the Savages of that Part never attempted to go over to the Iſland afterwards. They were ſo terrify'd with the Accounts given by thoſe four Men (for it ſeems they did eſcape the Sea) that they believ'd,

whoever went to that inchanted Iſland, would be deſtroyed with Fire from the Gods.

This, however, I knew not, and therefore was under continual Apprehenſions for a good while, and kept always upon my Guard, I and all my Army; for as we were now four of us, I would have ventur'd upon an hundred of them fairly in the open Field at any Time.

In a little Time, however, no more *Canoes* appearing, the Fear of their coming wore off, and I began to take my former Thoughts of a Voyage to the Main into Conſideration, being likewiſe aſſur'd by *Friday*'s Father, that I might depend upon good Uſage from their Nation on his Account, if I would go.

But my Thoughts were a little ſuſpended, when I had a ſerious Diſcourſe with the *Spaniard*, and when I underſtood, that there were ſixteen more of his Countrymen and *Portugueſe*, who having been caſt away, and made their Eſcape to that Side, liv'd there at Peace indeed with the Savages, but were very ſore put to it for Neceſſaries, and indeed for Life: I aſk'd him all the Particulars of their Voyage, and found they were a *Spaniſh* Ship, bound from the *Rio de la Plata*, to the *Havanna*, being directed to leave their Loading there, which was chiefly Hides and Silver, and to bring back what *European* Goods they could meet with there; that they had five *Portugueſe* Seamen on board, whom they took out of another Wreck; that five of their own Men were drown'd when firſt the Ship was loſt; and that theſe eſcap'd thro' infinite Dangers and Hazards, and arriv'd almoſt ſtarv'd on the *Canibal* Coaſt, where they expected to have been devour'd every Moment.

He told me, they had ſome Arms with them, but they were perfectly uſeleſs, for that they had neither Powder or Ball, the Waſhing of the Sea having ſpoil'd all their Powder, but a little which they uſed at their firſt Landing to provide themſelves ſome Food.

I aſk'd him what he thought would become of them there; and if they had form'd no Deſign of making any Eſcape? He ſaid, they had many Conſultations about it; but that having neither Veſſel, nor Tools to build one, or Proviſions of any Kind, their Counſels always ended in Tears and Deſpair.

I aſk'd

I aſk'd him how he thought they would receive a Propoſal from me, which might tend towards an Eſcape; and whether, if they were all here, it might not be done? I told him with Freedom, I fear'd moſtly their Treachery and ill Uſage of me, if I put my Life in their Hands; for that Gratitude was no inherent Virtue in the Nature of Man; nor did Men always ſquare their Dealings by the Obligations they had receiv'd, ſo much as they did by the Advantages they expected: I told him, it would be very hard, that I ſhould be the Inſtrument of their Deliverance, and that they ſhould afterwards make me their Priſoner in *New Spain*, where an *Engliſhman* was certain to be made a Sacrifice, what Neceſſity, or what Accident ſoever, brought him thither: And that I had rather be deliver'd up to the *Savages*, and be devour'd alive, than fall into the mercileſs Claws of the Prieſts, and be carried into the *Inquiſition*. I added, that otherwiſe I was perſuaded, if they were all here, we might, with ſo many Hands, build a Bark large enough to carry us all away, either to the *Braſils* Southward, or to the Iſlands or *Spaniſh* Coaſt Northward: But that if in Requital they ſhould, when I had put Weapons into their Hands, carry me by Force among their own People, I might be ill us'd for my Kindneſs to them, and make my Caſe worſe than it was before.

He anſwer'd with a great deal of Candour and Ingenuity, that their Condition was ſo miſerable, and they were ſo ſenſible of it, that he believ'd they would abhor the Thought of uſing any Man unkindly that ſhould contribute to their Deliverance; and that, if I pleas'd, he would go to them with the old Man, and diſcourſe with them about it, and return again, and bring me their Anſwer: That he would make Conditions with them upon their ſolemn Oath, that they would be abſolutely under my Leading, as their Commander and Captain; and that they ſhould ſwear upon the Holy Sacraments and Goſpel, to be true to me, and to go to ſuch Chriſtian Country as I ſhould agree to, and no other; and to be directed wholly and abſolutely by my Orders, till they were landed ſafely in ſuch Country as I intended; and that he would bring a Contract from them under their Hands for that Purpoſe.

Then he told me, he would firſt ſwear to me himſelf, that

that he would neaer ſtir from me as long as he liv'd, till I gave him Order; and that he would take my Side to the laſt Drop of Blood, if there ſhould happen the leaſt Breach of Faith among his Countrymen.

He told me, they were all of them very civil honeſt Men, and they were under the greateſt Diſtreſs imaginable, having neither Weapons or Cloaths, nor any Food, but at the Mercy and Diſcretion of the *Savages*; out of all Hopes of ever returning to their own Country; and that he was ſure, if I would undertake their Relief, they would live and die by me.

Upon theſe Aſſurances, I reſolv'd to venture to relieve them, if poſſible, and to ſend the old *Savage* and this *Spaniard* over to them to treat: But when he had gotten all things in Readineſs to go, the *Spaniard* himſelf ſtarted an Objection, which had ſo much Prudence in it on one hand, and ſo much Sincerity on the other hand, that I could not but be very well ſatisfied in it; and, by his Advice, put off the Deliverance of his Comrades for at leaſt half a Year. The Caſe was thus:

He had been with us now about a Month; during which Time I had let him ſee in what Manner I had provided, with the Aſſiſtance of Providence, for my Support; and he ſaw evidently what Stock of Corn and Rice I had lain up; which, as it was more than ſufficient for myſelf, ſo it was not ſufficient, at leaſt, without good Huſbandry, for my Family, now it was increas'd to Number four: But much leſs would it be ſufficient, if his Countrymen, who were, as he ſaid, fourteen ſtill alive, ſhould come over; and leaſt of all would it be ſufficient to victual our Veſſel, if we ſhould build one, for a Voyage to any of the Chriſtian Colonies of *America*. So he told me, he thought it would be more adviſeable, to let him and the two other dig and cultivate ſome more Land, as much as I could ſpare Seed to ſow; and that we ſhould wait another Harveſt, that we might have a Supply of Corn for his Countrymen when they ſhould come; for Want might be a Temptation to them to diſagree, or not to think themſelves deliver'd, otherwiſe than out of one Difficulty into another: You know, ſays he, the Children of *Iſrael*, tho' they rejoic'd at firſt at their being deliver'd out of *Egypt*, yet rebelled even againſt God himſelf,

that deliver'd them, when they came to want Bread in the Wilderneſs.

His Caution was ſo ſeaſonable, and his Advice ſo good, that I could not but be very well pleas'd with his Propoſal, as well as I was ſatisfy'd with his Fidelity: So we fell to digging all four of us, as well as the wooden Tools we were furniſh'd with permitted; and in about a Month's Time, by the End of which it was Seed-Time, we had gotten as much Land cur'd and trim'd up, as we ſow'd twenty two Buſhels of Barley on, and ſixteen Jars of Rice, which was, in ſhort, all the Seed we had to ſpare; nor indeed did we leave ourſelves Barley ſufficient for our own Food for the ſix Months that we had to expect our Crop, that is to ſay, reckoning from the Time we ſet our Seed aſide for ſowing; for it is not to be ſuppoſed it is ſix Months in the Ground in that Country.

Having now Society enough, and our Number being ſufficient to put us out of Fear of the Savages, if they had come, unleſs their Number had been very great, we went freely all over the Iſland, where-ever we found Occaſion; and as here we had our Eſcape or Deliverance upon our Thoughts, it was impoſſible, at leaſt for me, to have the Means of it out of mine; to this Purpoſe, I mark'd out ſeveral Trees, which I thought fit for our Work, and I ſet *Friday* and his Father to cutting them down; and then I cau'd the *Spaniard*, to whom I imparted my Thoughts on that Affair, to overſee and direct their Work: I ſhew'd them with what indefatigable Pains I had hew'd a large Tree into ſingle Planks, and I caus'd them to do the like, till they had made about a dozen large Planks of good Oak, near two Feet broad, thirty five Feet long, and from two Inches to four Inches thick: What prodigious Labour it took up, any one may imagine.

At the ſame Time I contriv'd to increaſe my little Flock of tame Goats as much as I could; and to this Purpoſe I made *Friday* and the *Spaniard* go out one Day, and myſelf, with *Friday*, the next Day, for we took our Turns: And by this Means we got about twenty young Kids to breed up with the reſt; for whenever we ſhot the Dam, we ſav'd the Kids and added them to our Flock: But above all, the Season for curing the Grapes coming on, I caus'd ſuch a prodigious Quantity to be hung up in the Sun,

Sun, that I believe, had we been at *Alicant*, where the Raiſins of the Sun are cur'd, we ſhould have fill'd ſixty or eighty Barrels; and theſe, with our Bread, was a great Part of our Food, and very good living too, I aſſure you; for it is an exceeding nouriſhing Food.

It was now Harveſt, and our Crop in good Order; it was not the moſt plentiful Increaſe I had ſeen in the Iſland, but, however, it was enough to anſwer our End; for from twenty-two Buſhels of Barley we brought in and threſh'd out above two hundred and twenty Buſhels, and the like in Proportion of the Rice, which was Store enough for our Food to the next Harveſt, tho' all the ſixteen *Spaniards* had been on Shore with me; or, if we had been ready for a Voyage, it would very plentifully have victuall'd our Ship, to have carry'd us to any Part of the World, *that is to ſay*, of *America*. When we had thus hous'd and ſecur'd our Magazine of Corn, we fell to work to make more Wicker-work; *viz.* great Baſkets in which we kept it; and the *Spaniard* was very hardy and dextrous at this Part, and often blam'd me, that I did not make ſome things for Defence, of this Kind of Work; but I ſaw no Need of it: And now having a full Supply of Food for all the Gueſts expected, I gave the *Spaniard* Leave to go over the Main, to ſee what he could do with thoſe he left behind him there: I gave him a ſtrict Charge in writing not to bring any Man with him, who would not firſt ſwear in the Preſence of himſelf and of the old Savage, that he would no Way injure, fight with, or attack the Perſon he ſhould find in the Iſland, who was ſo kind to ſend for them in order to their Deliverance; but that they would ſtand by and defend him againſt all ſuch Attempts; and where-ever they went, would be intirely under, and ſubjected to his Command; and that this ſhould be put in Writing, and ſign'd with their Hands: How we were to have this done, when I knew they had neither Pen or Ink, that indeed, was a Queſtion which we never aſk'd.

Under theſe Inſtructions, the *Spaniard*, and the old Savage (the Father of *Friday*) went away in one of the *Canoes*, which they might be ſaid to come in, or rather were brought in, when they came as Priſoners to be devoured by the Savages.

I gave

I gave each of them a Muſquet with a Firelock on it, and about eight Charges of Powder and Ball, charging them to be very good Huſbands of both, and not to uſe either of them but upon urgent Occaſion.

This was a chearful Work, being the firſt Meaſures us'd by me in View of my Deliverance for now 27 Years and ſome Days; I gave them Proviſions of Bread, and of dry'd Grapes, ſufficient for themſelves for many Days, and ſufficient for their Countrymen for about eight Days Time; and wiſhing them a good Voyage, I let them go, agreeing with them about a Signal they ſhould hang out at their Return, by which I ſhould know them again, when they came back, at a Diſtance, before they came on Shore.

They went away with a fair Gale on the Day that the Moon was at the Full; by my Account in the Month of *October*; but as for the exact Reckoning of Days, after I had once loſt it, I could never recover it again; nor had I kept even the Number of Years ſo punctually, as to be ſure that I was right, tho', as it prov'd, when I afterwards examin'd my Account, I found I had kept a true Reckoning of Years.

It was no leſs than eight Days I waited for them, when a ſtrange and unforeſeen Accident interven'd, of which the like has not, perhaps, been heard of in Hiſtory. I was faſt aſleep in my Hutch one Morning, when my Man *Friday* came running in to me, and call'd aloud, *Maſter, Maſter, they are come, they are come.*

I jump'd up, and, regardleſs of Danger, I went out as ſoon as I could get my Cloaths on, through my little Grove, which (by the way) was by this Time grown to be a very thick Wood: I ſay, regardleſs of Danger, I went without my Arms, which was not my Cuſtom to do; but I was ſurpris'd, when turning my Eyes to the Sea, I preſently ſaw a Boat at about a League and an half's Diſtance, ſtanding in for the Shore, with a *Shoulder-of-mutton-Sail*, as they call it, and the Wind blowing pretty fair to bring them in: Alſo I obſerv'd preſently, that they did not come from that Side which the Shore lay on, but from the Southermoſt End of the Iſland: Upon this I called *Friday* in, and bid him lie cloſe, for theſe were not the People we look'd for, and that we did not know yet whether they were Friends or Enemies.

In

R. Crusoes Island.

In the next Place, I went in to fetch my Perſpective-glaſs, to ſee what I could make of them; and having taken the Ladder out, I climb'd up to the Top of the Hill, as I us'd to do when I was apprehenſive of any thing, and to take my View the plainer without being diſcover'd.

I had ſcarce ſet my Foot on the Hill, when my Eye plainly diſcover'd a Ship lying at an Anchor, at about two Leagues and an half's Diſtance from me, S. S. E. but not above a League and an half from the Shore. By my Obſervation it appear'd plainly to be an *Engliſh* Ship, and the Boat appear'd to be an *Engliſh* Long-boat.

I cannot expreſs the Confuſion I was in, though the Joy of ſeeing a Ship, and one whom I had Reaſon to believe was mann'd by my own Countrymen, and conſequently Friends, was ſuch as I cannot deſcribe; but yet I had ſome ſecret Doubts hung about me, I cannot tell from whence they came, bidding me keep upon my Guard. In the firſt Place, it occurr'd to me to conſider what Buſineſs an *Engliſh* Ship could have in that Part of the World; ſince it was not the Way to or from any Part of the World where the *Engliſh* had any Traffick; and I knew there had been no Storms to drive them in there, as in Diſtreſs; and that if they were *Engliſh* really, it was moſt probable, that they were here upon no good Deſign; and that I had better continue as I was, than fall into the Hands of Thieves and Murderers.

Let no Man deſpiſe the ſecret Hints and Notices of Danger, which ſometimes are given him when he may think there is no Poſſibility of its being real. That ſuch Hints and Notices are given us, I believe few that have made any Obſervations of things can deny; that they are certain Diſcoveries of an inviſible World, and a Converſe of Spirits, we cannot doubt; and if the Tendency of them ſeems to be to warn us of Danger, why ſhould we not ſuppoſe they are from ſome friendly Agent (whether ſupreme, or inferior and ſubordinate, is not the Queſtion) and that they are given for our Good?

The preſent Queſtion abundantly confirms me in the Juſtice of this Reaſoning; for had I not been made cautious by this ſecret Admonition, come it from whence it will,

will, I had been undone inevitably, and in a far worſe Condition than before, as you will ſee preſently.

I had not kept myſelf long in this Poſture, but I ſaw the Boat drew near the Shore, as if they look'd for a Creek to thruſt in at for the Convenience of Landing; however, as they did not come quite far enough, they did not ſee the little Inlet where I formerly landed my Rafts, but run their Boat on Shore upon the Beach, at about half a Mile from me, which was very happy for me; for otherwiſe they would have landed juſt, as I may ſay, at my Door, and would ſoon have beaten me out of my Caſtle, and, perhaps, have plunder'd me of all I had.

When they were on Shore, I was fully ſatisfy'd they were *Engliſhmen*, at leaſt moſt of them; one or two I thought were *Dutch*, but it did not prove ſo: There were in all eleven Men, whereof three of them I found were unarm'd, and (as I thought) bound; and when the firſt four or five of them were jump'd on Shore, they took thoſe three out of the Boat as Priſoners: One of the three I could perceive uſing the moſt paſſionate Geſtures of Intreaty, Affliction, and Deſpair even to a Kind of Extravagance; the other two, I could perceive lifted up their Hands ſometimes, and appear'd concern'd indeed, but not to ſuch a Degree as the firſt.

I was perfectly confounded at the Sight, and knew not what the Meaning of it ſhould be; *Friday* call'd out to me in *Engliſh*, as well as he could, *O Maſter! You ſee* Engliſh *Mans eat Priſoners as well as* Savage *Mans.* Why, ſaid I, *Friday*, do you think they are going to eat them then? *Yes*, ſays *Friday*, *they will eat them.* No, no, ſaid I, *Friday*; I am afraid they will murder them indeed; but you may be ſure they will not eat them.

All this while I had no Thought of what the Matter really was, but ſtood trembling with the Horror of the Sight, expecting every Moment when the three Priſoners ſhould be kill'd; nay, once I ſaw one of the Villains lift up his Arm with a great Cutlace (as the Seamen call it) or Sword, to ſtrike one of the poor Men; and I expected to ſee him fall every Moment, at which all the Blood in my Body ſeem'd to run chill in my Veins.

I wiſh'd

I wiſh'd heartily now for my *Spaniard*, and the Savage that was gone with him; or that I had any Way to have come undiſcover'd within Shot of them, that I might have reſcu'd the three Men; for I ſaw no Fire-arms they had among them; but it fell out to my Mind another Way.

After I had obſerv'd the outrageous Uſage of the three Men by the inſolent Seamen, I obſerv'd the Fellows ran ſcattering about the Land, as if they wanted to ſee the Country: I obſerv'd alſo, that the three other Men had Liberty to go where they pleas'd; but they ſat down all three upon the Ground very penſive, and look'd like Men in Deſpair.

This put me in Mind of the firſt Time when I came on Shore, and began to look about me; how I gave myſelf over for loſt, how wildly I look'd round me, what dreadful Apprehenſions I had, and how I lodg'd in the Tree all Night for fear of being devour'd by wild Beaſts.

As I knew nothing that Night of the Supply I was to receive by the providential Driving of the Ship nearer the Land, by the Storms and Tide, by which I have ſince been ſo long nouriſh'd and ſupported; ſo theſe three poor deſolate Men knew nothing how certain of Deliverance and Supply they were, how near it was to them, and how effectually and really they were in a Condition of Safety, at the ſame Time they thought themſelves loſt, and their Caſe deſperate.

So little do we ſee before us in the World, and ſo much Reaſon have we to depend chearfully upon the great Maker of the World, that he does not leave his Creatures ſo abſolutely deſtitute, but that in the worſt Circumſtances they have always ſomething to be thankful for, and ſometimes are nearer their Deliverance than they imagine; nay, are even brought to their Deliverance by the Means by which they ſeem to be brought to their Deſtruction.

It was juſt at the Top of High-water when theſe People came on Shore, and while partly they ſtood parlying with the Priſoners they brought, and partly while they rambled about to ſee what Kind of Place they were in, they had careleſly ſtaid till the Tide was ſpent, and the Water was ebb'd conſiderably away, leaving their Boat a-ground.

They

They had left two Men in the Boat, who, as I found afterwards, having drank a little too much Brandy, fell aſleep; however, one of them waking ſooner than the other, and finding the Boat too faſt a-ground for him to ſtir it, hollow'd for the reſt who were ſtraggling about, upon which they all ſoon came to the Boat; but it was paſt all their Strength to launch her, the Boat being very heavy, and the Shore on that Side being a ſoft ouſy Sand, almoſt like a Quick-ſand.

In this Condition, like true Seamen, who are, perhaps, the leaſt of all Mankind, given to Forethought, they gave it over, and away they ſtroll'd about the Country again; and I heard one of them ſay aloud to another (calling them off from the Boat;) *Why, let her alone,* Jack, *can't ye? ſhe'll float next Tide:* By which I was fully confirm'd in the main Inquiry, of what Countrymen they were.

All this while I kept myſelf cloſe, not once daring to ſtir out of my Caſtle, any farther than to my Place of Obſervation, near the Top of the Hill; and very glad I was, to think how well it was fortified: I knew it was no leſs than ten Hours before the Boat could be on float again, and by that Time it would be dark, and I might be more at Liberty to ſee their Motions, and to hear their Diſcourſe, if they had any.

In the mean Time I fitted myſelf up for a Battle, as before, tho' with more Caution, knowing I had to do with another kind of Enemy than I had at firſt: I order'd *Friday* alſo, whom I had made an excellent Markſman with his Gun, to load himſelf with Arms: I took myſelf two Fowling-pieces, and I gave him three Muſquets: My Figure, indeed, was very fierce; I had my formidable Goat-ſkin Coat on, with the great Cap I mention'd, a naked Sword, two Piſtols in my Belt, and a Gun upon each Shoulder.

It was my Deſign, as I ſaid above, not to have made any Attempt till it was dark; but about Two o'Clock, being the Heat of the Day, I found that in ſhort they were all gone ſtraggling into the Woods, and, as I thought, were all laid down to ſleep: The three poor diſtreſſed Men, too anxious for their Condition to get any Sleep, were however ſet down under the Shelter of a great Tree, at about a Quarter of a Mile from me, and, as I thought, out of Sight of any of the reſt.

Upon

Upon this I reſolv'd to diſcover myſelf to them, and learn ſomething of their Condition: Immediately I march'd in the Figure above, my Man *Friday* at a good Diſtance behind me, as formidable for his Arms, as I, but not making quite ſo ſtaring a *Spectre-like* Figure as I did.

I came as near them undiſcover'd as I could, and then, before any of them ſaw me, I called aloud to them in *Spaniſh*, *What are ye, Gentlemen?*

They ſtarted up at the Noiſe, but were ten Times more confounded when they ſaw me, and the uncouth Figure that I made: They made no Anſwer at all, but I thought I perceiv'd them juſt going to fly from me, when I ſpoke to them in *Engliſh*: Gentlemen, ſaid I, do not be ſurpriſed at me; perhaps you may have a Friend near you, when you did not expect it: He muſt be ſent directly from Heaven then, *ſaid one of them very gravely to me, and pulling off his Hat at the ſame Time*; for our Condition is paſt the Help of Man. All Help is from Heaven, Sir, ſaid I: But can you put a Stranger in the Way how to help you? For you ſeem to me to be in ſome great Diſtreſs: I ſaw you when you landed; and when you ſeem'd to make Application to the Brutes that came with you, I ſaw one of them lift up his Sword to kill you.

The poor Man, with Tears running down his Face, and trembling, looking like one aſtoniſh'd, return'd, *Am I talking to God or Man? Is it a real Man, or an Angel?* Be in no Fear about that, Sir, *ſaid I*: If God had ſent an Angel to relieve you, he would have come better cloath'd, and arm'd after another Manner, than you ſee me in; pray lay aſide your Fears; I am a Man, an *Engliſhman*, and diſpos'd to aſſiſt you, you ſee; I have one Servant only; we have Arms and Ammunition; tell us freely, Can we ſerve you?—What is your Caſe?

Our Caſe, ſaid he, Sir, is too long to tell you, while our Murderers are ſo near; but, in ſhort, Sir, I was Commander of that Ship, my Men having mutiny'd againſt me, they have been hardly prevail'd on not to murder me, and at laſt have ſet me on Shore in this deſolate Place, with theſe two Men with me, one my Mate, the other a Paſſenger, where we expected to periſh, believing the Place to be unhabited, and know not yet what to think of it.

Where are thoſe Brutes, your Enemies? ſaid I; do

you

you know where they are gone? *There they are, Sir,* ſaid he, pointing to a Thicket of Trees; *my Heart trembles for fear they have ſeen us, and heard you ſpeak; if they have, they will certainly murder us all.*

Have they any Fire arms? ſaid I: He anſwer'd, they had only two Pieces, and one which they left in the Boat. Well then, ſaid I, leave the reſt to me; I ſee they are all aſleep; it is an eaſy thing to kill them all; but ſhall we rather take them Priſoners? He told me there were two deſperate Villains among them, that it was ſcarce ſafe to ſhew any Mercy to; but if they were ſecur'd, he believed all the reſt would return to their Duty: I aſk'd him, which they were? He told me, he could not at that Diſtance deſcribe them; but he would obey my Orders in any thing I would direct: Well, ſaid I, let us retreat out of their View or Hearing, leſt they awake, and we will reſolve farther; ſo they willingly went back with me, till the Woods cover'd us from them.

Look you, Sir, ſaid I, if I venture upon your Deliverance, are you willing to make two Conditions with me? He anticipated my Propoſals, by telling me, that both he and the Ship, if recover'd, ſhould be wholly directed and commanded by me in every thing; and if the Ship was not recover'd, he would live and die with me in what Part of the World ſoever I would ſend him; and the two other Men ſaid the ſame.

Well, ſaid I, *my Conditions are but two:* 1. That while you ſtay on this Iſland with me, you will not pretend to any Authority here; and if I put Arms into your Hands, you will upon all Occaſions give them up to me, and do no Prejudice to me or mine, upon this Iſland, and in the mean Time be govern'd by my Orders.

2. That if the Ship is or may be recover'd, you will carry me and my Man to *England* Paſſage-free.

He gave me all the Aſſurance that the Invention and Faith of a Man could deviſe, that he would comply with theſe moſt reaſonable Demands, and beſides would owe his Life to me, and acknowledge it upon all Occaſions as long as he liv'd.

Well then, ſaid I, here are three Muſquets for you, with Powder and Ball; tell me next what you think is proper to be done: He ſhew'd all the Teſtimony of his Gratitude

Gratitude that he was able; but offered to be wholly guided by me: I told him, I thought it was hard venturing any thing, but the beſt Method I could think of, was to fire upon them at once, as they lay; and if any were not kill'd at the firſt Volley, and offered to ſubmit, we might ſave them, and ſo put it wholly upon God's Providence to direct the Shot.

He ſaid very modeſtly, that he was loth to kill them, if he could help it; but that thoſe two were incorrigible Villians, and had been the Authors of all the Mutiny in the Ship; and if they eſcaped, we ſhould be undone ſtill; for they would go on board, and bring the whole Ship's Company, and deſtroy us all: *Well then*, ſaid I, *Neceſſity legitimates my Advice; for it is the only Way to ſave our Lives.* However, ſeeing him ſtill cautious of ſhedding Blood, I told him, they ſhould go themſelves, and manage as they found convenient.

In the Middle of this Diſcourſe we heard ſome of them awake, and ſoon after we ſaw two of them on their Feet: I aſk'd him, if either of them were the Men, who, he had ſaid, were the Heads of Mutiny? He ſaid, *No.* Well then, ſaid I, you may let them eſcape, and Providence ſeems to have waken'd them on purpoſe to ſave themſelves: Now, ſaid I, if the reſt eſcape you, *it is your Fault.*

Animated with this, he took the Muſquet I had given him in his Hand, and a Piſtol in his Belt, and his two Comrades with him, with each Man a Piece in his Hand: The two Men, who were with him, going firſt, made ſome Noiſe, at which one of the Seamen, who was awake, turned about, and, ſeeing them coming, cried out to the reſt; but it was too late then; for the Moment he cried out; they fir'd, *I mean the two Men*, the Captain wiſely reſerving his own Piece: They had ſo well aimed their Shot at the Men they knew, that one of them was killed on the Spot, and the other very much wounded; but not being dead, he ſtarted up upon his Feet, and called eagerly for Help to the other; but the Captain, ſtepping to him, told him it was too late to cry for Help; he ſhould call upon God to forgive his Villainy; and with that Word knock'd him down with the Stock of his Muſquet; ſo that he never ſpoke more: There were three more in the Company, and one of them was alſo ſlightly wounded:

By this Time I was come; and when they ſaw their Danger, and that it was in vain to reſiſt, they begg'd for Mercy: The Captain told them, he would ſpare their Lives, if they would give him any Aſſurance of their Abhorrence of the Treachery they had been guilty of, and would ſwear to be faithful to him in recovering the Ship, and afterwards in carrying her back to *Jamaica*, from whence they came: They gave him all the Proteſtations of their Sincerity that could be deſired, and he was willing to believe them, and ſpare their Lives, which I was not againſt; only I obliged him to keep them bound Hand and Foot while they were upon the Iſland.

While this was doing, I ſent *Friday* with the Captain's Mate to the Boat, with Orders to ſecure her, and bring away the Oars and Sail, which they did; and by-and-by, three ſtraggling Men, that were (happily for them) parted from the reſt, came back upon hearing the Guns fired; and ſeeing their Captain, who before was their Priſoner, now their Conqueror, they ſubmitted to be bound alſo, and ſo our Victory was complete.

It now remained, that the Captain and I ſhould inquire into one another's Circumſtances: I began firſt, and told him my whole Hiſtory, which he heard with an Attention even to Amazement, and particularly at the wonderful Manner of my being furniſh'd with Proviſions and Ammunition; and indeed, as my Story is a whole Collection of Wonders, it affected him deeply; but when he reflected from thence upon himſelf, and how I ſeemed to have been preſerved there on purpoſe to ſave his Life, the Tears ran down his Face, and he could not ſpeak a Word more.

After this Communication was at an End, I carried him, and his two Men, into my Apartments, leading them in juſt where I came out, *viz.* at the Top of the Houſe; where I refreſh'd them with ſuch Proviſions as I had, and ſhewed them all the Contrivances I had made, during my long, long inhabiting that Place.

All I ſhew'd them, all I ſaid to them, was perfectly amazing; but, above all, the Captain admir'd my Fortification, and how perfectly I had concealed my Retreat with a Grove of Trees, which, having now been planted near twenty Years, and the Trees growing much faſter than in *England*, was become a little Wood, and ſo

thick, that it was unpaſſable in any Part of it, but at that one Side, where I had reſerved my little winding Paſſage into it: This I told him was my Caſtle, and my Reſidence; but that I had a Seat in the Country, as moſt Princes have, whither I could retreat upon Occaſion, and I would ſhew him that too another Time; but at preſent our Buſineſs was to conſider, how to recover the Ship: He agreed with me as to that; but told me, he was perfectly at a Loſs what Meaſures to take; for that there were ſtill ſix and twenty Hands on board, who having entered into a curſed Conſpiracy, by which they had all forfeited their Lives to the Law, would be harden'd in it now by Deſperation; and would carry it on, knowing that if they were reduced, they ſhould be brought to the Gallows as ſoon as they came to *England*, or to any of the *Engliſh* Colonies; and that therefore there would be no attacking them with ſo ſmall a Number as we were.

I muſed for ſome Time upon what he had ſaid, and found it was a very rational Concluſion, and that therefore ſomething was to be reſolved on very ſpeedily, as well to draw the Men on board into ſome Snare for their Surpriſe, as to prevent their landing upon us, and deſtroying us: Upon this it preſently occur'd to me, that in a little while, the Ship's Crew, wondering what was become of their Comrades, and of the Boat, would certainly come on Shore in their other Boat, to ſee for them; and that then perhaps they might come armed, and be too ſtrong for us: This he allowed, was rational.

Upon this I told him, the firſt thing we had to do, was to ſtave the Boat, which lay upon the Beach, ſo that they might not carry her off; and, taking every thing out of her, leave her ſo far uſeleſs as not to be fit to ſwim; accordingly we went on board, took the Arms which were left on board, out of her, and whatever elſe we found there, which was a Bottle of Brandy, and another of Rum, a few Biſcuit-cakes, an Horn of Powder, and a great Lump of Sugar, in a Piece of Canvas; the Sugar was five or ſix Pounds; all which was very welcome to me, eſpecially the Brandy and Sugar, of which I had had none left for many Years.

When we had carried all theſe things on Shore (the Oars, Maſt, Sail, and Rudder of the Boat, were carried

away before, as above) we knock'd a great Hole in her Bottom, that if they had come ſtrong enough to maſter us, yet they could not carry off the Boat.

Indeed it was not much in my Thoughts, that we could be capable to recover the Ship; but my View was, that if they went away without the Boat, I did not much queſtion to make her fit again to carry us away to the *Leeward Iſlands*, and call upon our Friends the *Spaniards* in my Way, for I had them ſtill in my Thoughts.

While we were thus preparing our Deſigns, and had firſt, by main Strength, heav'd the Boat up upon the Beach, ſo high that the Tide would not float her off at high-water Mark; and, beſides, had broken an Hole in her Bottom, too big to be quickly ſtopp'd, and were ſat down muſing what we ſhould do; we heard the Ship fire a Gun, and ſaw her make a Waſt with her Ancient, as a Signal for the Boat to come on board; but no Boat ſtirred; and they fir'd ſeveral Times, making other Signals for the Boat.

At laſt, when all their Signals and Firings prov'd fruitleſs, and they found the Boat did not ſtir, we ſaw them (by the Help of our Glaſſes) hoiſt another Boat out, and row towards the Shore; and we found, as they approached, that there were no leſs than ten Men in her, and that they had Fire-arms with them.

As the Ship lay almoſt two Leagues from the Shore, we had a full View of them as they came, and a plain Sight of the Men, even of their Faces; becauſe the Tide having ſet them a little to the Eaſt of the other Boat, they rowed up under Shore, to come to the ſame Place, where the other had landed, and where the Boat lay.

By this means, I ſay, we had a full View of them, and the Captain knew the Perſons and Characters of all the Men in the Boat; of whom he ſaid that there were three very honeſt Fellows, who, he was ſure, were led into this Conſpiracy by the reſt, being overpower'd and frighted.

But that for the Boatſwain, who, it ſeems, was the chief Officer among them, and all the reſt, they were as outrageous as any of the Ship's Crew; and were, no doubt, made deſperate in their new Enterpriſe; and terribly apprehenſive he was, that they would be too powerful for us.

I ſmil'd

I ſmil'd at him, and told him, that Men in our Circumſtances were paſt the Operations of Fear: That ſeeing almoſt every Condition that could be, was better than that we were ſuppos'd to be in, we ought to expect, that the Conſequence, whether Death or Life, would be ſure to be a Deliverance: I aſk'd him, what he thought of the Circumſtances of my Life: And whether a Deliverance were not worth venturing for. And, where, Sir, ſaid I, is your Belief of my being preſerv'd here on Purpoſe to ſave your Life, which elevated you a little while ago? For my Part, ſaid I, there ſeems to be but one thing amiſs in all the Proſpect of it. *What's that?* ſays he. Why, ſaid I, 'tis that, as you ſay, there are three or four honeſt Fellows among them, which ſhould be ſpar'd; had they been all of the wicked Part of the Crew, I ſhould have thought God's Providence had ſingled them out to deliver them into your Hands; for depend upon it, every Man of them that comes aſhore, are our own, and ſhall die or live, as they behave to us.

As I ſpoke this with a rais'd Voice, and chearful Countenance, I found it greatly encourag'd him; ſo we ſet vigorouſly to our Buſineſs: We had, upon the firſt Appearance of the Boat's coming from the Ship, conſider'd of ſeparating our Priſoners, and had indeed ſecur'd them effectually.

Two of them, of whom the Captain was leſs aſſur'd than ordinary, I ſent with *Friday*, and one of the three (deliver'd Men) to my Cave, where they were remote enough, and out of Danger of being heard or diſcover'd, or of finding their Way out of the Woods, if they could have deliver'd themſelves: Here they left 'em bound, but gave 'em Proviſions, and promis'd 'em, if they continu'd there quietly, to give 'em their Liberty in a Day or two; but that if they attempted their Eſcape, they ſhould be put to Death without Mercy. They promis'd faithfully to bear their Confinement with Patience, and were very thankful, that they had ſuch good Uſage as to have Proviſions, and a Light left 'em; for *Friday* gave 'em Candles (ſuch as we made ourſelves) for their Comfort; and they did not know but that he ſtood Centinel over 'em at the Entrance.

The other Priſoners had better Uſage; two of them were kept pinion'd indeed, becauſe the Captain was not free to truſt them; but the other two were taken into my

Service upon their Captain's Recommendation, and their ſolemnly engaging to live and die with us; ſo, them and the three honeſt Men, we were ſeven Me arm'd; and I made no doubt we ſhould be able t well enough with the ten that were a coming, confi that the Captain had ſaid, there were three or four Men among them alſo.

As ſoon as they got to the Place where their Boat lay, they ran their Boat into the Beach, and all on Shore, haling the Boat up after them, wh was glad to ſee; for I was afraid they would rather left the Boat at an Anchor, ſome Diſtance fro Shore, with ſome Hands in her to guard her; a we ſhould not be able to ſeize the Boats.

Being on Shore, the firſt thing they did, they ran the other Boat; and it was eaſy to ſee they were un great Surpriſe, to find her ſtripp'd, as above, of al was in her, and a great Hole in her Bottom.

After they had mus'd awhile upon this, they ſet u or three great Shouts, hollowing with all their Might, if they could make their Companions hear; but all v no Purpoſe; then they came all cloſe in a Ring, and a Volley of their ſmall Arms, which indeed we heard the Echoes made the Woods ring; but it was all thoſe in the Cave, we were ſure, could not hear; thoſe in our keeping, though they heard it well en yet durſt give no Anſwer to them.

They were ſo aſtoniſh'd at the Surpriſe of this, th they told us afterwards, they reſolv'd to go all on b again to their Ship, and let them know there, th Men were all murder'd, and the Long-boat ſtav'd cordingly, they immediately launch'd their Boat a and got all of them on board.

The Captain was terribly amaz'd, and even confou

ſulted together upon; *viz.* to leave three men in the Boat, and the reſt to go on Shore, and go up into the Country to look for their Fellows.

This was a great Diſappointment to us; for now we were at a Loſs what to do; for our ſeizing thoſe 7 Men on Shore would be no Advantage to us if we let the Boat eſcape, becauſe they would then row away to the Ship; and then the reſt of them would be ſure to weigh, and ſet Sail, and ſo our recovering the Ship would be loſt.

However, we had no Remedy but to wait and ſee what the Iſſue of things might preſent: The ſeven Men came on Shore, and the three who remained in the Boat, put her off to a good Diſtance from the Shore, and came to an Anchor to wait for them; ſo that it was impoſſible for us to come at them in the Boat.

Thoſe that came on Shore kept cloſe together, marching towards the Top of the little Hill, under which my Habitation lay; and we could ſee them plainly, tho' they could not perceive us: We could have been very glad they would have come nearer to us, ſo that we might have fir'd at them; or that they would have gone farther off, that we might have come abroad.

But when they were come to the Brow of the Hill, where they could ſee a great Way in the Valley and Woods, which lay towards the North-eaſt Part, and where the Iſland lay loweſt, they ſhouted and hallow'd till they were weary; and not caring, it ſeems, to venture far from the Shore, nor far from one another, they ſat down together under a Tree, to conſider of it: Had they thought fit to have gone to ſleep there, as the other Party of them had done, they had done the Job for us; but they were too full of Apprehenſions of Danger, to venture to go to ſleep, though they could not tell what the Danger was they had to fear, neither.

The Captain made a very juſt Propoſal to me upon this Conſultation of theirs; *viz.* That perhaps they would all fire a Volley again, to endeavour to make their Fellows hear, and that we ſhould all ſally upon them, juſt at the Juncture when their Pieces were all diſcharged, and they would certainly yield, and we ſhould have them without Bloodſhed; I liked the Propoſal, provided it was done while we were near enough

to come up to them, before they could load their Pieces again.

But this Event did not happen, and we lay ſtill a long Time, very irreſolute what Courſe to take; at length I told them, there would be nothing to be done in my Opinion till Night; and then, if they did not return to the Boat, perhaps we might find a Way to get between them and the Shore, and ſo might uſe ſome Stratagem with them in the Boat, to get them on Shore.

We waited a great while, though very impatient, for their removing, and were very uneaſy; when, after long Conſultations, we ſaw them ſtart all up, and march down towards the Sea: It ſeems, they had ſuch dreadful Apprehenſions upon them of the Danger of the Place, that they reſolved to go on board the Ship again, give their Companions over for loſt, and ſo go on with their intended Voyage with the Ship.

As ſoon as I perceived them go towards the Shore, I imagined it to be as it really was; that they had given over their Search, and were for going back again; and the Captain, as ſoon as I told him my Thoughts, was ready to ſink at the Apprehenſions of it; but I preſently thought of a Stratagem to fetch them back again, and which anſwered my End to a Tittle.

I order'd *Friday*, and the Captain's Mate, to go over the little Creek Weſtward, towards the Place where the Savages came on Shore when *Friday* was reſcu'd; and as ſoon as they came to a little riſing Ground, at about half a Mile's Diſtance, I bad them hallow as loud as they could, and wait till they found the Seamen heard them; that as ſoon as ever they heard the Seamen anſwer them, they ſhould return it again, and then keeping out of Sight, take a Round, always anſwering when the other hallow'd, to draw them as far into the Iſland, and among the Woods, as poſſible, and then wheel about again to me, by ſuch Ways as I directed.

They were juſt going into the Boat, when *Friday* and the Mate hallow'd, and they preſently heard them, and anſwering, run along the Shore Weſtward, towards the Voice they heard, when they were preſently ſtopped by the Creek, where the Water being up, they could not get over, and called for the Boat to come up, and ſet *them over,* as indeed I expected. When

When they had ſet themſelves over, I obſerved that the Boat being gone up a good Way into the Creek, and as it were in an Harbour within the Land; they took one of the three Men out of her to go along with them, and left only two in the Boat, having faſten'd her to the Stump of a little Tree on the Shore.

This was what I wiſhed for, and immediately leaving *Friday* and the Captain's Mate to their Buſineſs, I took the reſt with me, and, croſſing the Creek out of their Sight, we ſurpriſed the two Men before they were aware, one of them lying on Shore, and the other being in the Boat; the Fellow on Shore was between ſleeping and waking, and going to ſtart up, the Captain, who was foremoſt, ran in upon him, and knock'd him down, and then called out to him in the Boat to yield, or he was a dead Man.

There needed very few Arguments to perſuade a ſingle Man to yield, when he ſaw five Men upon him; and his Comrade knock'd down; beſides, this was, it ſeems, one of the three who were not ſo hearty in the Mutiny as the reſt of the Crew, and therefore was eaſily perſuaded, not only to yield, but afterwards to join very ſincerely with us.

In the mean Time, *Friday*, and the Captain's Mate, ſo well manag'd their Buſineſs with the reſt, that they drew them, by hallowing and anſwering, from one Hill to another, and from one Wood to another, till they not only heartily tir'd them, but left them where they were very ſure they could not reach back to the Boat before it was dark; and indeed they were heartily tir'd themſelves alſo by the Time they came back to us.

We had nothing now to do but to watch for them in the dark, and to fall upon them, ſo as to make ſure Work with them.

It was ſeveral Hours after *Friday* came back to me, before they came back to their Boat; and we could hear the foremoſt of them, long before they came quite up, calling to thoſe behind to come along, and could alſo hear them anſwer, and complain how lame and tir'd they were, and not being able to come any faſter, which was very welcome News to us.

At length they came up to the Boat; but 'tis impoſſible to expreſs their Confuſion, when they found the Boat faſt a-ground.

a-ground in the Creek, the Tide ebb'd out, and their two Men gone; we could hear them call to one another in a moſt lamentable Manner, telling one another they were gotten into an inchanted Iſland; that either there were Inhabitants in it, and they ſhould all be murder'd; or elſe there were Devils or Spirits in it, and they ſhould be all carried away and devoured.

They hallow'd again, and called their two Comrades by their Names a great many Times, but no Anſwer: After ſome Time, we could ſee them, by the little Light there was, run about wringing their Hands, like Men in Deſpair; and that ſometimes they would go and ſit down in the Boat to reſt themſelves, then come aſhore, and walk about again, and ſo the ſame thing over again.

My Men would fain have had me given them Leave to fall upon them at once in the Dark; but I was willing to take them at ſome Advantage, ſo to ſpare them, and kill as few of them as I could; and eſpecially I was unwilling to hazard the killing any of our Men, knowing the other were very well arm'd: I reſolved to wait to ſee if they did not ſeparate; and therefore, to make ſure of them, I drew my Ambuſcade nearer; and ordered *Friday* and the Captain, to creep upon their Hands and Feet as cloſe to the Ground as they could, that they might not be diſcovered, and get as near them as they could poſſibly, before they offered to fire.

They had not been long in that Poſture, but that the Boatſwain, who was the principal Ringleader of the Mutiny, and had now ſhewn himſelf the moſt dejected and diſpirited of all the reſt, came walking towards them with two more of their Crew; the Captain was ſo eager, at having the principal Rogue ſo much in his Power, that he could hardly have Patience to let him come ſo near as to be ſure of him; for they only heard his Tongue before: But when they came nearer, the Captain and *Friday*, ſtarting up on their Feet, let fly at them.

The Boatſwain was killed upon the Spot; the next Man was ſhot into the Body, and fell juſt by him, tho' he did not die till an Hour or two after; and the third run for it.

At the Noiſe of the Fire, I immediately advanc'd with my whole Army, which was now eight Men; *viz.* myſelf Generaliſſimo; *Friday* my Lieutenant-General; the

Captain

Captain and his two Men, and the three Priſoners of War, whom he had truſted with Arms.

We came upon them indeed in the dark, ſo that they could not ſee our Number; and I made the Man they had left in the Boat, who was now one of us, to call them by Name, to try if I could bring them to a Parley, and ſo might perhaps reduce them to Terms; which fell out juſt as we deſir'd: For indeed it was eaſy to think, as their Condition then was, they would be very willing to capitulate; ſo he calls out, as loud as he could, to one of them, *Tom Smith, Tom Smith.* *Tom Smith* anſwer'd immediately, *Who's that?* Robinſon? For it ſeems he knew his Voice. T'other anſwer'd, *Ay, ay; for God's Sake,* Tom Smith, *throw down your Arms, and yield, or you are all dead Men this Moment.*

Who muſt we yield to? Where are they? ſays *Smith* again. *Here they are,* ſays he; here is our Captain and fifty Men with him, have been hunting you this two Hours; the Boatſwain is kill'd; *Will. Frye* is wounded, and I am a Priſoner; and if you do not yield, you are all loſt.

Will they give us Quarter then? ſays *Tom Smith*; and we will yield. *I'll go and aſk, if you promiſe to yield,* ſays *Robinſon.* So he aſk'd the Captain, and the Captain himſelf then calls out; You, *Smith,* you know my Voice, if you lay down your Arms immediately, and ſubmit, you ſhall have your Lives, all but *Will. Atkins.*

Upon this, *Will. Atkins* cry'd out, *For God's Sake, Captain, give me Quarter: What have I done? They have been all as bad as I;* which by the Way was not true, neither; for, it ſeems, this *Will. Atkins* was the firſt Man that laid hold of the Captain, when they firſt mutiny'd, and us'd him barbarouſly, in tying his Hands, and giving him injurious Language: However, the Captain told him he muſt lay down his Arms at Diſcretion, and truſt to the Governor's Mercy, by which he meant me; for they all call'd me Governor.

In a Word, they all laid down their Arms, and begg'd their Lives; and I ſent the Man that had parley'd with them, and two more, who bound them all; and then my great Army of fifty Men, which, particularly with thoſe three, were all but eight, came up and ſeiz'd upon them all, and upon their Boat, only that I kept myſelf, and one more, out of Sight, for Reaſons of State.

Our next Work was to repair the Boat, and to think of ſeizing the Ship; and as for the Captain, now he had Leiſure to parley with them, he expoſtulated with them upon the Villainy of their Practices with him, and at length, upon the farther Wickedneſs of their Deſign; and how certainly it muſt bring them to Miſery and Diſtreſs in the End, and perhaps to the Gallows.

They all appear'd very penitent, and begged hard for their Lives: As for that, he told them they were none of his Priſoners, but the Commander's of the Iſland; that they thought they had ſet him on Shore in a barren uninhabited Iſland; but it had pleaſed God ſo to direct them, that the Iſland was inhabited, and that the Governor was an *Engliſhman*; that he might hang them all there if he pleaſed; but as he had given them all Quarter, he ſuppoſed he would ſend them to *England*, to be dealt with there, as Juſtice required, except *Atkins*, whom he was commanded by the Governor to adviſe to prepare for Death; for that he would be hanged in the Morning.

Though this was all a Fiction of his own, yet it had its deſir'd Effect: *Atkins* fell upon his Knees to beg the Captain to intercede with the Governor for his Life; and all the reſt begged of him for God's Sake, that they might not be ſent to *England*.

It now occurr'd to me, that the Time of our Deliverance was come, and that it would be a moſt eaſy thing to bring theſe Fellows in, to be hearty in getting Poſſeſſion of the Ship; ſo I retired in the dark from them, that they might not ſee what kind of a Governor they had, and called the Captain to me; when I called, as at a good Diſtance, one of the Men was order'd to ſpeak again, and ſay to the Captain, *Captain, the Commander calls for you*; and preſently the Captain replied, *Tell his Excellency I am juſt a-coming*. This more perfectly amus'd them; and they all believed, that the Commander was juſt by with his fifty Men.

Upon the Captain's coming to me, I told him my Project for ſeizing the Ship, which he liked of wonderfully well, and reſolv'd to put it in Execution the next Morning.

But, in order to execute it with more Art, and to be ſecure of Succeſs, I told him we muſt divide the Priſoners,

ſoners, and that he ſhould go and take *Atkins*, and two more of the worſt of them, and ſend them pinion'd to the Cave where the others lay: This was committed to *Friday*, and the two Men who came on Shore with the Captain.

They convey'd them to the Cave, as to a Priſon; and it was indeed a diſmal Place, eſpecially to Men in their Condition.

The other I order'd to my Bower, as I call'd it, of which I have given a full Deſcription; and as it was fenc'd in, and they pinion'd, the Place was ſecure enough, conſidering they were upon their Behaviour.

To theſe in the Morning I ſent the Captain, who was to enter into a Parley with them; in a Word, to try them, and tell me, whether he thought they might be truſted or no, to go on board, and ſurpriſe the Ship: He talk'd to them of the Injury done him, of the Condition they were brought to; and that tho' the Governor had given them Quarter for their Lives, as to the preſent Action, yet that if they were ſent to *England*, they would all be hang'd in Chains, to be ſure; but that if they would join in ſuch an Attempt, as to recover the Ship, he would have the Governor's Engagement for their Pardon.

Any one may gueſs how readily ſuch a Propoſal would be accepted by Men in their Condition; they fell down on their Knees to the Captain, and promis'd with the deepeſt Imprecations, that they would be faithful to him to the laſt Drop, and that they ſhould owe their Lives to him, and would go with him all over the World; that they would own him for a Father to them as long as they liv'd.

Well, ſays the Captain, I muſt go and tell the Governor what you ſay, and ſee what I can do to bring him to conſent to it: So he brought me an Account of the Temper he found them in; and that he verily believed they would be faithful.

However, that we might be very ſecure, I told him he ſhould go back again, and chooſe out five of them, and tell them, that they ſhould ſee that they did not want Men; but he would take out thoſe five to be his Aſſiſtants, and that the Governor would keep the other two, and the three that were ſent Priſoners to the Caſtle *(my Cave)*

as Hoſtages, for the Fidelity of thoſe five; and that if they prov'd unfaithful in the Execution, the five Hoſtages ſhould be hang'd in Chains alive upon the Shore.

This look'd ſevere, and convinc'd them, that the Governor was in earneſt; however, they had no Way left them but to accept it; and it was now the Buſineſs of the Priſoners, as much as of the Captain, to perſuade the other five to do their Duty.

Our Strength was now thus order'd for the Expedition: 1. The Captain, his Mate, and Paſſenger. 2. Then the two Priſoners of the firſt Gang, to whom, having their Characters from the Captain, I had given their Liberty, and truſted them with Arms. 3. The other two whom I kept till now in my Bower pinion'd; but, upon the Captain's Motion, had now releas'd. 4. Theſe five releas'd at laſt; ſo that they were twelve in all, beſides five we kept Priſoners in the Cave for Hoſtages.

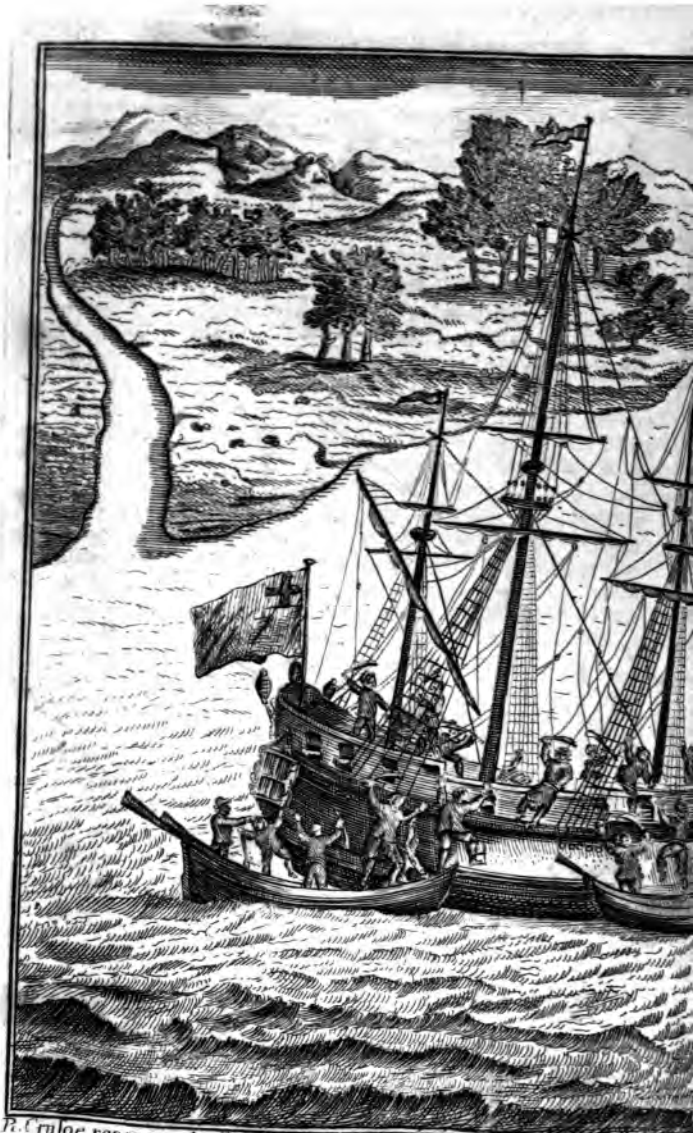
I aſk'd the Captain, if he was willing to venture with theſe Hands on board the Ship: For, as for me, and my Man *Friday*, I did not think it was proper for us to ſtir, having ſeven Men left behind; and it was Employment enough for us to keep them aſunder, and ſupply them with Victuals.

As to the five in the Cave, I reſolv'd to keep them faſt; but *Friday* went twice a Day to them, to ſupply them with Neceſſaries; and I made the other two carry Proviſions to a certain Diſtance, where *Friday* was to take it.

When I ſhew'd myſelf to the two Hoſtages, it was with the Captain, who told them, I was the Perſon the Governor had order'd to look after them, and that it was the Governor's Pleaſure they ſhould not ſtir any where but by my Direction; that if they did, they ſhould be fetch'd into the Caſtle, and be laid in Irons; ſo that as we never ſuffer'd them to ſee me as Governor, ſo I now appear'd as another Perſon, and ſpoke of the Governor, the Garriſon, the Caſtle, and the like, upon all Occaſions.

The Captain now had no Difficulty before him, but to furniſh his two Boats, ſtop the Breach of one, and man them: He made his Paſſenger Captain of one, with four other Men; and himſelf, and his Mate, and

five



R. Crusoe recovers the Ship for the Capt.ⁿ and Conquers the Pyrates. V. I. p. 2

five more, went in the other: And they contriv'd their Buſineſs very well; for they came up to the Ship about Midnight: As ſoon as they came within Call of the Ship, he made *Robinſon* hail them, and tell them he had brought off the Men and the Boat, but that it was a long Time before they had found them, and the like; holding them in a Chat, till they came to the Ship's Side; when the Captain and the Mate, entering firſt with their Arms, immediately knock'd down the ſecond Mate and Carpenter with the But-end of their Muſquets, being very faithfully ſeconded by their Men; they ſecur'd all the reſt that were upon the Main and Quarter-decks, and began to faſten the Hatches to keep them down who were below, when the other Boat, and their Men, entering at the Fore-chains, ſecur'd the Forecaſtle of the Ship, and the Skuttle which went down into the Cook-room, making three Men they found there Priſoners.

When this was done, and all ſafe upon the Deck, the Captain order'd the Mate with three Men to break into the Round-houſe, where the new Rebel Captain lay, and, having taken the Alarm, was gotten up, and with two Men and a Boy had gotten Fire-arms in their Hands; and when the Mate with a Crow ſplit open the Door, the new Captain and his Men fir'd boldly among them, and wounded the Mate with a Muſquet-ball, which broke his Arm, and wounded two more of the Men, but kill'd nobody.

The Mate, calling for Help, ruſh'd, however, into the Round-houſe, wounded as he was, and with his Piſtol ſhot the new Captain through the Head, the Bullet entering at his Mouth, and came out again behind one of his Ears; ſo that he never ſpoke a Word; upon which the reſt yielded, and the Ship was taken effectually, without any more Lives loſt.

As ſoon as the Ship was thus ſecur'd, the Captain order'd ſeven Guns to be fir'd, which was the Signal agreed upon with me, to give me Notice of his Succeſs; which you may be ſure I was very glad to hear, having ſat watching upon the Shore for it, till near two of the Clock in the Morning.

Having thus heard the Signal plainly, I laid me down; and it having been a Day of great Fatigue to me, I ſlept very

very ſound, till I was ſomething ſurpris'd with the Noiſe of a Gun; and preſently ſtarting up, I heard a Man call me by the Name of Governor, Governor; and preſently I knew the Captain's Voice, when climbing up to the Top of the Hill, there he ſtood, and pointing to the Ship, he embrac'd me in his Arms; *My dear Friend and Deliverer*, ſays he, *there's your Ship, for ſhe is all yours, and ſo are we, and all that belong to her.* I caſt my Eyes to the Ship, and there ſhe rode within little more than half a Mile of the Shore; for they had weigh'd her Anchor as ſoon as they were Maſters of her; and the Weather being fair, had brought her to an Anchor juſt againſt the Mouth of a little Creek; and the Tide being up, the Captain had brought the Pinnace in near the Place where I firſt landed my Raſts, and ſo landed juſt at my Door.

I was, at firſt, ready to ſink down with the Surpriſe: For I ſaw my Deliverance indeed viſibly put into my Hands, all things eaſy, and a large Ship juſt ready to carry me away whither I pleas'd to go: At firſt, for ſome Time, I was not able to anſwer one Word; but as he had taken me in his Arms, I held faſt by him, or I ſhould have fallen to the Ground.

He perceiv'd the Surpriſe, and immediately pull'd a Bottle out of his Pocket, and gave me a Dram of Cordial, which he had brought on Purpoſe for me: After I drank it, I ſat down upon the Ground, and though it brought me to myſelf, yet it was a good while before I could ſpeak a Word to him.

All this while the poor Man was in as great an Ecſtaſy as I, only not under any Surpriſe, as I was; and he ſaid a thouſand kind tender things to me, to compoſe and bring me to myſelf; but ſuch was the Flood of Joy in my Breaſt, that it put all my Spirits into Confuſion; at laſt it broke into Tears, and in a little while after I recovered my Speech.

Then I took my Turn, and embrac'd him as my Deliverer; and we rejoic'd together: I told him, I look'd upon him as a Man ſent from Heaven to deliver me, and that the whole Tranſaction ſeem'd to be a Chain of Wonders; that ſuch things as theſe were the Teſtimonies we had of a ſecret Hand of Providence governing the World, and an Evidence, that the Eyes of

an

an infinite Power could ſearch into the remoteſt Corner of the World, and ſend Help to the Miſerable whenever he pleas'd.

I forgot not to lift up my Heart in Thankfulneſs to Heaven; and what Heart could forbear to bleſs him, who had not only in a miraculous Manner provided for one in ſuch a Wilderneſs, and in ſuch a deſolate Condition, but from whom every Deliverance muſt always be acknowledg'd to proceed?

When we had talk'd awhile, the Captain told me, he had brought me ſome little Refreſhments, ſuch as the Ship afforded, and ſuch as the Wretches, who had been ſo long his Maſters, had not plunder'd him of: Upon this he call'd aloud to the Boat, and bid his Men bring the things aſhore that were for the Governor; and indeed it was a Preſent, as if I had been one, not that was to be carried along with them, but as if I had been to dwell upon the Iſland ſtill, and they were to go without me.

Firſt, he had brought me a Caſe of Bottles full of excellent Cordial Waters, ſix large Bottles of *Madeira* Wine; the Bottles held two Quarts apiece; two Pounds of excellent good Tobacco, twelve good Pieces of the Ship's Beef, and ſix Pieces of Pork, with a Bag of Peas, and about an hundred Weight of Biſcuit.

He brought me alſo a Box of Sugar, a Box of Flour, a Bag full of Lemons, and two Bottles of Lime-juice, and Abundance of other things: But beſides theſe, and what was a thouſand Times more uſeful to me, he brought me ſix clean new Shirts, ſix very good Neckcloths, two Pair of Gloves, one Pair of Shoes, an Hat, and one Pair of Stockings, and a very good Suit of Cloaths of his own, which had been worn but very little: In a Word, he cloath'd me from Head to Foot.

It was a very kind and agreeable Preſent, as any one may imagine, to one in my Circumſtances; but never was any thing in the World of that Kind ſo unpleaſant, aukward, and uneaſy, as it was to me to wear ſuch Cloaths at their firſt putting on.

After theſe Ceremonies paſt, and after all his good things were brought into my little Apartment, we began to conſult what was to be done with the Priſoners we had; for it was worth conſidering, whether we might

venture

venture to take them away with us or no, eſpecially two of them, whom we knew to be incorrigible and refractory to the laſt Degree; and the Captain ſaid, he knew they were ſuch Rogues, that there was no obliging them; and if he did carry them away, it muſt be in Irons, as Malefactors to be deliver'd over to Juſtice at the firſt *Engliſh* Colony he could come at; and I found that the Captain himſelf was very anxious about it.

Upon this, I told him, that if he deſir'd it, I durſt undertake to bring the two Men he ſpoke of, to make it their own Requeſt that he ſhould leave them upon the Iſland. *I ſhould be very glad of that*, ſays the Captain, *with all my Heart*.

Well, *ſaid I*, I will ſend for them, and talk with them for you: So I caus'd *Friday* and the two Hoſtages, for they were now diſcharg'd, their Comrades having perform'd their Promiſe; I ſay, I caus'd them to go to the Cave, and bring up the five Men, pinion'd as they were, to the Bower, and keep them there till I came.

After ſome Time, I came thither dreſs'd in my new Habit, and now I was call'd Governor again. Being all met, and the Captain with me, I caus'd the Men to be brought before me, and I told them, I had had a full Account of their villainous Behaviour to the Captain, and how they had run away with the Ship, and were preparing to commit farther Robberies; but that Providence had enſnar'd them in their own Ways, and that they were fallen into the Pit which they had digg'd for others.

I let them know, that by my Direction the Ship had been ſeiz'd, that ſhe lay now in the Road, and they might ſee by and by, that their new Captain had receiv'd the Reward of his Villainy; for that they might ſee him hanging at the Yard-arm.

That as to them, I wanted to know what they had to ſay, why I ſhould not execute them as Pirates taken in the Fact, as by my Commiſſion they could not doubt I had Authority to do.

One of them anſwer'd in the Name of the reſt, that they had nothing to ſay but this, That when they were taken, the Captain promis'd them their Lives, and they humbly implor'd my Mercy: But I told them I knew not what Mercy to ſhew them; for, as for myſelf, I had reſolv'd to quit the Iſland with all my Men, and had taken

taken Paſſage with the Captain to go for *England:* And as for the Captain, he could not carry them to *England*, other than as Priſoners in Irons to be try'd for Mutiny, and running away with the Ship; the Conſequence of which, they muſt needs know, would be the Gallows; ſo that I could not tell which was beſt for them, unleſs they had a Mind to take their Fate in the Iſland, if they deſir'd that, I did not care, as I had Liberty to leave it; I had ſome Inclination to give them their Lives, if they thought they could ſhift on Shore. They ſeem'd very thankful for it; ſaid they would much rather venture to ſtay there, than to be carry'd to *England* to be hang'd; ſo I left it on that Iſſue.

However, the Captain ſeem'd to make ſome Difficulty of it, as if he durſt not leave them there: Upon this I ſeem'd a little angry with the Captain, and told him, that they were my Priſoners, not his; and that ſeeing I had offer'd them ſo much Favour, I would be as good as my Word; and that if he did not think fit to conſent to it, I would ſet them at Liberty as I found them; and if he did not like that, he might take them again, if he could catch them.

Upon this they appear'd very thankful, and I accordingly ſet them at Liberty, and bad them retire into the Woods, to the Place whence they came, and I would leave them ſome Fire-arms, ſome Ammunition, and ſome Directions how they ſhould live very well, if they thought fit.

Upon this, I prepar'd to go on-board the Ship; but told the Captain, that I would ſtay that Night to prepare my things, and deſir'd him to go on board in the mean Time, and keep all right in the Ship, and ſend the Boat on Shore the next Day for me; ordering him, in the mean Time, to cauſe the new Captain who was kill'd, to be hang'd at the Yard-arm, that theſe Men might ſee him.

When the Captain was gone, I ſent for the Men up to me to my Apartment, and enter'd ſeriouſly into Diſcourſe with them of their Circumſtances: I told them, I thought they had made a right Choice; that if the Captain carry'd them away, they would certainly be hang'd: I ſhew'd 'em their Captain hanging at the Yard-arm of the Ship, and told them they had nothing leſs to expect.

When they had all declar'd their Willingneſs to ſtay,

then told them, I would let them into the Story of my living there, and put them into the Way of making it eaſy to them: Accordingly I gave them the whole Hiſtory of the Place, and of my coming to it; ſhew'd them my Fortifications, the Way I made my Bread, planted my Corn, cur'd my Grapes; and, in a Word, all that was neceſſary to make them eaſy: I told them the Story alſo of the ſixteen *Spaniards* that were to be expected; for whom I left a Letter, and made them promiſe to treat them in common with themſelves.

I left them my Fire-arms; *viz.* five Muſquets, three Fowling-pieces, and three Swords: I had about a Barrel of Powder left; for after the firſt Year or two I us'd but little, and waſted none: I gave them a Deſcription of the Way I manag'd the Goats, and Directions to milk and fatten them, to make both Butter and Cheeſe.

In a Word, I gave them every Part of my own Story; and I told them, I would prevail with the Captain to leave them two Barrels of Gunpowder more, and ſome Garden-ſeed, which I told them I would have been very glad of; alſo I gave them the Bag of Peas which the Captain had brought me to eat, and bad them be ſure to ſow and increaſe them.

Having done all this, I left them the next Day, and went on board the Ship: We prepar'd immediately to ſail, but did not weigh that Night: The next Morning early, two of the five Men came ſwimming to the Ship's Side, and, making a moſt lamentable Complaint of the other three, begg'd to be taken into the Ship, for God's Sake, for they ſhould be murder'd; and begg'd the Captain to take them on board, tho' he hang'd them immediately.

Upon this, the Captain pretended to have no Power without me; but after ſome Difficulty, and after their ſolemn Promiſes of Amendment, they were taken on board, and were ſome Time after ſoundly whipp'd and pickl'd; after which they prov'd very honeſt and quiet Fellows.

Some Time after this, I went with the Boat on Shore, the Tide being up, with the things promis'd to the Men, to which the Captain, at my Interceſſion, caus'd their Cheſts and Cloaths to be added, which they took, and were very thankful for: I alſo encourag'd them, by telling

telling them, that if it lay in my Way to ſend any Veſſel to take them in, I would not forget them.

When I took Leave of this Iſland, I carry'd on board for Reliques the great Goat's-ſkin Cap I had made, my Umbrella, and one of my Parrots; alſo I forgot not to take the Money I formerly mention'd, which had lain by me ſo long uſeleſs, that it was grown ruſty, or tarniſhed, and could hardly paſs for Silver, till it had been a little rubb'd and handled; and alſo the Money I found in the Wreck of the *Spaniſh* Ship.

And thus I left the Iſland the nineteenth of *December*, as I found by the Ship's Account, in the Year 1686, after I had been upon it eight-and-twenty Years, two Months, and nineteen Days; being deliver'd from the ſecond Captivity the ſame Day of the Month that I firſt made my Eſcape in the *Barco-Longo*, from among the *Moors* of *Sallee*.

In this Veſſel, after a long Voyage, I arriv'd in *England* the eleventh of *June*, in the Year 1687, having been thirty-and-five Years abſent.

When I came to *England*, I was a perfect Stranger to all the World, as if I had never been known there: My Benefactor, and faithful Steward, whom I had left in Truſt with my Money, was alive, but had had great Misfortunes in the World, was become a Widow the ſecond Time, and very low in the World: I made her eaſy as to what ſhe ow'd me, aſſuring her, I would give her no Trouble; but on the contrary, in Gratitude to her former Care and Faithfulneſs to me, I reliev'd her as my little Stock would afford, which at that Time would indeed allow me to do but little for her; but I aſſur'd her, I would never forget her former Kindneſs to me; nor did I forget her, when I had ſufficient to help her; as ſhall be obſerv'd in its Place.

I went down afterwards into *Yorkſhire*; but my Father was dead, and my Mother, and all the Family extinct; except that I found two Siſters, and two of the Children of one of my Brothers: And as I had been long ago given over for dead, there had been no Proviſion made for me, ſo that, in a Word, I found nothing to relieve or aſſiſt me; and that little Money I had, would not do ſo much for me, as to ſettling in the World.

I met

I met with one Piece of Gratitude indeed, which I did not expect; and this was, that the Maſter of the Ship, whom I had ſo happily deliver'd, and by the ſame Means ſav'd the Ship and Cargo, having given a very handſome Account to the Owners, of the Manner how I had ſav'd the Lives of the Men, and the Ship, they invited me to meet them, and ſome other Merchants concern'd, and all together made me a very handſome Compliment upon that Subject, and a Preſent of almoſt two hundred Pounds Sterling.

But after making ſeveral Reflections upon the Circumſtances of my Life, and how little Way this would go toward ſettling me in the World, I reſolv'd to go to *Liſbon*, and ſee if I might not come by ſome Information of the State of my Plantation in the *Braſils*, and of what was become of my Partner, who, I had Reaſon to ſuppoſe, had ſome Years now given me over for dead.

With this View I took Shipping for *Liſbon*, where I arriv'd in *April* following; my Man *Friday* accompanying me very honeſtly in all theſe Ramblings, and proving a moſt faithful Servant upon all Occaſions.

When I came to *Liſbon*, I found out by Inquiry, and to my particular Satisfaction, my old Friend the Captain of the Ship, who firſt took me up at Sea, off the Shore of *Africa*: He was now grown old, and had left off the Sea, having put his Son, who was far from a young Man, into his Ship; and who ſtill us'd the *Braſil* Trade. The old Man did not know me, and, indeed, I hardly knew him; but I ſoon brought myſelf to his Remembrance, when I told him who I was.

After ſome paſſionate Expreſſions of our old Acquaintance, I inquir'd, you may be ſure, after my Plantation, and my Partner: The old Man told me, he had not been in the *Braſils* for about nine Years; but that he could aſſure me, that when he came away, my Partner was living; but the Truſtees, whom I had join'd with him to take Cognizance of my Part, were both dead; that, however, he believ'd that I would have a very good Account of the Improvement of the Plantation; for that, upon the general Belief of my being caſt away and drown'd, my Truſtees had given in the Account of the Produce of my Part of the Plantation, to the Procurator Fiſcal;

Fiſcal; who had appropriated it, in caſe I never came to claim it, one Third to the King, and two Thirds to the Monaſtery of *St. Auguſtin*, to be expended for the Benefit of the Poor, and for the Converſion of the *Indians* to the Catholic Faith; but that if I appear'd, or any one for me, to claim the Inheritance, it would be reſtor'd; only that the Improvement, or annual Production, being diſtributed to charitable Uſes, could not be reſtor'd; but he aſſur'd me, that the Steward of the King's Revenue (from Lands) and the Provedore, or Steward of the Monaſtery, had taken great Care all along, that the Incumbent, that is to ſay, my Partner, gave every Year a faithful Account of the Produce, of which they receiv'd duly my Moiety.

I aſk'd him, if he knew to what Height of Improvement he had brought the Plantation: And whether he thought it might be worth looking after: Or whether, on my going thither, I ſhould meet with no Obſtruction to my poſſeſſing my juſt Right in the Moiety.

He told me, he could not tell exactly to what Degree the Plantation was improv'd; but this he knew, that my Partner was grown exceeding rich upon the enjoying but one half of it; and that, to the beſt of his Remembrance he had heard, that the King's Third of my Part, which was, it ſeems, granted away to ſome other Monaſtery, or religious Houſe, amounted to above two hundred Moidores a Year; that, as to my being reſtor'd to a quiet Poſſeſſion of it, there was no Queſtion to be made of that, my Partner being alive to witneſs my Title, and my Name being alſo inroll'd in the Regiſter of the Country. Alſo he told me, that the Survivors of my two Truſtees were very fair honeſt People, and very wealthy, and he believ'd I would not only have their Aſſiſtance for putting me in Poſſeſſion, but would find a very conſiderable Sum of Money in their Hands, for my Account, being the Produce of the Farm, while their Fathers held the Truſt, and before it was given up, as above, which, as he remember'd, was for about twelve Years.

I ſhew'd myſelf a little concern'd and uneaſy at this Account, and inquir'd of the old Captain, how it came to paſs, that the Truſtees ſhould thus diſpoſe of my Effects, when he knew, that I had made my Will, and had made him, the *Portugueſe* Captain, my univerſal Heir, *&c.*

He

He told me, that was true; but that, as there was no Proof of my being dead, he could not act as Executor, until ſome certain Account ſhould come of my Death; and that, beſides, he was not willing to intermeddle with a thing ſo remote: That it was true, he had regiſter'd my Will, and put in his Claim; and could he have given any Account of my being dead or alive, he would have acted by Procuration, and taken Poſſeſſion of the *Ingenio* (ſo they call'd the Sugar-houſe) and had given his Son, who was now at the *Braſils*, order to do it.

But, ſays the old Man, I have one Piece of News to tell you, which perhaps may not be ſo acceptable to you as the reſt; and that is, That, believing you were loſt, and all the World believing ſo alſo, your Partner and Truſtees did offer to account to me in your Name, for ſix or eight of the firſt Years of Profits, which I receiv'd; but there being at that Time, ſays he, great Diſburſements for increaſing the Works, building an *Ingenio*, and buying Slaves, it did not amount to near ſo much as afterwards it produc'd: However, ſays the old Man, I ſhall give you a true Account of what I have receiv'd in all, and how I have diſpos'd of it.

After a few Days farther Conference with this antient Friend, he brought me an Account of the ſix firſt Years Income of my Plantation, ſign'd by my Partner, and the Merchant's Truſtees, being always deliver'd in Goods; *viz.* Tobacco in Roll, and Sugar in Cheſts, beſides Rum, Melaſſes, *&c.* which is the Conſequence of a Sugar work; and I found by this Account, that every Year the Income conſiderably increas'd: But, as above, the Diſburſement being large, the Sum at firſt was ſmall: However, the old Man let me ſee, that he was Debtor to me 470 Moidores of Gold, beſides 60 Cheſts of Sugar, and 15 double Rolls of Tobacco, which were loſt in his Ship, he having been ſhipwreck'd coming Home to *Liſbon*, about eleven Years after my leaving the Place.

The good Man then began to complain of his Misfortunes, and how he had been oblig'd to make uſe of my Money to recover his Loſſes, and buy him a Share in a new Ship: However, my old Friend, ſays he, you ſhall not want a Supply in your Neceſſity; and as ſoon as my Son returns, you ſhall be fully ſatisfy'd.

Upon

Upon this he pulls out an old Pouch, and gives me two hundred *Portugal* Moidores in Gold; and giving me, the Writings of his Title to the Ship which his Son was gone to the *Braſils* in, of which he was a Quarter-Part Owner, and his Son another, he puts them both into my Hands for Security of the reſt.

I was too much mov'd with the Honeſty and Kindneſs of the poor Man, to be able to bear this; and remembring what he had done for me, how he had taken me up at Sea, and how generouſly he had uſed me on all Occaſions, and particularly, how ſincere a Friend he was now to me, I could hardly refrain weeping at what he ſaid to me: Therefore firſt I aſk'd him if his Circumſtances admitted him to ſpare ſo much Money at that Time, and if it would not ſtreighten him? He told me he could not ſay but it might ſtreighten him a little; but, however, it was my Money, and I might want it more than he.

Every thing the good Man ſaid was full of Affection, and I could hardly refrain from Tears while he ſpoke. In ſhort, I took one hundred of the Moidores, and call'd for a Pen and Ink to give him a Receipt for them; then I return'd him the reſt, and told him, if ever I had Poſſeſſion of the Plantation, I would return the other to him alſo, as indeed I afterwards did; and that, as to the Bill of Sale of his Part in his Son's Ship, I would not take it by any Means; but that, if I wanted the Money, I found he was honeſt enough to pay me; and if I did not, but came to receive what he gave me Reaſon to expect, I would never have a Penny more from him.

When this was paſs'd, the old Man began to aſk me, if he ſhould put me in a Method to make my Claim to my Plantation. I told him, I thought to go over to it myſelf: He ſaid I might do ſo if I pleas'd; but that if I did not, there were Ways enough to ſecure my Right, and immediately to appropriate the Profits to my Uſe; and as there were Ships in the River of *Liſbon*, juſt ready to go away to *Braſil*, he made me enter my Name in a public Regiſter, with his Affidavit, affirming upon Oath that I was alive, and that I was the ſame Perſon who took up the Land for the planting the ſaid Plantation at firſt.

This being regularly atteſted by a Notary, and a Procuration affix'd, he directed me to ſend it with a Letter of his Writing, to a Merchant of his Acquaintance at the Place; and then propos'd my ſtaying with him till an Account came of the Return.

Never any thing was more honourable than the Proceedings upon this Procuration; for in leſs than ſeven Months I receiv'd a large Packet from the Survivors of my Truſtees, the Merchants, for whoſe Account I went to Sea, in which were the following particular Letters and Papers incloſed.

Firſt, There was the Account current of the Produce of my Farm, or Plantation, from the Year when their Fathers had balanc'd with my old *Portugal* Captain, being for ſix Years; the Balance appear'd to be 1174 Moidores in my Favour.

Secondly, There was the Account of four Years more while they kept the Effects in their Hands, before the Government claim'd the Adminiſtration, as being the Effects of a Perſon not to be found, which they call *Civil Death*; and the Balance of this, the Value of the Plantation, increaſing, amounted to Cruiſadoes, which made 3241 Moidores.

Thirdly, There was the Prior of the *Auguſtines* Account, who had receiv'd the Profits for above fourteen Years; but not being able to account for what was diſpos'd to the Hoſpital, very honeſtly declar'd he had 872 Moidores not diſtributed, which he acknowledg'd to my Account: As to the King's Part, that refunded nothing.

There was alſo a Letter of my Partner's, congratulating me very affectionately upon my being alive; giving me an Account how the Eſtate was improv'd, and what it produc'd a Year, with a Particular of the Number of Squares or Acres that it contain'd; how planted, how many Slaves there were upon it; and making two-and-twenty Croſſes for Bleſſings, told me, he had ſaid ſo many *Ave Maria*'s to thank the Bleſſed Virgin that I was alive; inviting me very paſſionately to come over and take Poſſeſſion of my own, and in the mean Time to give him Orders to whom he ſhould deliver my Effects, if I did not come myſelf; concluding with an hearty

hearty Tender of his Friendſhip, and that of his Family; and ſent me, as a Preſent, ſeven fine Leopards Skins, which he had, it ſeems, receiv'd from *Africa* by ſome other Ship which he had ſent thither, and who, it ſeems, had made a better Voyage than I: He ſent me alſo five Cheſts of excellent Sweetmeats, and an hundred Pieces of Gold uncoin'd, not quite ſo large as Moidores.

By the ſame Fleet my two Merchant-Truſtees ſhipp'd me 1200 Cheſts of Sugar, 800 Rolls of Tobacco, and the reſt of the whole Account in Gold.

I might well ſay now, indeed, that the latter End of *Job* was better than the Beginning: It is impoſſible to expreſs the Flutterings of my very Heart, when I look'd over theſe Letters, and eſpecially when I found all my Wealth about me; for as the *Braſil* Ships come all in Fleets, the ſame Ships which brought my Letters brought my Goods; and the Effects were ſafe in the *Tagus* before the Letter came to my Hand: In a Word, I turn'd pale, and grew ſick; and had not the old Man run and fetch'd me a Cordial, I believe the ſudden Surpriſe of Joy had overſet Nature, and I had dy'd upon the Spot.

Nay, after that, I continu'd very ill, and was ſo ſome Hours, till a Phyſician being ſent for, and ſomething of the real Cauſe of my Illneſs being known, he order'd me to be let Blood; after which I had Relief, and grew well; but I verily believe, if it had not been eas'd by the Vent given in that Manner to the Spirits, I ſhould have dy'd.

I was now Maſter, all on a ſudden, of above 50,000 *l. Sterling* in Money, and had an Eſtate, as I might well call it, in the *Braſils*, of above a thouſand Pounds a Year, as ſure as an Eſtate of Lands in *England*; and, in a Word, I was in a Condition which I ſcarce knew how to underſtand, or how to compoſe myſelf for the Enjoyment of.

The firſt thing I did, was to recompenſe my original Benefactor, my good old Captain, who had been firſt charitable to me in my Diſtreſs, kind to me in the Beginning, and honeſt to me at the End: I ſhew'd him all that was ſent me; I told him, that, next to the

Providence of Heaven, which diſpoſes all things, it was owing to him; and that it now lay on me to reward him, which I would do an hundredfold: So I firſt return'd to him the hundred Moidores I had receiv'd of him; then I ſent for a Notary, and caus'd him to draw up a General Releaſe or Diſcharge for the 470 Moidores, which he had acknowledg'd he owed me, in the fulleſt and firmeſt Manner poſſible; after which, I caus'd a Procuration to be drawn, impowering him to be my Receiver of the annual Profits of my Plantation, and appointing my Partner to account to him, and make the Returns by the uſual Fleets to him in my Name: And a Clauſe in the End, being a Grant of 100 Moidores a Year to him during his Life, out of the Effects; and 50 Moidores a Year to his Son after him, for his Life: And thus I requited my old Man.

I was now to conſider which Way to ſteer my Courſe next, and what to do with the Eſtate that Providence had thus put into my Hands; and, indeed, I had more Care upon my Head now, than I had in my ſilent State of Life in the Iſland, where I wanted nothing but what I had, and had nothing but what I wanted; whereas I had now a great Charge upon me, and my Buſineſs was how to ſecure it; I had ne'er a Cave to hide my Money in, or a Place where it might lie without Lock or Key, till it grew mouldy and tarniſh'd before any body would meddle with it: On the contrary, I knew not where to put it, or whom to truſt with it; my old Patron, the Captain, indeed was honeſt, and that was the only Refuge I had.

In the next Place, my Intereſt in the *Braſils* ſeem'd to ſummon me thither; but now I could not tell how to think of going thither till I had ſettled my Affairs, and left my Effects in ſome ſafe Hands behind me: At firſt I thought of my old Friend the Widow, who I knew was honeſt, and would be juſt to me; but then ſhe was in Years, and but poor, and, for aught I knew, might be in Debt; ſo that, in a Word, I had no Way but to go back to *England* myſelf, and take my Effects with me.

I was ſome Months, however, before I reſolv'd upon this; and therefore as I had rewarded the old Captain fully,

ſully, and to Satisfaction, who had been my former Benefactor, ſo I began to think of my poor Widow, whoſe Huſband had been my firſt Benefactor, and ſhe, while it was in her Power, my faithful Steward and Inſtructor: So the firſt thing I did, I got a Merchant in *Liſbon* to write to his Correſpondent in *London*, not only to pay a Bill, but to go find her out, and carry her in Money an hundred Pounds from me, and to talk with her, and comfort her in her Poverty, by telling her, ſhe ſhould, if I liv'd, have a farther Supply: At the ſame Time I ſent my two Siſters in the Country, each of them, an hundred Pounds, they being, though not in Want, yet not in very good Circumſtances; one having been married, and left a Widow, and the other having an Huſband not ſo kind to her as he ſhould be.

But among all my Relations or Acquaintances I could not yet pitch upon one, to whom I durſt commit the Groſs of my Stock, that I might go away to the *Braſils*, and leave things ſafe behind me; and this greatly perplexed me.

I had once a Mind to have gone to the *Braſils*, and have ſettled myſelf there; for I was, as it were naturalized to the Place; but I had ſome little Scruple in my Mind about Religion, which inſenſibly drew me back, of which I ſhall ſay more preſently. However, it was not Religion that kept me from going thither for the preſent; and as I had made no Scruple of being openly of the Religion of the Country, all the while I was among them, ſo neither did I yet; only that now-and-then having of late thought more of it than formerly, when I began to think of living and dying among them, I began to regret my having profeſs'd myſelf a *Papiſt*, and thought it might not be the beſt Religion to die in.

But, as I have ſaid, this was not the main thing that kept me from going to the *Braſils*, but that really I did not know with whom to leave my Effects behind me; ſo I reſolv'd at laſt to go to *England* with them, where if I arriv'd, I concluded I ſhould make ſome Acquaintance, or find ſome Relations, that would be faithful to me; and accordingly I prepar'd to go for *England* with all my Wealth.

In order to prepare things for my going Home, I firſt (the *Braſil* Fleet being juſt going away) reſolv'd to give Anſwers

Anſwers ſuitable to the juſt and faithful Account of things I had from thence; and firſt to the Prior of *St. Auguſtine* I wrote a Letter full of Thanks for his juſt Dealings, and the Offer of the 872 Moidores, which was undiſpos'd of, which I deſir'd might be given, 500 to the Monaſtery, and 372 to the Poor, as the Prior ſhould direct, deſiring the good *Padres* Prayers for me, and the like.

I wrote next a Letter of Thanks to my two Truſtees, with all the Acknowledgment that ſo much Juſtice and Honeſty call'd for; as for ſending them any Preſent, they were far above having any Occaſion of it.

Laſtly, I wrote to my Partner, acknowledging his Induſtry in the improving the Plantation, and his Integrity in increaſing the Stock of the Works, giving him Inſtructions for his future Government of my Part, according to the Powers I had left with my old Patron, to whom I deſir'd him to ſend whatever became due to me, till he ſhould hear from me more particularly; aſſuring him, that it was my Intention, not only to come to him, but to ſettle myſelf there for the Remainder of my Life: To this I added a very handſome Preſent of ſome *Italian* Silks for his Wife and two Daughters, for ſuch the Captain's Son inform'd me he had; with two Pieces of fine *Engliſh* Broad-cloth, the beſt I could get in *Liſbon*, five Pieces of black Bays, and ſome *Flanders* Lace of a good Value.

Having thus ſettled my Affairs, ſold my Cargo, and turn'd all my Effects into good Bills of Exchange, my next Difficulty was, which Way to go to *England:* I had been accuſtom'd enough to the Sea, and yet I had a ſtrange Averſion to go to *England* by Sea at that Time; and though I could give no Reaſon for it, yet the Difficulty increas'd upon me ſo much, that though I had once ſhipp'd my Baggage in order to go, yet I alter'd my Mind, and that not once, but two or three Times.

It is true, I had been very unfortunate by Sea, and this might be one of the Reaſons: But let no Man ſlight the ſtrong Impulſes of his own Thoughts in Caſes of ſuch Moment: Two of the Ships which I had fingled out to go in, I mean, more particularly fingled out than any other, that is to ſay, ſo as in one of them to put my things

things on board, and in the other to have agreed with the Captain; I ſay, two of theſe Ships miſcarry'd; *viz.* One was taken by the *Algerines*, and the other was caſt away on the *Start* near *Torbay*, and all the People drowned except three; ſo that in either of thoſe Veſſels I had been made miſerable, and in which moſt, it was hard to ſay.

Having been thus haraſs'd in my Thoughts, my old Pilot, to whom I communicated every thing, preſs'd me earneſtly not to go to Sea; but either to go by Land to the *Groyne*, and croſs over the Bay of *Biſcay* or *Rochelle*, from whence it was but an eaſy and ſafe Journey by Land to *Paris*, and ſo to *Calais* and *Dover*; or to go up to *Madrid*, and ſo all the Way by Land through *France*.

In a Word, I was ſo prepoſſeſs'd againſt my going by Sea at all, except from *Calais* to *Dover*, that I reſolv'd to travel all the Way by Land; which, as I was not in Haſte, and did not value the Charge, was by much the pleaſanter Way; and to make it more ſo, my old Captain brought an *Engliſh* Gentleman, the Son of a Merchant in *Liſbon*, who was willing to travel with me: After which, we pick'd up two who were *Engliſh* and Merchants alſo, and two young *Portugueſe* Gentlemen, the laſt going to *Paris* only; ſo that we were in all ſix of us, and five Servants, the two Merchants, and the two *Portugueſe*, contenting themſelves with one Servant between two, to ſave the Charge; and as for me, I got an *Engliſh* Sailor to travel with me as a Servant beſides my Man *Friday*, who was too much a Stranger to be capable of ſupplying the Place of a Servant upon the Road.

In this Manner I ſet out for *Liſbon:* And our Company being all very well mounted and arm'd, we made a little Troop, whereof they did me the Honour to call me Captain, as well becauſe I was the oldeſt Man, as becauſe I had two Servants, and, indeed, was the Original of the whole Journey.

As I have troubled you with none of my Sea Journals, ſo ſhall I trouble you with none of my Land Journal: But ſome Adventures that happen'd to us in this tedious and difficult Journey, I muſt not omit.

When we came to *Madrid*, we, being all of us Strangers to *Spain*, were willing to ſtay ſome Time to ſee the Court

of *Spain*, and to ſee what was worth obſerving; but it being the latter Part of the Summer, we haſten'd away, and ſet out from *Madrid* about the Middle of *October*: But when we came to the Edge of *Navarre*, we were alarm'd at ſeveral Towns on the Way, with an Account that ſo much Snow was fallen on the *French* Side of the Mountains, that ſeveral Travellers were oblig'd to come back to *Pampeluna*, after having attempted, at an extreme Hazard, to paſs on.

When we came to *Pampeluna* itſelf, we found it ſo indeed; and to me that had been always us'd to an hot Climate, and indeed to Countries where we could ſcarce bear any Cloaths on, the Cold was unſufferable; nor, indeed, was it more painful than it was ſurpriſing, to come but ten Days before out of the *Old Caſtile*, where the Weather was not only warm, but very hot; and immediately to feel a Wind from the *Pyrenean* Mountains, ſo very keen, ſo ſeverely cold, as to be intolerable, and to endanger benumbing and periſhing of our Fingers and Toes, was very ſtrange.

Poor *Friday* was really frighted when he ſaw the Mountains all cover'd with Snow, and felt cold Weather, which he had never ſeen or felt before in his Life.

To mend the Matter, after we came to *Pampeluna*, it continu'd ſnowing with ſo much Violence, and ſo long, that the People ſaid, Winter was come before its Time, and the Roads which were difficult before, were now quite impaſſable; in a Word, the Snow lay in ſome Places too thick for us to travel; and being not hard frozen, as is the Caſe in Northern Countries, there was no going without being in Danger of being bury'd alive every Step: We ſtaid no leſs than twenty Days at *Pampeluna*; when (ſeeing the Winter coming on, and no Likelihood of its being better, for it was the ſevereſt Winter all over *Europe* that had been known in many Years) I propos'd that we ſhould all go away to *Fontarabia*, and there take Shipping for *Bourdeaux*, which was a very little Voyage.

But while we were conſidering this, there came in four *French* Gentlemen, who, having been ſtopp'd on the *French* Side of the Paſſes, as we were on the *Spaniſh*, had found out a Guide, who, traverſing the Country near the

Head

Head of *Languedoc*, had brought them over the Mountains by ſuch Ways, that they were not much incommoded with the Snow; and where they met with Snow in any Quantity, they ſaid it was frozen hard enough to bear them and their Horſes.

We ſent for this Guide, who told us, he would undertake to carry us the ſame Way, with no Hazard from the Snow, provided we were arm'd ſufficiently to protect us from wild Beaſts; for, he ſaid, upon theſe great Snows, it was frequent for ſome Wolves to ſhew themſelves at the Foot of the Mountains, being made ravenous for Want of Food, the Ground being cover'd with Snow: We told him we were well enough prepar'd for ſuch Creatures as they were, if he would inſure us from a Kind of two-legged Wolves, which we were told we were in moſt Danger from, eſpecially on the *French* Side of the Mountains.

He ſatisfy'd us there was no Danger of that Kind in the Way that we were to go: So we readily agreed to follow him; as did alſo twelve other Gentlemen, with their Servants, ſome *French*, ſome *Spaniſh*, who, as I ſaid, had attempted to go, and were oblig'd to come back again.

Accordingly we all ſet out from *Pampeluna*, with our Guide, on the fifteenth of *November*; and indeed, I was ſurpris'd, when, inſtead of going forward, he came directly back with us, on the ſame Road that we came from *Madrid*, above twenty Miles; when having paſs'd two Rivers, and come into the plain Country, we found ourſelves in a warm Climate again, where the Country was pleaſant, and no Snow to be ſeen; but on a ſudden, turning to the Left, he approach'd the Mountains another Way; and tho' it is true, the Hills and the Precipices look'd dreadful, yet he made ſo many Tours, ſuch Meanders, and led us by ſuch winding Ways, we inſenſibly paſs'd the Height of the Mountains, without being much incumber'd with the Snow; and all on a ſudden he ſhew'd us the pleaſant fruitful Provinces of *Languedoc* and *Gaſcoigne*, all green and flouriſhing; tho' indeed they were at a great Diſtance, and we had ſome rough Way to paſs yet.

We were a little uneaſy however, when we found it ſnow'd one whole Day, and a Night, ſo faſt, that we could

could not travel; but he bid us be eaſy, we ſhould ſoon be paſt it all: We found, indeed, that we began to deſcend every Day, and to come more North than before; and ſo, depending upon our Guide, we went on.

It was about two Hours before Night, when our Guide being ſomething before us, and not juſt in Sight, out ruſh'd three monſtrous Wolves, and after them a Bear, out of an hollow Way, adjoining to a thick Wood; two of the Wolves flew upon the Guide, and had he been half a Mile before us, he had been devour'd indeed, before we could have help'd him: One of them faſten'd upon his Horſe, and the other attack'd the Man with that Violence, that he had not Time, or not Preſence of Mind enough, to draw his Piſtol, but hallow'd and cry'd out to us moſt luſtily; my Man *Friday* being next to me, I bid him ride up, and ſee what was the Matter: As ſoon as *Friday* came in Sight of the Man, he hallow'd as loud as t'other, *O Maſter! O Maſter!* But like a bold Fellow, rode directly up to the Man, and with his Piſtol ſhot the Wolf that attack'd, him into the Head.

It was happy for the poor Man, that it was my Man *Friday*; for he, having been us'd to that Kind of Creature in his Country, had no Fear upon him, but went cloſe up to him, and ſhot him, as above; whereas any of us would have fir'd at a farther Diſtance, and have perhaps either miſs'd the Wolf, or endanger'd ſhooting the Man.

But it was enough to have terrify'd a bolder Man than I, and indeed it alarm'd all our Company, when, with the Noiſe of *Friday*'s Piſtol, we heard on both Sides the diſmalleſt Howling of Wolves, and the Noiſe redoubled by the Echo of the Mountains, that it was to us as if there had been a prodigious Multitude of them; and perhaps indeed there were not ſuch a few, as that we had no Cauſe of Apprehenſions.

However, as *Friday* had kill'd this Wolf, the other, that had faſten'd upon the Horſe, left him immediately, and fled, having happily faſten'd upon his Head, where the Boſſes of the Bridle had ſtuck in his Teeth, ſo that he had not done him much Hurt: The Man, indeed, was moſt hurt: For the raging Creature had bit him twice, once on the Arm, and the other Time a little above

above his Knee; and he was juſt as it were tumbling down by the Diſorder of the Horſe, when *Friday* came up, and ſhot the Wolf.

It is eaſy to ſuppoſe, that at the Noiſe of *Friday*'s Piſtol we all mended our Pace, and rid up as faſt as the Way (which was very difficult) would give us Leave, to ſee what was the Matter: As ſoon as we came clear of the Trees, which blinded us before, we ſaw plainly what had been the Caſe, and how *Friday* had diſengag'd the poor Guide; though we did not preſently diſcern what Kind of Creature it was he had kill'd.

But never was a Fight manag'd ſo hardily, and in ſuch a ſurpriſing Manner, as that which follow'd between *Friday* and the Bear, which gave us all (though at firſt we were ſurpris'd and afraid for him) the greateſt Diverſion imaginable: As the Bear is an heavy, clumſy Creature, and does not gallop as the Wolf does, which is ſwift and light; ſo he has two particular Qualities, which generally are the Rule of his Actions: *Firſt*, As to Men, who are not his proper Prey, I ſay, not his proper Prey, becauſe, tho' I can't ſay what exceſſive Hunger might do, which was now their Caſe, the Ground being all cover'd with Snow; yet as to Men, he does not uſually attempt them, unleſs they firſt attack him: On the contrary, if you meet him in the Woods, tho' if you don't meddle with him, he won't meddle with you; yet then you muſt take care to be very civil to him, and give him the Road; for he is a very nice Gentleman, he won't go a Step out of the Way for a Prince; nay, if you are really afraid, your beſt Way is to look another Way, and keep going on; for ſometimes, if you ſtop, and ſtand ſtill, and look ſtedfaſtly at him, he takes it for an Affront; but if you throw or toſs any thing at him, and it hits him, though it were but a Bit of Stick as big as your Finger, he takes it for an Affront, and ſets all other Buſineſs aſide to purſue his Revenge; for he will have Satisfaction in point of Honour, and this is his firſt Quality: The next is, that if he be once affronted, he will never leave you, Night or Day, till he has his Revenge, but follow at a good round Rate, till he overtakes you.

My Man *Friday* had deliver'd our Guide, and when we came up to him, he was helping him off from his Horſe,

for the Man was both hurt and frighted, and indeed the laſt more than the firſt; when, on a ſudden, we ſpy'd the Bear come out of the Wood, and a vaſt monſtrous one it was, the biggeſt by far that ever I ſaw: We were all a little ſurpris'd when we ſaw him; but when *Friday* ſaw him, it was eaſy to ſee Joy and Courage in the Fellow's Countenance: *O! O! O!* ſays *Friday*, three Times, pointing to him, *O Maſter! You give me te Leave, me ſhakee te Hand with him, me makee you good Laugh.*

I was ſurpris'd to ſee the Fellow ſo pleas'd; *You Fool you*, ſaid I, *he will eat you up: Eatee me up! Eatee me up!* ſays *Friday*, twice over again; *Me eatee him up: Me makee you good Laugh: You all ſtay here, me ſhew you good Laugh:* So down he ſits, and get his Boots off in a Moment, and put on a Pair of Pumps (as we call the flat Shoes they wear) and which he had in his Pocket, gives my other Servant his Horſe, and, with his Gun, away he flew, ſwift like the Wind.

The Bear was walking ſoftly on, and offer'd to meddle with nobody, till *Friday*, coming pretty near, calls to him, as if the Bear could underſtand him: *Hark ye, hark ye*, ſays *Friday*, *me ſpeakee wit you:* We follow'd at a Diſtance; for now being come down to the *Gaſcoigne* Side of the Mountains, we were enter'd a vaſt great Foreſt, where the Country was plain, and pretty open, tho' many Trees in it ſcatter'd here-and-three.

Friday, who had, as we ſay, the Heels of the Bear, came up with him quickly, and takes up a great Stone, and throws at him, and hit him juſt on the Head; but did him no more Harm, than if he had thrown it againſt a Wall; but it anſwer'd *Friday*'s End; for the Rogue was ſo void of Fear, that he did it purely to make the Bear follow him, and ſhew us ſome Laugh, as he call'd it.

As ſoon as the Bear felt the Stone, and ſaw him, he turns about, and comes after him, taking deviliſh long Strides, and ſhuffling along at a ſtrange Rate, ſo as would put an Horſe to a middling Gallop; away runs *Friday*, and takes his Courſe, as if he ran towards us for Help; ſo we all reſolv'd to fire at once upon the Bear, and deliver my Man; though I was angry at him heartily for bringing the Bear back upon us, when he was going about his

own.

own Buſineſs another Way; and eſpecially I was angry that he had turned the Bear upon us, and then run away; and I call'd out, *You Dog*, ſaid I, *is this your making us laugh? Come away, and take your Horſe, that we may ſhoot the Creature.* He hears me, and cries out, *No ſhoot, no ſhoot, ſtand ſtill, you get much laugh:* And as the nimble Creature ran two Feet for the Beaſt's one, he turned on a ſudden, on one Side of us, and ſeeing a great Oak-tree, fit for his Purpoſe, he beckoned us to follow, and, doubling his Pace, he gets nimbly up the Tree, laying his Gun down upon the Ground, at about five or ſix Yards from the Bottom of the Tree.

The Bear ſoon came to the Tree, and we followed at a Diſtance; the firſt thing he did, he ſtopt at the Gun, ſmelt to it, but let it lie, and up he ſcrambles into the Tree, climbing like a Cat, though ſo monſtrouſly heavy: I was amazed at the Folly, as I thought it, of my Man, and could not for my Life ſee any thing to laugh at yet, till, ſeeing the Bear get up the Tree, we all rode nearer to him.

When we came to the Tree, there was *Friday* got out to the Small of a large Limb of the Tree, and the Bear got about half Way to him: As ſoon as the Bear got out to that Part where the Limb of the Tree was weaker, *Ha*, ſays he to us, *now you ſee me teachee the Bear dance*; ſo he falls a jumping, and ſhaking the Bough, at which the Bear began to totter, but ſtood ſtill, and began to look behind him, to ſee how he ſhould get back; then indeed we did laugh heartily: But *Friday* had not done with him by a great deal; when he ſees him ſtand ſtill, he calls out to him again, as if he had ſuppoſed the Bear could ſpeak *Engliſh*, *What, you no come farther? Pray you come farther.* So he left jumping and ſhaking the Bough; and the Bear, juſt as if he had underſtood what he ſaid, did come a little farther; then he fell a jumping again, and the Bear ſtopped again.

We thought now was a good Time to knock him on the Head, and called to *Friday* to ſtand ſtill, and we would ſhoot the Bear; but he cried out earneſtly, *O pray! O pray! no ſhoot, me ſhoot by and then*; he would have ſaid *by-and-by*. However, to ſhorten the Story, *Friday* danc'd ſo much, and the Bear ſtood ſo tickliſh, that we had

had Laughing enough indeed, but ſtill could not imagine what the Fellow would do; for firſt we thought he depended upon ſhaking the Bear off; and we found the Bear was too cunning for that too; for he would not go out far enough to be thrown down, but clings faſt with his great broad Claws and Feet, ſo that we could not imagine what would be the End of it, and where the Jeſt would be at laſt.

But *Friday* put us out of Doubt quickly; for ſeeing the Bear cling faſt to the Bough, and that he would not be perſuaded to come any farther; *Well, well,* ſaid *Friday*; *you no come farther, me go, me go; you no come to me, me come to you*: And upon this he goes out to the ſmalleſt End of the Bough, where it ſhould bend with his Weight, and gently lets himſelf down by it, ſliding down the Bough, till he came near enough to jump down on his Feet, and away he ran to his Gun, takes it up and ſtands ſtill.

Well, ſaid I to him, *Friday*, What will you do now? Why don't you ſhoot him? *No ſhoot*, ſays *Friday*, *no yet, me ſhoot now, me no kill; me ſtay, give you one more Laugh*; and indeed ſo he did, as you will ſee preſently; for when the Bear ſaw his Enemy gone, he comes back from the Bough where he ſtood, but did it mighty leiſurely, looking behind him every Step, and coming backward till he got into the Body of the Tree: Then, with the ſame hinder End foremoſt, he came down the Tree, graſping it with his Claws, and moving one Foot at a Time, very leiſurely; at this Juncture, and juſt before he could ſet his hind Feet upon the Ground, *Friday* ſtepped cloſe to him, clapped the Muzzle of his Piece into his Ear, and ſhot him dead as a Stone.

Then the Rogue turn'd about, to ſee if we did not laugh; and when he ſaw we were pleas'd by our Looks, he falls a laughing himſelf very loud: *So we kill Bear in my Country*, ſays *Friday*; ſo you kill them, ſaid I, why you have no Guns: *No*, ſays he, *no Gun, but ſhoot great much long Arrow*.

This was, indeed, a good Diverſion to us; but we were ſtill in a wild Place, and our Guide very much hurt, and what to do we hardly knew; the Howling of Wolves ran much in my Head; and indeed, except the Noiſe I

once heard on the Shore of *Africa*, of which I have ſaid ſomething already, I never heard any thing that filled me with ſo much Horror.

Theſe things, and the Approach of Night, called us off, or elſe, as *Friday* would have had us, we ſhould certainly have taken the Skin of this monſtrous Creature off, which was worth ſaving; but we had three Leagues to go, and our Guide haſten'd us; ſo we left him, and went forward on our Journey.

The Ground was ſtill covered with Snow, tho' not ſo deep and dangerous as on the Mountains; and the ravenous Creatures, as we heard afterwards, were come down into the Foreſt, and plain Country, preſs'd by Hunger, to ſeek for Food; and had done a great deal of Miſchief in the Villages, where they ſurpriſed the Country-people, killed a great many of their Sheep and Horſes, and ſome People too.

We had one dangerous Place to paſs, of which our Guide told us, if there were any more Wolves in the Country, we ſhould find them there; and this was a ſmall Plain, ſurrounded with Woods on every Side, and a long narrow Defile or Lane, which we were to paſs to get through the Wood, and then we ſhould come to the Village where we were to lodge.

It was within half an Hour of Sun-ſet when we entered the firſt Wood; and a little after Sun-ſet when we came into the Plain. We met with nothing in the firſt Wood, except that in a little Plain within the Wood, which was not above two Furlongs over, we ſaw five great Wolves croſs the Road, full Speed one after another, as if they had been in Chace of ſome Prey, and had it in View; they took no notice of us, and were gone, and out of our Sight, in a few Moments.

Upon this our Guide, who, by the way, was a wretched faint-hearted Fellow, bad us keep in a ready Poſture; for he believed there were more Wolves a coming.

We kept our Arms ready, and our Eyes about us; but we ſaw no more Wolves till we came through that Wood, which was near half a League, and enter'd the Plain; as ſoon as we came into the Plain, we had Occaſion enough to look about us; the firſt Object we met

with,

with, was a dead Horſe; that is to ſay, a poor Horſe which the Wolves had killed, and at leaſt a Dozen of them at work; we could not ſay eating of him, but picking of his Bones rather; for they had eaten up all the Fleſh before.

We did not think fit to diſturb them at their Feaſt, neither did they take much notice of us; *Friday* would have let fly at them, but I would not ſuffer him by any Means; for I found we were like to have more Buſineſs upon our Hands than we were aware of. We were not half gone over the Plain, but we began to hear the Wolves howl in the Wood on our Left, in a frightful Manner; and preſently after we ſaw about an Hundred coming on directly towards us, all in a Body, and moſt of them in a Line, as regularly as an Army drawn up by experienc'd Officers: I ſcarce knew in what manner to receive them; but found, to draw ourſelves in a cloſe Line, was the only Way: So we form'd in a Moment: But, that we might not have too much Interval, I ordered, that only every other Man ſhould fire; and that the others, who had not fired, ſhould ſtand ready to give them a ſecond Volley immediately, if they continued to advance upon us; and that then thoſe who had fired at firſt, ſhould not pretend to load their Fuſils again, but ſtand ready, with every one a Piſtol, for we were all armed with a Fuſil, and a Pair of Piſtols, each Man; ſo we were by this Method able to fire ſix Volleys, half of us at a Time: However, at preſent we had no Neceſſity; for, upon firing the firſt Volley, the Enemy made a full Stop, being terrified, as well with the Noiſe, as with the Fire; four of them, being ſhot in the Head, dropped; ſeveral others were wounded, and went bleeding off, as we could ſee by the Snow: I found they ſtopped, but did not immediately retreat; whereupon, remembring that I had been told, that the fierceſt Creatures were terrified at the Voice of a Man, I cauſed all our Company to hallow as loud as we could, and I found the Notion not altogether miſtaken; for, upon our Shout, they began to retire, and turn about; then I ordered a ſecond Volley to be fired in their Rear, which put them to the Gallop, and away they went to the Woods.

This

This gave us Leiſure to charge our Pieces again, and that we might loſe no Time, we kept doing; but we had but little more than loaded our Fuſils, and put ourſelves into a Readineſs, when we heard a terrible Noiſe in the ſame Wood, on our Left; only that it was farther onward the ſame Way we were to go.

The Night was coming on, and the Night began to be duſky, which made it the worſe on our Side; but, the Noiſe increaſing, we could eaſily perceive, that it was the Howling and Yelling of thoſe helliſh Creatures; and, on a ſudden, we perceived two or three Troops of Wolves, one on our Left, one behind us, and one on our Front; ſo that we ſeemed to be ſurrounded with them; however, as they did not fall upon us, we kept our Way forward, as faſt as we could make our Horſes go, which, the Way being very rough, was only a good large Trot; and in this Manner we only came in View of the Entrance of the Wood, through which we were to paſs, at the farther Side of the Plain; but we were greatly ſurpriſed, when, coming near the Lane, or Paſs, we ſaw a confus'd Number of Wolves ſtanding juſt at the Entrance.

On a ſudden, at another Opening of the Wood, we heard the Noiſe of a Gun; and, looking that Way, out ruſhed an Horſe, with a Saddle and a Bridle on him, flying like the Wind, and ſixteen or ſeventeen Wolves after him full Speed; indeed the Horſe had the Heels of them; but as we ſuppoſe, that he could not hold it at that rate, we doubted not but they would get up with him at laſt; and no queſtion but they did.

Here we had a moſt horrible Sight; for, riding up to the Entrance where the Horſe came out, we found the Carcaſe of another Horſe, and of two Men devoured by the ravenous Creatures, and one of the Men was no doubt the ſame whom we heard fire the Gun; for there lay a Gun juſt by him fir'd off; but, as to the Man, his Head, and the upper Part of his Body, were eaten up.

This filled us with Horror, and we knew not what Courſe to take; but the Creatures reſolved us ſoon; for they gathered about us preſently, in Hopes of Prey; and I verily believe there were three hundred of them: It happened very much to our Advantage, that at the

Entrance

Entrance into the Wood, but a little Way from it, there lay ſome large Timber-trees, which had been cut down the Summer before, and I ſuppoſe lay there for Carriage: I drew my little Troop in among theſe Trees, and placing ourſelves in a Line, behind one long Tree, I adviſed them all to alight, and, keeping that Tree before us, for a Breaſt-work, to ſtand in a Triangle, or three Fronts, incloſing our Horſes in the Centre.

We did ſo, and it was well we did; for never was a more furious Charge than the Creatures made upon us in this Place: They came on us with a growling kind of a Noiſe, and mounted the Piece of Timber (which, as I ſaid, was our Breaſt-work,) as if they were only ruſhing upon their Prey; and this Fury of theirs, it ſeems, was principally occaſion'd by their ſeeing our Horſes behind us, which was the Prey they aimed at: I ordered our Men to fire as before, every other Man; and they took their Aim ſo ſure, that indeed they killed ſeveral of the Wolves at the firſt Volley; but there was a Neceſſity to keep a continual Firing, for they came on like Devils, thoſe behind puſhing on thoſe before.

When we had fired our ſecond Volley of our Fuſils, we thought they ſtopped a little, and I hoped they would have gone off, but it was but a Moment, for others came forward again; ſo we fir'd our Volleys of our Piſtols, and I believe, in theſe four Firings, we killed ſeventeen or eighteen of them, and lamed twice as many; yet they came on again.

I was loth to ſpend our laſt Shot too haſtily; ſo I call'd my Servant, not my Man *Friday*, for he was better employed; for, with the greateſt Dexterity imaginable, he charged my Fuſil, and his own, while we were engaged; but, as I ſaid, I called my other Man; and, giving him an Horn of Powder, I bad him lay a Train, all along the Piece of Timber, and let it be a large Train; he did ſo, and had but juſt Time to get away, when the Wolves came up to it, and ſome were got up upon it; when I, ſnapping an uncharged Piſtol, cloſe to the Powder, ſet it on Fire; and thoſe that were upon the Timber were ſcorched with it, and ſix or ſeven of them fell, or rather jumped in among us, with the Force and Fright of the Fire; we diſpatched theſe in an Inſtant, and the

reſt

reſt were ſo frighted with the Light, which the Night, for now it was very near dark, made more terrible, that they drew back a little.

Upon which I order'd our laſt Piſtols to be fir'd off in one Volley, and after that we gave a Shout; upon this, the Wolves turn'd Tail, and we ſally'd immediately upon near twenty lame ones, which we found ſtruggling on the Ground, and fell a cutting them with our Swords, which anſwer'd our Expectation; for the Crying and Howling they made were better underſtood by their Fellows; ſo that they fled, and left us.

We had, firſt and laſt, kill'd about threeſcore of them; and had it been Day-light, we had kill'd many more: The Field of Battle being thus clear'd, we made forward again; for we had ſtill near a League to go: We heard the ravenous Creatures howl and yell in the Woods as we went, ſeveral Times; and ſometimes we ſaw ſome of them, but the Snow dazling our Eyes, we were not certain; ſo in about an Hour more, we came to the Town, where we were to lodge, which we found in a terrible Fright, and all in Arms; for it ſeems, that, the Night before, the Wolves and ſome Bears had broken into that Village, and put them in a terrible Fright; and they were oblig'd to keep Guard Night and Day, but eſpecially in the Night to preſerve their Cattle, and indeed their People.

The next Morning our Guide was ſo ill, and his Limbs ſo ſwell'd with the rankling of his two Wounds, that he could go no farther; ſo we were oblig'd to take a new Guide there, and go to *Tholouſe*, where we found a warm Climate, a fruitful pleaſant Country, and no Snow, no Wolves, or any thing like them; but when we told our Story at *Tholouſe*, they told us it was nothing but what was ordinary in the great Foreſt at the Foot of the Mountains, eſpecially when the Snow lay on the Ground: But they inquir'd much what kind of a Guide we had gotten, that would venture to bring us that Way in ſuch a ſevere Seaſon; and told us, it was very much we were not all devour'd: When we told them how we plac'd ourſelves, and the Horſes in the Middle, they blam'd us exceedingly, and told us, it was fifty to one but we had been all deſtroy'd; for it

was

was the Sight of the Horſes that made the Wolves ſo furious, ſeeing their Prey; and that at other Times they are really afraid of a Gun; but they being exceſſive hungry, and raging on that Account, the Eagerneſs to come at the Horſes had made them ſenſeleſs of Danger; and that if we had not by the continued Fire, and at laſt by the Stratagem of the Train of Powder, maſter'd them, it had been great Odds but that we had been torn to Pieces; whereas, had we been content to have ſat ſtill on Horſeback, and fir'd as Horſemen, they would not have taken the Horſes ſo much for their own, when Men were on their Backs, as otherwiſe; and withal they told us, that at laſt, if we had ſtood all together, and left our Horſes, they would have been ſo eager to have devour'd them, that we might have come off ſafe, eſpecially having our Fire-arms in our Hands, and being ſo many in Number.

For my part, I was never ſo ſenſible of Danger in my Life; for ſeeing above three hundred Devils come roaring and open-mouth'd to devour us, and having nothing to ſhelter us, or retreat to, I gave myſelf over for loſt; and as it was, I believe, I ſhall never care to croſs thoſe Mountains again; I think I would much rather go a thouſand Leagues by Sea, though I were ſure to meet with a Storm once a Week.

I have nothing uncommon to take Notice of, in my Paſſage through *France*; nothing but what other Travellers have given an Account of, with much more Advantage than I can: I travell'd from *Tholouſe* to *Paris*, and without any conſiderable Stay came to *Calais*, and landed ſafe at *Dover*, the fourteenth of *January*, after having had a ſevere cold Seaſon to travel in.

I was now come to the Centre of my Travels, and had in a little Time all my new-diſcover'd Eſtate ſafe about me, the Bills of Exchange, which I brought with me having been very currently paid.

My principal Guide, and Privy-Counſellor, was my good antient Widow, who, in Gratitude for the Money I had ſent her, thought no Pains too much, or Care too great, to employ for me; and I truſted her ſo intirely with every thing, that I was perfectly eaſy as to the Security of my Effects; and indeed I was very happy from my

my Beginning, and now to the End, in the unſpotted Integrity of this good Gentlewoman.

And now I began to think of leaving my Effects with this Woman, and ſetting out for *Liſbon*, and ſo to the *Braſils*: But now another Scruple came in the Way, and that was Religion; for as I had entertained ſome Doubts about the *Roman* Religion, even while I was abroad, eſpecially in my State of Solitude; ſo I knew there was no going to the *Braſils* for me, much leſs going to ſettle there, unleſs I reſolved to embrace the *Roman* Catholic Religion, without any Reſerve; except on the other hand I reſolved to be a Sacrifice to my Principles, be a Martyr for Religion, and die in the Inquiſition; ſo I reſolved to ſtay at home, and, if I could find Means for it, to diſpoſe of my Plantation.

To this Purpoſe I wrote to my old Friend at *Liſbon*, who in Return gave me Notice, that he could eaſily diſpoſe of it there: But that if I thought fit to give him leave to offer it in my Name to the two Merchants, the Survivors of my Truſtees who lived in the *Braſils*, who muſt fully underſtand the Value of it, who lived juſt upon the Spot, and whom I knew to be very rich, ſo that he believed they would be fond of buying it; he did not doubt, but I ſhould make 4 or 5000 Pieces of Eight the more of it.

Accordingly I agreed, gave him Orders to offer it to them, and he did ſo; and, in about eight Months more, the Ship being then return'd, he ſent me an Account, that they had accepted the Offer, and had remitted 33,000 Pieces of Eight to a Correſpondent of theirs at *Liſbon*, to pay for it.

In Return, I ſigned the Inſtrument of Sale in the Form which they ſent from *Liſbon*, and ſent it to my old Man, who ſent me the Bills of Exchange for 32,800 Pieces of Eight for the Eſtate; reſerving the Payment of 100 Moidores a Year to him, the old Man, during his Life, and 50 Moidores afterwards to his Son for his Life, which I had promiſed them; and which the Plantation was to make good as a Rent-charge. And thus I have given the firſt Part of a Life of Fortune and Adventure, a Life of Providence's Chequer-work, and of a Variety

which

which the World will ſeldom be able to ſhew the like of: Beginning fooliſhly, but cloſing much more happily than any Part of it ever gave me leave ſo much as to hope for.

Any one would think, that in this State of complicated good Fortune, I was paſt running any more Hazards; and ſo indeed I had been, if other Circumſtances had concurred; but I was inur'd to a wandering Life, had no Family, nor many Relations; nor, however rich, had I contracted much Acquaintance; and tho' I had ſold my Eſtate in the *Braſils*, yet I could not keep that Country out of my Head, and had a great Mind to be upon the Wing again; eſpecially I could not reſiſt the ſtrong Inclination I had to ſee my Iſland, and to know if the poor *Spaniards* were in Being there; and how the Rogues I left there had uſed them.

My true Friend the Widow earneſtly diſſuaded me from it, and ſo far prevail'd with me, that almoſt for ſeven Years ſhe prevented my running abroad; during which Time I took my two Nephews, the Children of one of my Brothers, into my Care: The eldeſt, having ſomething of his own, I bred up as a Gentleman, and gave him a Settlement of ſome Addition to his Eſtate after my Deceaſe; the other I put out to a Captain of a Ship; and after five Years, finding him a ſenſible, bold, enterpriſing young Fellow, I put him into a good Ship, and ſent him to Sea: And this young Fellow afterwards drew me in, as old as I was, to farther Adventures myſelf.

In the mean time, I in part ſettled myſelf here: For, firſt of all I marry'd, and that not either to my Diſadvantage or Diſſatisfaction; and had three Children, two Sons and one Daughter: But my Wife dying, and my Nephew coming home with good Succeſs from a Voyage to *Spain*, my Inclination to go abroad, and his Importunity, prevailed, and engaged me to go in his Ship as a private Trader to the *Eaſt-Indies:* This was in the Year 1694.

In this Voyage I viſited my new Colony in the Iſland, ſaw my Succeſſors the *Spaniards*, had the whole Story of their Lives, and of the Villains I left there; how at firſt they

they inſulted the poor *Spaniards*, how they afterwards agreed, diſagreed, united, ſeparated, and how at laſt the *Spaniards* were obliged to uſe Violence with them; how they were ſubjected to the *Spaniards*; how honeſtly the *Spaniards* uſed them; an Hiſtory, if it were entered into, as full of Variety and wonderful Accidents, as my own Part; particularly alſo as to their Battles with the *Caribbeans*, who landed ſeveral Times upon the Iſland, and as to the Improvement they made upon the Iſland itſelf; and how five of them made an Attempt upon the main Land, and brought away eleven Men and five Women Priſoners; by which, at my coming, I found about twenty young Children on the Iſland.

Here I ſtayed about twenty Days, left them Supplies of all neceſſary things, and particularly of Arms, Powder, Shot, Cloaths, Tools, and two Workmen, which I brought from *England* with me; *viz.* a Carpenter and a Smith.

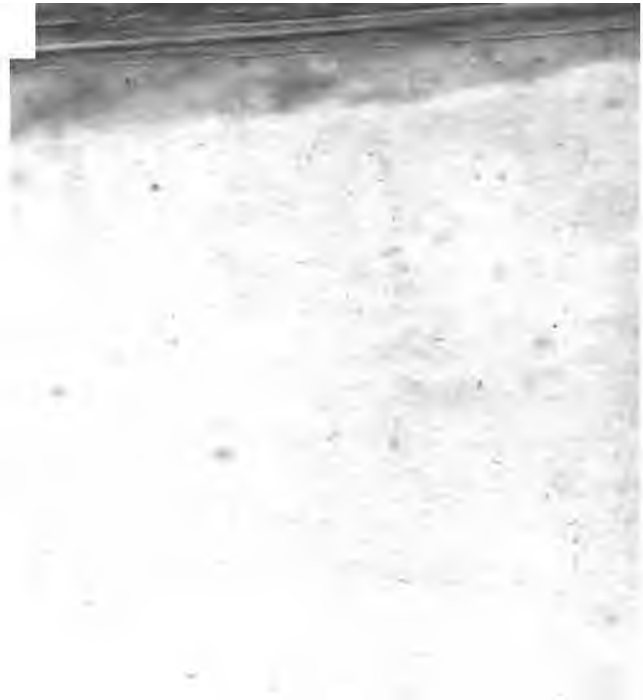
Beſides this, I ſhar'd the Iſland into Parts with them, reſerv'd to myſelf the Property of the Whole, but gave them ſuch Parts, reſpectively, as they agreed on; and, having ſettled all things with them, and engaged them not to leave the Place, I left them there.

From thence I touch'd at the *Braſils*, from whence I ſent a Bark, which I bought there, with more People, to the Iſland; and in it, beſides other Supplies, I ſent ſeven Women, being ſuch as I found proper for Service, or for Wives to ſuch as would take them: As to the *Engliſhmen*, I promiſed them to ſend them ſome Women from *England*, with a good Cargo of Neceſſaries, if they would apply themſelves to Planting, which I afterwards could not perform: The Fellows proved very honeſt and diligent, after they were maſter'd, and had their Properties ſet apart for them. I ſent them alſo from the *Braſils* five Cows, three of them being big with Calf, ſome Sheep, and ſome Hogs, which, when I came again, were conſiderably increaſed.

But all theſe things, with an Account how 300 *Caribbees* came and invaded them, and ruin'd their Plantations, and how they fought with that whole Number twice, and were at firſt defeated, and one of them kill'd; but

at

at laſt a Storm deſtroying their Enemies Canoes, they famiſh'd or deſtroy'd almoſt all the reſt, and renew'd and recovered the Poſſeſſion of their Plantation, and ſtill liv'd upon the Iſland.

All theſe things, with ſome very ſurpriſing Incidents in ſome new Adventures of my own, for ten Years more, I may, perhaps, give a farther Account of hereafter.

The END of the FIRST VOLUME.